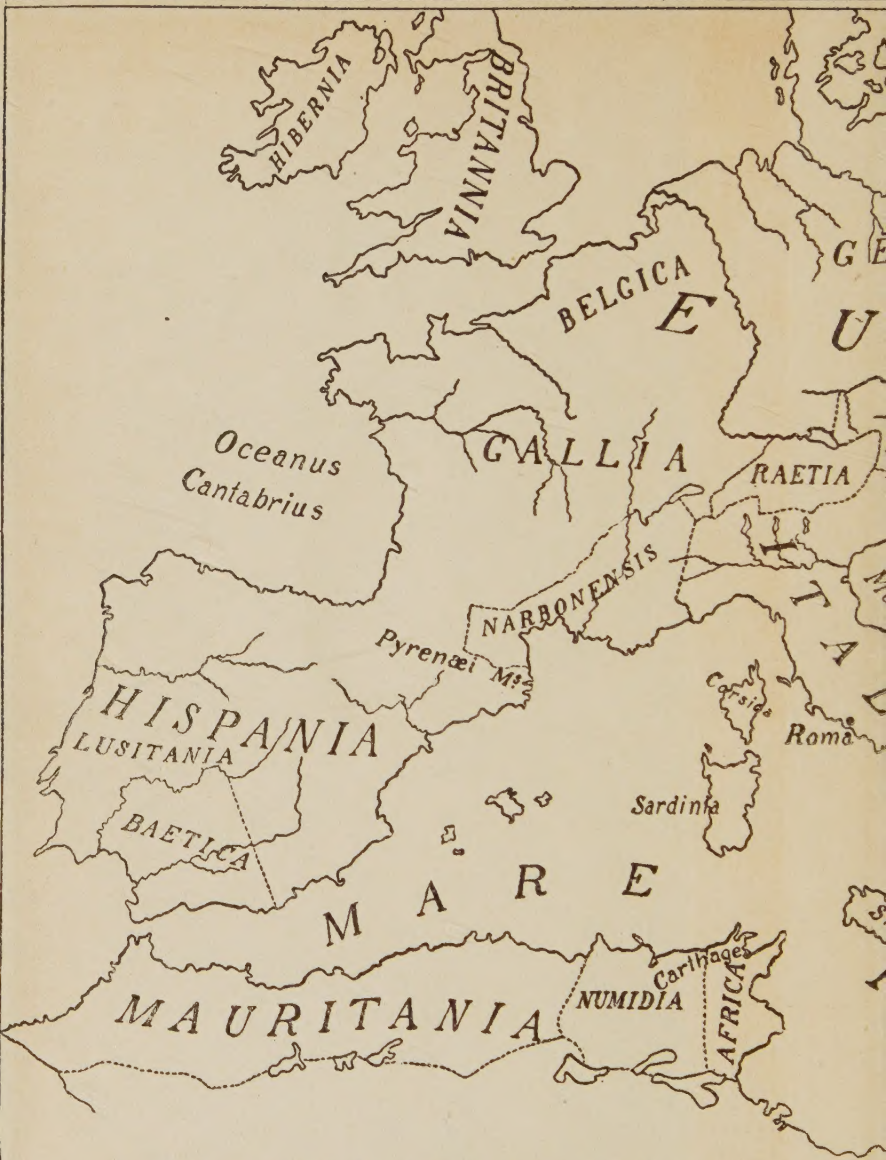


FIRST YEAR LATIN



FOSTER AND ARMS



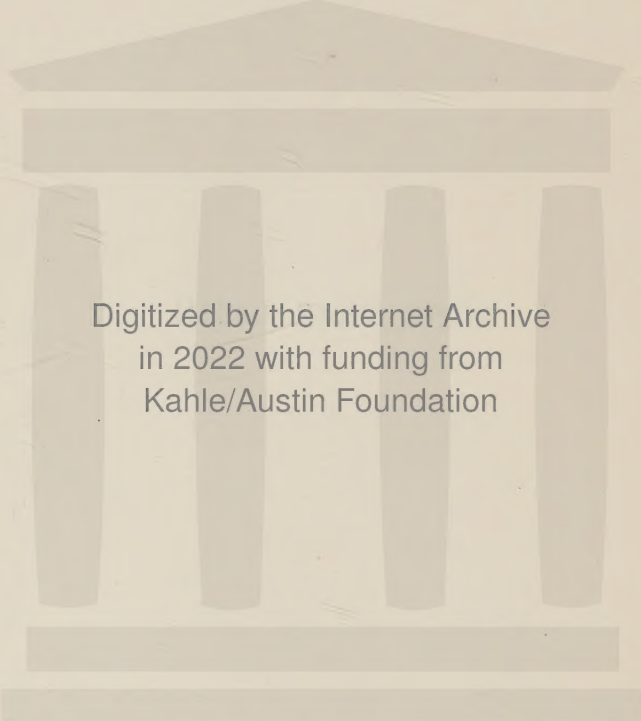
ROMAN EMPIRE
in 69 AD.



Johnson's Latin Series

UNDER THE EDITORSHIP OF
WALTER EUGENE FOSTER, PH.D. (COLUMBIA)

FIRST YEAR LATIN



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation

FIRST YEAR LATIN



BY
WALTER EUGENE FOSTER, PH.D.

HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN
THEODORE ROOSEVELT HIGH SCHOOL
NEW YORK CITY

AND
SAMUEL DWIGHT ARMS, LITT.D.
FORMERLY SUPERVISOR OF ANCIENT LANGUAGES
THE NEW YORK STATE EDUCATION
DEPARTMENT

REVISED EDITION

JOHNSON PUBLISHING COMPANY

RICHMOND

ATLANTA

DALLAS

NEW YORK

CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1925, 1928
JOHNSON PUBLISHING COMPANY

*Printed and bound in the
United States of America*

L. H. J

PREFACE

Written since the publication of the General Report of the Classical Investigation conducted by the American Classical League, this book will be found in accord with the spirit of the recommendations of Dean West and his co-investigators.

Lessons I to C, inclusive, provide a well-rounded, thorough, and interesting first-year course. The presentation of the subjunctive mood, deponent verbs, participles, and certain other topics is postponed to the second part of the book — the last twenty lessons.

Although the forms of the subjunctive present little difficulty, the actual use of the mood requires considerable analytical and logical power. For this reason many teachers prefer to defer the study of the subjunctive to the third half year. The authors are in full sympathy with this view. But teachers who find it necessary to include some of the more important uses of the subjunctive in the work of the first year will proceed with the lessons. By so doing they will make a beginning of work that more properly belongs to the second year.

Some of the characteristic features of this book are presented in the paragraphs that follow:

ARRANGEMENT OF LESSONS. The arrangement of material on the printed pages is a new and, as the authors believe, a valuable feature. Learning the inflections and the vocabulary presented in the lesson is a prerequisite to the real mastery of the exercises. The disadvantage of presenting the inflected forms and the vocabularies on the same page as the exercises for translation is obvious. The lesson arrangement of this book makes it possible for teachers to test their pupils' mastery of first-page

fundamentals. Turning back the page to get the needed form or the needed word should be considered bad practice in the classroom.

DEVELOPMENT OF NEW SUBJECTS. A new subject is first introduced very simply; a few lessons farther on, it is taken up again in a more comprehensive way. In later lessons, the same subject is treated carefully in its relation to other subjects in a still more comprehensive manner. Attention is called to the treatment of Indirect Statement as an illustration of the method of development of the various important topics.

STORIES IN LATIN. The stories in Latin are, in general, classical in form and theme. They are carefully graded to keep pace with the developing powers of the pupils. The incidents and exploits narrated and the characters that figure in them are well adapted to serve as an inspiration to physical courage and to high-minded, patriotic attitudes on the part of the pupils.

RELATION OF LATIN TO ENGLISH. The importance of Latin as a factor in the English language is given full recognition. A few attractive devices for interesting pupils in related Latin and English word study are followed by a simple, carefully wrought-out scheme for word building and word definition in Latin and English. Related English words are, as a rule, not given to the pupil, but he is taught to get them for himself. If the words are compound, he is encouraged to acquire skill in understanding their real meanings through the elements that compose them. The use of the notebook as a means of reinforcing such studies is emphasized and explained.

AURAL INSTRUCTION. The value of appeal to the ear in classroom practice is recognized in the use of varied exercises intended to assist the pupil in becoming ear-minded as well as eye-minded in his study of Latin. Translation of Latin sentences from dictation, answering in Latin questions asked in Latin, acquiring the correct sounds and the proper accent of words, getting the thought of brief sentences through appropriate

phrasing, emphasis and inflection of voice, as brought out by the teacher's reading — all these contribute to pleasure and progress in Latin study.

THE VOCABULARY. Exclusive of proper nouns, the number of words in the general vocabulary is about eleven hundred. Only the words occurring on the first page of the two-page lessons, about six hundred in all, are to be memorized. These six hundred words include over 90 per cent of the words required for the first year by the Latin syllabus of New York State. Opportunity for full mastery of the required vocabularies is afforded by the limited number of new words found in the individual lesson (an average of fewer than six), and by the recurrence at regular intervals of vocabulary reviews presented in the form of time-limited tests.

In presenting the various topics, the authors have steadily kept in mind the interests of the adolescent boy and girl.

No other high school subject affords a more fruitful field for the successful application of the well-known laws of apperception. In his mastery of forms, whether of noun, pronoun, adjective or verb, as the pupil advances from lesson to lesson, he meets very little that is really new and strange, and much that is old and familiar.

For example, the learner finds that, with relatively few exceptions, the accusative singulars of all declensions are either brothers or first cousins. The genitive plurals are as closely related. The dative and ablative plurals may be divided into two great clans.

There can be no substitute for the careful preparation of each day's lesson by the pupil; but there may be added romance and high adventure even in the study of Latin grammar, a thrill in meeting the unexpected even in so prosaic a thing as a case ending.

A pupil who has repeatedly stumbled over the present subjunctive of the first conjugation will rarely fail to give the cor-

rect form, if his attention is called to the fact that the elusive vowel is the same *e* whose acquaintance he made in the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations. And to encounter in the present subjunctive of the second, third, and fourth conjugations the very vowel *a* that caused him so much trouble in such future forms as **regam**, **capiam**, and **audiam**, is like catching sight of the face of a friend amidst a crowd of strangers.

The authors are under obligation to Mr. Evan R. Chesterman of Richmond, Virginia, whose kindly but keen criticisms have added greatly to the usefulness of the book; to Dr. Walter A. Montgomery, of the College of William and Mary, who gave the authors the benefit of his wide experience and careful scholarship; and to Ethel Foster, who not only performed the laborious task of typing and retyping the whole book, but who rendered expert assistance in countless other ways. Our grateful acknowledgment is also made to Mr. W. L. Carr, Associate Professor of Latin in the University of Michigan, and to Dr. Roy J. Deferrari, Professor of Latin, The Catholic University of America, Washington, D. C., for reading the proofs of the book and making valuable suggestions; and finally to Mr. Richard A. Metcalf, Director of the High School and College Department of the Johnson Publishing Company, whose generous assistance and unfailing interest have been a constant inspiration to the authors.

WALTER EUGENE FOSTER
SAMUEL DWIGHT ARMS

CONTENTS

	PAGE
FRONTISPIECE — PERISTYLE, OR GARDEN COURT, OF A ROMAN HOUSE	ii
PREFACE	v
INTRODUCTORY LESSON — ALPHABET, QUANTITY OF VOWELS. . . .	xv
ABBREVIATIONS	xviii
LATIN	xix
LESSON	
I PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION (Portô)	I
II SUBJECT NOMINATIVE — AGREEMENT OF VERB WITH SUBJECT	3
III PREDICATE NOMINATIVE OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES — PRESENT INDICATIVE OF Sum	5
IV PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF Portô — PREDICATE NOMINATIVE OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (<i>Continued</i>)	7
V ACCUSATIVE AS DIRECT OBJECT	9
Iûlia et Octâvia	10
VI IMPERFECT ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF Portô — HOW TO ASK QUESTIONS IN LATIN	11
VII FUTURE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE INDICATIVE OF Portô — ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT	13
Rôma	14
VIII IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF Sum — INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES Nônne AND Num	15
IX THE GENITIVE CASE — APPPOSITION	17
In Viâ Appiâ	19
VOCABULARY REVIEWS — SUGGESTIONS	20
X VOCABULARY REVIEW — TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. I	21
XI DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT — USE OF THE DATIVE .	23
XII FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS — REVIEW	25
XIII Sum , PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE — REVIEW . . .	27
XIV FIRST CONJUGATION — REVIEW — PRESENT SYSTEM . . .	29
Claudia	30

LESSON	PAGE
XV SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN -us — THE VOCATIVE CASE — GENDER IN ENGLISH AND LATIN	31
XVI SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN -um	35
XVII AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES	37
DRILL	38
XVIII FIVE IMPORTANT PREPOSITIONS	39
XIX VOCABULARY REVIEW — TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 2	41
XX ENGLISH FROM LATIN — THE FAMILY TREE	43
XXI SECOND CONJUGATION, INDICATIVE PRESENT AND IM- PERFECT — ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT	45
XXII SECOND CONJUGATION, INDICATIVE FUTURE — SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN -er AND -ir	47
XXIII SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN -er	49
XXIV SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN -er (<i>Continued</i>)	51
Orbilius, Lūdī Magister	52
XXV REVIEW OF Amō, Moneō, Sum — INDICATIVE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE (ACTIVE VOICE) OF Audiō (FOURTH CONJUGATION)	53
XXVI INDICATIVE PASSIVE, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE OF Laudō, Doceō, Audiō	55
XXVII THE DEMONSTRATIVES Ille AND Hic , AS ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS	57
XXVIII THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN Ipse — ABLATIVE OF AC- COMPANIMENT	59
XXIX THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION Cerēs et Proserpina	61 64
XXX PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT) AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION	65
XXXI THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF Sum — DATIVE OF POSSESSOR	67
XXXII THE DEMONSTRATIVE Is — REVIEW OF Hic AND Ille (143, 144)	69
XXXIII STORY OF DAEDALUS AND ICARUS	71
XXXIV VOCABULARY REVIEW — TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 3	73
XXXV PERSONAL PRONOUNS, Ego AND Tū — PRESENT IMPERA- TIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS	75
XXXVI STORY OF CINCINNATUS	77

CONTENTS

LESSON	xi PAGE
XXXVII ONE HUNDRED WORD TEST, No. 1	79
XXXVIII PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION	81
XXXIX PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION — ABLATIVE OF TIME	83
XL THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN, THIRD PERSON — POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES (SOMETIMES PRONOUNS)	85
XLI PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FOURTH CONJUGATION	87
Bucephalus	88
XLII THE INTERROGATIVE Quis AS (1) A PRONOUN, (2) AN ADJECTIVE	89
XLIII THE IRREGULAR VERB Possum — THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME	91
XLIV VOCABULARY REVIEW — TIME-LIMITED TEST, No. 4 .	93
XLV STORY OF THE GEMINI (THE TWINS)	95
XLVI THE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE (Portō, Moneō, Audiō)	97
PAST PARTICIPLES	98
XLVII PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE	99
XLVIII THE RELATIVE PRONOUN	101
AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN	101
XLIX ABLATIVE OF CAUSE — REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE	103
Templa	105
L PATRIOTIC DEFENSE OF THE HOME CITY	107
LI THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS	109
LII THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (<i>Continued</i>)	111
Filius Superbus	112
LIII THIRD CONJUGATION, INDICATIVE PRESENT	113
LIV VOCABULARY REVIEW — TIME-LIMITED TEST, No. 5 .	115
LV THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (<i>Continued</i>) — THE LOCATIVE CASE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	117
LVI INDICATIVE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF Dūcō . . .	119
LVII MARATHON I	121
LVIII THIRD CONJUGATION, PERFECT SYSTEM (Dūcō) . .	123
LIX USE OF THE ENGLISH DICTIONARY	125

LESSON	PAGE
LX THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (<i>Continued</i>) . . .	127
NEUTER NOUNS (Tempus, Genus)	127
LXI MARATHON II	129
LXII INFINITIVES AS IN ENGLISH	131
LXIII THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (<i>Continued</i>) (Virtūs, Aes- tās, Hiems)	133
LXIV THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (<i>Continued</i>) (Iter, Caput, Flūmen)	135
LXV VOCABULARY REVIEW — TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 6 .	137
LXVI INDIRECT STATEMENTS — ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE	139
LXVII THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (<i>Continued</i>) (Civis, Urbs)— I-STEM NOUNS	141
LXVIII THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (<i>Continued</i>) (Mare) — I-STEM NEUTER NOUNS	143
LXIX PREPOSITIONS — VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSI- TIONS — LATIN PREFIXES USED IN ENGLISH . . .	145
LXX MARATHON III	148
LXXI THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES	149
ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS — ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS	149
LXXII THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (<i>Continued</i>) — AD- JECTIVES OF ONE ENDING	151
Orgetorix	152
ENGLISH WORDS FROM LATIN VERBS	153
LXXIII ONE HUNDRED WORD TEST, NO. 2	154
LXXIV COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	155
LXXV COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>Continued</i>) — DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	157
LXXVI CARDINAL NUMERALS	159
COLLOQUIUM	160
LXXVII VOCABULARY REVIEW — TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 7 .	161
LXXVIII COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN -er	163
LXXIX FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	165
LXXX COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>Continued</i>) — ANDROCLUS ET LEO I	167

CONTENTS

LESSON		PAGE
LXXXI	SOME IMPORTANT ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON	169
LXXXII	ANDROCLUS ET LEO II	171
LXXXIII	NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES	173
LXXXIV	VOCABULARY REVIEW — TIME-LIMITED TEST, No. 8	175
LXXXV	ORDINAL NUMERALS — IRREGULAR VERB Eō	177
LXXXVI	ULYSSES VISITS THE LOTUS EATERS I	179
LXXXVII	ULYSSES VISITS THE LOTUS EATERS II	181
LXXXVIII	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS REVIEWED — ADVERBS OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON — REGULUS I	183
LXXXIX	ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN — REGULUS II	185
XC	ADVERBS — CONJUNCTIONS — CORNELIA	187
XC I	THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN -iō	189
	DRILL	190
XCII	REVIEW OF Dūcō, Capiō AND Audiō	191
XCIII	ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM Faciō — PREDICATE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES REVIEWED	193
	LATIN PLAYS	195
XCIV	HORĀTIUS — A LATIN PLAY	195
	SPECIAL VOCABULARY	202
XCV	CAESAR I	207
XCVI	CAESAR II	208
XCVII	VOCABULARY REVIEW — TIME-LIMITED TEST, No. 9	209
XCVIII	CURTIUS — ROMAN MONEY	211
XCIX	ONE HUNDRED WORD TEST, No. 3	213
C	REVIEW OF THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN -iō — Iaciō AND ITS COMPOUNDS	215

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

RITCHIE'S PERSEUS AND SELECTIONS FROM RITCHIE'S ARGONAUTS		217
EASY STORIES IN LATIN		219
I THE IRREGULAR VERB Volō — STORY OF PERSEUS I		221
II INDEFINITE PRONOUN (AND ADJECTIVE) Quīdam — PERSEUS II		223

III	THE IRREGULAR VERB, <i>Ferô</i> — PERSEUS III	225
IV	THE FOURTH DECLENSION — PERSEUS IV	227
V	PERSEUS V AND VI — ABLATIVE OF MANNER — ABLATIVE OF RESPECT	229
VI	THE FIFTH DECLENSION — PERSEUS VII AND VIII	232
VII	PERSEUS IX — LINEAL MEASURE — ROMAN WRITING	235
VIII	REVIEW SENTENCES — PERSEUS X	237
IX	PARTICIPLES — THE ARGONAUTS I.	239
X	THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES — THE ARGO- NAUTS II	243
XI	THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES (<i>Continued</i>) — THE ARGONAUTS III	245
XII	THE PRESENT AND THE PAST PARTICIPLE — ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE — THE ARGONAUTS IV	247
XIII	INFINITIVES — THE ARGONAUTS V	249
XIV	INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT — THE ARGONAUTS VI	251
XV	INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT (<i>Continued</i>) — THE ARGONAUTS VII	253
XVI	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE — PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE <i>Sum</i> , <i>Possum</i> , <i>Volô</i> — PURPOSE CLAUSES (<i>Continued</i>) — RESULT CLAUSES — THE ARGONAUTS VIII.	255
XVII	PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE — <i>Cum</i> CIRCUMSTANTIAL — THE ARGONAUTS IX	257
XVIII	PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE — INDIRECT QUESTIONS — THE AR- GONAUTS X	259
XIX	INDIRECT QUESTIONS (<i>Continued</i>) — SEQUENCE OF TENSES — THE ARGONAUTS XI	261
XX	DEPONENT VERBS — THE ARGONAUTS XII — PARTICIPLES (<i>Continued</i>)	263
	SOME COMMON AND FAMILIAR LATIN EXPRESSIONS.	269
	SUMMARY OF LATIN MOTTOES	270
	LATIN NAMES FOR SOME COMMON BIRDS AND ANIMALS	275
	RULES	276
	SUMMARY OF INFLECTIONS	279
	LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.	313
	ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.	338
	INDEX	349

INTRODUCTORY LESSON

The following topics are given for purposes of reference, review, and summary of classroom experience. The pupil should receive his first lessons in pronunciation of vowels and consonants, quantities of syllables and accents, directly from his teacher, as a necessary part of his daily assignments.

ALPHABET

The Latin alphabet lacks j and w. Otherwise it is like the English. But k, y, z, are rare.

VOWELS

The Latin vowels are either long or short. The sound of a long vowel is always the same. A short vowel is sounded like a long vowel, but only half the time is given to its pronunciation. Long vowels are marked (ˉ).

LONG

ā as in far: māter, mother
ē as in they: lēx, law
ī as in machine: liber, free
ō as in note: mōs, custom
ū as oo in moon: mūs, mouse

SHORT

a as in polka: amat, he loves
e as in pen: et, and
i as in tin: in, in
o as in harmony: domus, home
u as oo in look: ubi, where

DIPHTHONGS

The Latin diphthong is always long. Its sound is always the same.

ae as ai in aisle: laetus, happy
au as ou in out: laudō, I praise
ei as ei in eight: hei! ah! woel
eu as eu in feud: heu! alas!
oe as oi in foil: proelium, battle
ui almost ui in quick: cui, to whom

CONSONANTS

In Latin a consonant has only one sound. Most consonants are pronounced as in English, but pronounce

c like c in cap: **caput**, *head*

g like g in get (never as in gem): **gentēs**, *racēs*

i consonant (usually a consonant at the beginning of a word, before a vowel, and within a word between vowels) like y in yes: **iaciō**, *I hurl*, **aiō**, *I say*

t always like t, not like sh (motion): **ōrātiō**, *oration*

s like s in yes: **Caesar**, *Caesar*

v like w in wind: **veniō**, *I come*

x like ks, never like gz or z: **rēxit**, *he ruled*

ch like k in polka: **pulcher**, *beautiful*

bs like ps in camps: **urbs**, *city*

bt like pt in optic: **obtimeō**, *I obtain*

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

When memorizing a Latin word, learn the long vowels. Whenever you write a Latin word place over every long vowel the mark (ˉ). Most long vowels are learned only by careful observation, study, oral practice, and repeated writing. These rules are useful:

- 1 A vowel before **-nf** and **-ns** is long.
- 2 A vowel before **-nd** and **-nt** is short.
- 3 A vowel before another vowel or **h** is short.

SYLLABLES

There are as many syllables in a Latin word as there are vowels and diphthongs: **fī-li-a**, **hor-tus**, **pu-el-la**, **lau-dō**, **e-quus** (in the combination **qu**, both **q** and **u** are consonants).

In the division of a word into syllables (1) a single consonant goes with the vowel that follows it: **fī-li-a**; (2) when two or more consonants are between two vowels, as many consonants

usually go with the vowel following as can be pronounced with it: **ser-vus**, **op-pi-dum**, **mōn-strō**; (3) **x** is joined with the preceding consonant: **dux-it**; (4) in dividing a compound word into syllables, the division must show the parts which make the compound: **ab-ri-pi-ō**.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

A syllable is long if it contains:

- 1 a diphthong,
- 2 a long vowel,
- 3 a short vowel followed by two or more consonants separately pronounced, or by **x** or **z**.

Other syllables are short.

ACCENT

Placing the accent of Latin words is very simple and regular, if you know the length of the syllables.

1 Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable: **pú-er**, **hór-tus**.

2 Words of more than two syllables are accented on the next to the last syllable, if it is long; if the next to the last syllable is short, the one before it is accented: **Rō-mâ-nus**, **per-mít-tō**, **fî-li-a**.

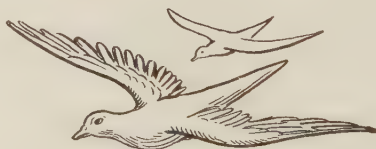
GENDER

With the help of the following rules and those that go with each of the five declensions, the gender of most Latin nouns may be determined. The gender of nouns that come under none of the rules must be learned.

- 1 Names of males are masculine.
- 2 Names of females are feminine.
- 3 Names of rivers, winds, months, and mountains are masculine.
- 4 Names of countries, cities, islands, and trees are feminine.
- 5 Abstract and collective nouns are feminine.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

<i>abl.</i> ablative	<i>loc.</i> locative
<i>acc.</i> accusative	<i>m.</i> and <i>masc.</i> masculine
<i>act.</i> active	<i>n.</i> and <i>neut.</i> neuter
<i>adj.</i> adjective	<i>nom.</i> nominative
<i>adv.</i> adverb	<i>n.</i> noun
<i>comp.</i> comparative	<i>num.</i> numeral
<i>conj.</i> conjunction	<i>par.</i> paragraph
<i>dat.</i> dative	<i>part.</i> participle
<i>def.</i> definite	<i>pass.</i> passive
<i>demons.</i> demonstrative	<i>perf.</i> perfect
<i>dep.</i> deponent	<i>perf. part.</i> perfect participle
<i>encl.</i> enclitic	<i>pers.</i> personal
<i>f.</i> and <i>fem.</i> feminine	<i>pluperf.</i> pluperfect
<i>fut.</i> future	<i>plur.</i> plural
<i>fut. perf.</i> future perfect	<i>poss.</i> possessive
<i>gen.</i> genitive	<i>prep.</i> preposition
<i>imper.</i> imperative	<i>pres.</i> present
<i>imperf.</i> imperfect	<i>pro.</i> pronoun
<i>impers.</i> impersonal	<i>reflex.</i> reflexive
<i>indecl.</i> indeclinable	<i>rel.</i> relative
<i>indef.</i> indefinite	<i>sing.</i> singular
<i>indic.</i> indicative	<i>subj.</i> subjunctive
<i>infin.</i> infinitive	<i>superl.</i> superlative
<i>interj.</i> interjection	<i>tr.</i> transitive
<i>interrog.</i> interrogative	<i>v.</i> verb
<i>intr.</i> intransitive	<i>voc.</i> vocative
<i>irr.</i> irregular	



COLUMBAE, doves

LATIN

Latin derives its name from Latium, the flatlands, one of several little kingdoms into which ancient Italy was divided. Latium embraced much of that fertile plain now called the Campagna. Rome, according to tradition, was founded in the eighth century (753) B.C., and was within the boundaries of Latium.

Beginning as a small village on a low hill beside the river Tiber, Rome rapidly grew in population, territory, and wealth until her power was supreme far beyond her seven hills. The peoples of Italy, Greece, Asia Minor, Northern Africa, Spain, France, Britain, in fact, most of western Europe, became subjects of the proud city on the Tiber. Roman officials, traders, travelers, and colonists everywhere followed the trail of the conquering legions, and with all of them went the Latin language.

For hundreds of years Latin was the official language of the Roman Empire. Educated men and women in all parts of Rome's far-flung domain spoke and wrote excellent Latin. The great mass of people also learned the language which was the everyday speech of the Roman legionary, trader, and colonist. Latin seemed destined to be a common tongue of the western world. Even after the break-up of the Roman Empire, Latin continued for a thousand years to be the language of literature, science, art, diplomacy, and religion.

But languages, like people, are affected by time and by their surroundings. With the passing years there have developed, in Italy, Spain, and France, national languages, each with a character of its own, yet closely akin one to the other and especially to Latin, the parent of them all.

About ninety per cent of the words in Italian, French, and Spanish are derived from Latin. It is evident that a knowledge of Latin is a great help to the mastery of these languages. More than half the words that we commonly use in English come directly or indirectly (through Italian or French) from Latin. Every year the percentage of Latin words in English is being increased. Professional and business men — scholars, scientists, inventors, and even advertisers — when in need of a new word, draw upon the treasures of Latin and, in a lesser degree, of Greek. The technical vocabularies of the arts and of the sciences — medicine, law, theology, engineering, dentistry, pharmacy — are largely Latin. Some knowledge of Latin is desirable for those who are engaged in the arts and in the practice of the various professions.

For those who have even a moderate knowledge of Latin, the precious hoard of English words is greatly increased and thousands of these words take on new or clearer meanings. A study of Latin not only enriches the learner's vocabulary, but also helps in the spelling of many English words. It affords a clearer understanding of language structure; it makes one a keen critic of what he writes himself and of the literary work of others; and finally, it acquaints him with some of the best literature, the great events, personages, myths, and legends of Roman and Greek times. Without some knowledge of these important and interesting matters, no one can understand, and therefore appreciate, the art, literature, and life of his own day.

FIRST YEAR LATIN

LESSON I

PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

- 1 Verb, **portō**, *I carry* Present stem, **portā-**

SINGULAR

portō, *I carry, am carrying, do carry*

portās, *you carry, are carrying, do carry*

portat, *he, she, it carries, is carrying, does carry*

PLURAL

portāmus, *we carry, are carrying, do carry*

portātis, *you carry, are carrying, do carry*

portant, *they carry, are carrying, do carry*

Each of these verb forms consists of two elements:

1 **Portā-**, the present stem, which indicates the general meaning of the word. In **portō** the **-ā** of the stem has disappeared.

2 An ending which indicates the person and the number.

2 Memorize the foregoing Latin verb forms and their equivalents in English, also the following table:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
-ō , <i>I</i>	-mus , <i>we</i>
-s , <i>you (sing.)</i>	-tis , <i>you (plur.)</i>
-t , <i>he (she, it)</i>	-nt , <i>they</i>

3 VOCABULARY

ambulō (**ambulā-**), *I walk*
et, *and*

habitō (**habitā-**), *I live, dwell*

labōrō (**labōrā-**), *I work*

nōn, *not*

portō (**portā-**), *I carry, bring*
sed, *but*

vocō (**vocā-**), *I call, summon*

Note. The marks for long vowels should always be written as a part of the Latin word.

4 Pronounce the Latin, giving the correct sound of every vowel and the proper accent of every word; translate.

1 portat	11 labōrat
2 portō	12 labōrās
3 portātis	13 ambulātis
4 portat	14 habitant
5 portāmus	15 ambulō
6 portās	16 vocant
7 ambulat	17 labōrāmus
8 vocātis	18 vocās
9 ambulant	19 habitō
10 habitāmus	20 labōrant

5 1 you (sing.) carry	11 they work
2 he carries	12 you (plur.) work
3 we carry	13 you (sing.) walk
4 they carry	14 he lives
5 I carry	15 we walk
6 you (plur.) carry	16 he calls
7 they walk	17 I work
8 you (sing.) call	18 they call
9 he walks	19 we live
10 I live	20 he works

- 6 (a) Ambulās et portās; labōrant sed ambulāmus.
 (b) Labōrat et vocat; ambulātis sed nōn labōrātis.
 (c) Vocant sed nōn vocāmus; ambulant sed nōn portant.



GALLĪNA ET GALLĪNULAE, *hen and chickens*

LESSON II

SUBJECT NOMINATIVE — AGREEMENT OF VERB WITH SUBJECT

7

VOCABULARY

agricola, *farmer*

filia, *daughter*

nauta, *sailor*

puella, *girl*

rēgina, *queen*

serva, *slave*

Pronounce and examine the following sentences:

Nauta labōrat, *the sailor works.*

Nautae labōrant, *the sailors work.*

Nauta, nominative singular, ending **-a**, is the subject of **labōrat**.

Nutae, nominative plural, ending **-ae**, is the subject of **labōrant**.

Labōrat is in the third person singular because its subject **nauta** is in the third person singular; **labōrant** also agrees with its subject **nautae**.



AGRICOLA LABŌRAT, *the farmer works*

8 Rule. *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.*

9 Rule. *A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

10

EXERCISES

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Rēgīna ambulat. | 10 Serva labōrat. |
| 2 Rēgīnae ambulant. | 11 Agricolae ambulant. |
| 3 Puella vocat. | 12 Rēgīna habitat. |
| 4 Puellae vocant. | 13 Filiae vocant |
| 5 Agricola labōrat. | 14 Servae labōrant. |
| 6 Agricolae labōrant. | 15 Rēgīnae habitant. |
| 7 Nauta habitat. | 16 Filia vocat. |
| 8 Nautae habitant. | 17 Agricola ambulat. |
| 9 Labōrāmus et vocāmus. | 18 Portātis et labōrātis. |

11

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 The girl calls. | 10 The queen calls. |
| 2 We walk but do not carry. | 11 They walk and carry. |
| 3 The farmer works. | 12 The daughter dwells. |
| 4 You walk and he works. | 13 I dwell, they dwell. |
| 5 The sailors carry. | 14 The farmers walk. |
| 6 We live and work. | 15 The girls carry. |
| 7 The queen walks. | 16 You (sing.) work. |
| 8 You (plur.) work. | 17 The sailor does not work. |
| 9 The girls are walking. | 18 The slave is calling. |

12

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Give the Latin word suggested by each of the following: portal, import, export; vocal, vocative, vocalize; nautical; agriculture; labor, elaborate; habitation, inhabit; amble, ambulance; perambulator.

Notes. When the subject is expressed the personal ending is not separately translated.

There are no Latin words for *a*, *an*, *the*. When translating into English, use the one that fits the best.

Labor ipse voluptās — *Work itself is a pleasure.*

LESSON III

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES — PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *Sum*

13

VOCABULARY

<i>bona, good</i>	<i>parva, small</i>
<i>insula, island</i>	<i>silva, forest</i>
<i>longa, long</i>	<i>via, road, way, street</i>
<i>magna, large</i>	<i>in viā, in (on) the road</i>
<i>sum, I am</i>	

14 The verb **sum** is irregular.

Verb, **sum, I am**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum, I am	sumus, we are
es, you are	estis, you are
est, he, she, it is	sunt, they are

15 Pronounce and examine the following sentences:

- 1 **Numa est agricola, Numa is a farmer.**
- 2 **Filiae sunt rēgīnae, the daughters are queens.**
- 3 **Puella est parva, the girl is small.**
- 4 **Filiae sunt bonae, the daughters are good.**

In sentence 1, **agricola** is in the nominative singular to agree with the subject, **Numa**. In sentence 2, **rēgīnae** is in the nominative plural to agree with the subject, **filiae**. **Agricola** and **rēgīnae**, as used in these sentences, are called predicate nouns, or predicate nominatives. Each of the adjectives, **parva** and **bonae**, in sentences 3 and 4, agrees with the subject of its sentence and is called a predicate adjective.

16 Rule. *A predicate noun has the same case as the subject of the verb.*

17 Rule. *A predicate adjective has the same gender, number, and case as the subject of the verb.*

18

EXERCISES

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 Sum nauta. | 9 Rēgīna est magna. |
| 2 Sumus nautae. | 10 Galba in (on) insulā habitat. |
| 3 Est agricola. | 11 Insula est magna. |
| 4 Sunt agricolae. | 12 Silvae parvae in insulā sunt. |
| 5 Estis puellae. | 13 Galba est nauta. |
| 6 Filia est puella bona. | 14 Numa nōn est nauta. |
| 7 Viae sunt longae. | 15 Numa in silvā habitat. |
| 8 Silva magna in insulā ¹ est. | 16 Filiae in silvā ambulant. |

19

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1 We are girls. | 6 They are not sailors. |
| 2 He is a sailor. | 7 You are a good girl. |
| 3 You are not queens. | 8 The islands are large. |
| 4 I am a farmer. | 9 The way is long. |
| 5 The daughters are good girls. | 10 The roads on the island ¹ are long. |

20

AURAL EXERCISE

(Pupils close books. Let the teacher read the Latin of paragraph 18 to the pupils sentence by sentence, distinctly, with strict attention to the sounds of the vowels, quantity of vowels and length of syllables as affecting accent.)

Translate each of the foregoing Latin sentences at hearing. After translating a sentence from Latin to English, reproduce it in Latin orally. In giving the Latin sentence, strive to show its meaning by appropriate emphasis and tone of voice. Imitate the teacher's reading of the Latin.

Note. An adjective may modify its noun (1) directly, **puella bona**, or (2) in the predicate, **puella est bona**. In the latter case, the adjective is called a predicate adjective.

¹ Insulā is in the ablative singular; the ending is -ā in the singular, -is in the plural.

LESSON IV

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *Portō* — PREDICATE NOMINATIVE OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (Continued)

21 Verb, *portō*, I carry

Present stem, *portā-*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

portor, I am carried

portāmur, we are carried

portāris, you are carried

portāmini, you are carried

portātur, he, she, it is carried

portantur, they are carried

Note. Sometimes the passive present forms are translated, *I am being carried, you are being carried*, etc.

Each of these verb forms consists of two elements:

1 *Portā-*, the present stem, indicating the general meaning of the word.

2 An ending indicating the passive voice, the person, and the number.

These endings are added directly to the present stem. In *portor* the *ā* of the stem has disappeared.

22 Following is a table of the personal endings of the passive voice:

SINGULAR

PLURAL

-r(or)

-mur

-ris

-mini

-tur

-ntur

23

VOCABULARY

appellō (*appellā-*), I call, name
cūr, why?

Octāvia, Octavia, a woman's
name

Galba, -ae, Galba

putō (*putā-*), I think

Iūlia, Julia, a woman's name

timida, cowardly, fearful

nūntiō (*nūntiā-*), I announce,
declare

ubi, where

24 Rule. *Predicate nouns and predicate adjectives, with verbs in the passive voice, agree with their subjects in accordance with paragraphs 16, 17.*

25**WORD ORDER**

In a simple declarative Latin sentence the verb usually is placed at the end. This order may be changed for purposes of emphasis.

A Latin adjective usually follows directly the word it modifies.

26**EXERCISES**

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Numa agricola appellātur. | 9 Rēgīna appellor. |
| 2 Nauta Galba appellātur. | 10 Filiae timidae putāmur. |
| 3 Agricolae appellāminī. | 11 Rēgīna appellāris bona. |
| 4 Viae putantur longae. | 12 Via longa putātur bona. |
| 5 Filia bona vocātur. | 13 Cūr Iūlia timida appellātur? |
| 6 Rēgīnae magnae nūntiantur. | 14 Agricolae nōn putāminī. |
| 7 Puellae vocantur timidae. | 15 Ubi sunt puellae bonae? |
| 8 Silva nōn parva putātur. | 16 Ubi est Galba? |

27

- 1 We are called queens.
- 2 You are thought a cowardly girl.
- 3 You are called good daughters.
- 4 The long roads are thought good.
- 5 Why are the girls called cowardly?
- 6 He is not thought a farmer.
- 7 Where is the good girl?
- 8 The forests are not large.

28 Give the Latin word from which each of the following is derived, and use each word given below correctly in an English sentence:

Insular, silvan, appellation, filial, vocation, longitude, portable.

LESSON V

ACCUSATIVE AS DIRECT OBJECT

29 Study the following sentences:

- 1 **Rēgina** **fīliam** **vocat**, *the queen calls (her) daughter.*
- 2 **Rēginae** **filiās** **vocant**, *the queens call (their) daughters.*

In English, the position of a noun in a sentence usually determines its case. In the English of sentence 1, *daughter* is the direct object of *calls*. If we change the order of the words to *The daughter calls the queen*, *queen* becomes the object, and *daughter* the subject.

In Latin, the ending of a noun, not its position in a sentence, usually determines its case. If we change the order of the Latin words in sentence 1 to **Fīliam** **rēgina** **vocat**, but do not change the endings of **fīliam** and **rēgina**, **fīliam** remains the direct object and **rēgina** the subject. The only difference between the meanings of the two sentences is that in **Rēgina** **fīliam** **vocat**, **rēgina** is emphasized, and in **Fīliam** **rēgina** **vocat**, **fīliam** is emphasized. In English, emphasis is often indicated by italics or by underlining.

The case of the direct object of a verb in Latin is called the accusative, not the objective, as in English. The ending in the singular is **-am**, in the plural **-ās**.

30 Rule. *The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.*

Note. The objective cases of some English pronouns end in *m*: *him, them, whom*.

31

VOCABULARY

amō (**amā-**), *I love, like*

aqua, *water*

convocō (**convocā-**), *I call together*

intrō (**intrā-**), *I enter*

Italia, *Italy*

patria, *native land, country*

terra, *land, country*

32

EXERCISES

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1 Octāvia patriam amat. | 5 Iūlia Octāviam amat. |
| 2 Nautae aquam portant. | 6 Octāvia Iūliam amat. |
| 3 Agricolaē nautās vocant. | 7 Terra Italia appellātur. |
| 4 Cūr filiae silvās intrant? | 8 Agricola puellās vocat. |
| 9 The native land is Italy. | 13 The queen calls together |
| 10 The native land is called | (her) daughters. |
| Italy. | 14 The daughters are called |
| 11 The farmer enters the for- | together. |
| est; works in the for- | 15 Octavia and Julia love the |
| est. ¹ | forests; walk in the for- |
| 12 Water is in the forests. ¹ | ests. |
| 16 The forests are loved. | |

33

IULIA ET OCTAVIA

Iūlia et Octāvia in Italiā¹ habitant. Italia est patria. Est terra magna. Iūlia et Octāvia Italiam amant. Puellae in viīs ambulant. Silvās magnās intrant. Agricola in silvīs labōrat. Puellās appellat. Puellae nōn sunt timidae. Ad (to) agricolam aquam portant.

34 Answer these questions in Latin. Use complete sentences in your answers.

- 1 Ubi habitant Iūlia et Octāvia?
- 2 Cūr amant Italiam?
- 3 Ubi labōrat agricola?
- 4 Ubi ambulat Octāvia?

¹ In the English prepositional phrases, *in the water*, *on the water*; *in the roads*, *on the roads*, the nouns are in the objective case. In the Latin prepositional phrases, *in aquā*, *in (on) the water*; *in viīs*, *in (on) the roads*, the nouns are not in the accusative (objective) case. The Latin preposition *in* (English *in* or *on*) requires a case called ablative. In the singular the ablative case ends in *-ā*; in the plural, *-is*.

LESSON VI

IMPERFECT ACTIVE AND PASSIVE INDICATIVE OF *Portō* — HOW TO ASK QUESTIONS IN LATIN

35 Verb, *portō*, *I carry*

Present stem, *portā-*

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

portābam, *I was carrying*¹
portābās, *you were carrying*
portābat, *he, she, it was carrying*
portābāmus, *we were carrying*
portābātis, *you were carrying*
portābant, *they were carrying*

PASSIVE

portābar, *I was carried*
portābāris, *you were carried*
portābātur, *he, she, it was carried*
portābāmur, *we were carried*
portābāmini, *you were carried*
portābantur, *they were carried*

Each of these forms consists of three elements:

1 *portā-*, the present stem; 2 *ba-*, the sign of the indicative imperfect; 3 the personal ending (*-m* is the ending of the first person singular active, not *-ō*).

36 TABULAR FORM (for blackboard)

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

Present Stem	Mode and Tense Sign	Personal Ending	Present Stem	Mode and Tense Sign	Personal Ending
<i>portā</i> <i>portā</i> etc.	<i>ba</i> <i>bā</i> etc.	<i>m</i> <i>s</i> etc.	<i>portā</i> <i>portā</i> etc.	<i>ba</i> <i>bā</i> etc.	<i>r</i> <i>ris</i> etc.

37 VOCABULARY

exspectō (*exspectā-*), *I wait for* -*ne*, enclitic, indicates a question
laudō (*laudā-*), *I praise* *pugnō* (*pugnā-*), *I fight*
nāvigō (*nāvigā-*), *I sail* *quis*, *who?*

In tabular form, write the complete imperfect of *portō*; *laudō*.

¹ Also *I used to carry*, *I carried*, and similarly for all other forms.

38

ASKING QUESTIONS IN LATIN

1 *Puella ambulat, the girl walks.*2 *Ambulatne puella? Does the girl walk?*

-ne attached to an emphatic word in the sentence, is called an *enclitic*. It has no separate translation, but is used to ask questions. In questions, an important word, often the verb, with the enclitic attached, usually comes first. When *cūr*, *quis*, or any other question word is used, **-ne** is omitted.

39

EXERCISES

1 *Rēgīna patriam amābat.*

1 I was awaited.

2 *Amābatne rēgīna patriam?*

2 You (sing.) were carried.

3 *Agricolae terram amābant.*

3 We were praised.

4 *Amābantne agricolae terram?*

4 You (plur.) were carried.

5 *Octāvia nautam laudābat.*

5 He was praised.

6 *Laudābatne Octāvia nautam?*

6 They were carried.

40 Answer the following questions in Latin:

1 *Quis vocātur?*

1 Who praises the sailors?

2 *Laudanturne nautae?*

2 Where do sailors fight?

3 *Vocābārisne agricola?*

3 Were the girls walking?

4 *Amābātturne patria?*

4 Was Julia praised?

5 *Vocābanturne puellae?*

5 Were they awaiting the queen?

6 *Quis expectābātur?*

6 Where was the queen awaited?



RĒGĪNA, queen

LESSON VII

FUTURE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE INDICATIVE OF *Portō* — ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT

41 Verb, *portō*, *I carry* Present stem, *portā-*

FUTURE INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

<i>portābō</i> , <i>I shall carry</i>	<i>portābor</i> , <i>I shall be carried</i>
<i>portābis</i> , <i>you will carry</i>	<i>portāberis</i> , <i>you will be carried</i>
<i>portābit</i> , <i>he, she, it will carry</i>	<i>portābitur</i> , <i>he, she, it will be carried</i>
<i>portābimus</i> , <i>we shall carry</i>	<i>portābimur</i> , <i>we shall be carried</i>
<i>portābitis</i> , <i>you will carry</i>	<i>portābiminī</i> , <i>you will be carried</i>
<i>portābunt</i> , <i>they will carry</i>	<i>portābuntur</i> , <i>they will be carried</i>

Each of these forms consists of three elements:

- 1 *portā-*, the present stem;
- 2 *bi-*, the sign of the indicative future (but note exceptions);
- 3 the personal ending.

Observe that the first person singular ends in *-bō* in the active and *-bor* in the passive, the second singular passive ends in *-beris*, the third plural active and passive end respectively in *-bunt* and *-buntur*.

The foregoing conjugation may be presented in tabular form on the blackboard in a manner similar to that indicated in 36 for use in connection with the indicative imperfect forms.

42

VOCABULARY

<i>Anna</i> , <i>Anna</i> , a woman's name	<i>Rōma</i> , <i>Rome</i>
<i>cōservō</i> (<i>cōservā-</i>), <i>I save (fully)</i>	<i>Rōmae</i> , <i>at Rome</i>
<i>diū</i> , adv., <i>a long time</i>	<i>Rōmāna</i> , adj., <i>Roman</i>
<i>nova</i> , <i>new</i>	<i>salūtō</i> (<i>salūtā-</i>), <i>I greet</i>
<i>Numa</i> , <i>Numa</i> , a man's name	<i>servō</i> (<i>servā-</i>), <i>I save, protect</i>
<i>porta</i> , <i>gate</i>	<i>spectō</i> (<i>spectā-</i>), <i>I look at</i>

43

ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT

- 1 *Patria ab Annā amātur, her native land is loved by Anna.*
 2 *Viae ab agricolīs laudābuntur, the roads will be praised by the farmers.*

Note. (1) The agent is regularly a person.

(2) This ablative is always preceded by the preposition **ab** or **ā**.

(3) It is used only with a passive verb.

(4) The ending of the ablative singular is **-ā**, plural **-īs**.

44 Rule. *The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ab** or **ā**. **Ab** must be used before words beginning with a vowel or **h**.*

45

EXERCISES

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 Anna Rōmam amābit. | 7 Silvam spectābimus. |
| 2 Rōma ab Annā amābitur. | 8 Quis Rōmam cōservābit? |
| 3 Puellae rēginam laudābunt. | 9 Rōma nōn servābitur. |
| 4 Puellae ā rēginā laudābuntur. | 10 Cōservābimur ā rēginā magnā. |
| 5 Numa Rōmam servābit. | 11 Spectāberis ā puellīs parvīs. |
| 6 Rōma ā Numā servābitur. | |
- 12 Servābiminī ab agricolā.

46

ROMA

Rōma est in Italiā. Rōma est magna. Anna et Iūlia Rōmae habitant sed nōn sunt puellae Rōmānae. Rēginam amābunt et servābunt. Rēgina ab Annā laudābitur. Puellae rēginam ad (*at*) portam spectābunt. A rēginā spectābuntur. Rēgina Annam et Iūliam salūtābit. Anna et Iūlia portās novās spectābunt. A rēginā puellae appellābuntur bonāe.

47 Close books. Write the foregoing paragraph at the teacher's dictation. Compare with original. Translate.



AQUILA, eagle

LESSON VIII

THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *Sum* — INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES *Nōnne* AND *Num*

48 Verb, *sum*, *I am*

INDICATIVE IMPERFECT

eram, *I was*

erās, *you were*

erat, *he, she, it was*

erāmus, *we were*

erātis, *you were*

erant, *they were*

INDICATIVE FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*

eris, *you will be*

erit, *he, she, it will be*

erimus, *we shall be*

eritis, *you will be*

erunt, *they will be*

49 *Nōnne*, *Num*

Nōnne est Rōma magna? *Rome is great, is it not?*

Num est patria parva? *The native country is not small, is it?*

50 VOCABULARY

domina, mistress of a house,
lady

nōnne, interrogative particle,
the answer "yes" is ex-
pected

nōta, known, well-known

num, interrogative particle,
the answer "no" is expected

Olivia, *Olivia*, a woman's name

villa, country house, *villa*



LEAENA, lioness

51

EXERCISES

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 Erimus agricolae. | 1 We were sailors. |
| 2 Erās nauta. | 2 They are sailors. |
| 3 Erit timida puella. | 3 They will be farmers. |
| 4 Erāmus timidae puellae. | 4 You are a good girl. |
| 5 Eritis filiae bonae. | 5 He will be a farmer. |
| 6 Eram in silvā. | 6 She was a good daughter. |
| 7 Eris Rōmae. | 7 I shall be at Rome. |
| 8 Erātis in Italiā. | 8 We shall be in the villas. |
| 9 Salūtāberis ab Annā. | 9 They are saved by the sailors. |

52

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1 Villa erat magna. | 6 Quis erat? |
| 2 Porta erit nova. | 7 Num erat domina timida? |
| 3 Villae erant nōtae. | 8 Nōnne erunt villae parvae? |
| 4 Nōnne longa erit via? | 9 Olivia est in villā. |
| 5 Num longae erunt viae? | 10 Rēgīna Iūliam salūtābit. |
| 11 Num erit Olivia Rōmae in villā? | |
| 12 Nōnne Anna nōtās villās laudābat? | |
| 13 Portae novae erunt parvae. | |
| 14 Nōnne villae ā puellīs laudābuntur? | |
| 15 Quis puellās timidās convocābat? | |
| 16 Num insulae parvae erunt nōtae? | |
| 17 Dominae villam novam spectābunt. | |
| 18 Villae novae ā dominīs spectābantur. | |

53 Give two or more English words associated by derivation with each of the following:

Convocō, laudō, pugnō, putō, nāvigō, servō, cōnservō, spectō, exspectō, magna, timida.



PANTHĒRA, panther

LESSON IX

THE GENITIVE CASE — APPPOSITION

54

THE GENITIVE CASE

1 *Villa dominae est nōta*, the country house of the lady is well-known, or, the lady's country house is well-known.

2 *Anna filiās rēginārum salūtat*, Anna greets the daughters of the queens, or, Anna greets the queens' daughters.

The ending of the genitive singular is **-ae**, the same as of the nominative plural; the ending of the genitive plural is **-ārum**.

Remarks: The genitive case in Latin corresponds in use to:

- (1) the adjective phrase in English introduced by *of*;
- (2) the possessive case in English.

55

APPPOSITION

1 *Laudāmus Galbam, nautam*, we praise Galba, the sailor.

2 *Filiam Numae, agricolae, laudant*, they praise the daughter of Numa, the farmer.

Note. *Nautam* is in the accusative because *Galbam*, the noun it explains, is in the accusative. Likewise, *agricolae* is in the genitive because *Numae*, the noun it explains, is in the genitive.

56 Rule. *An appositive agrees in case with the noun or pronoun that it explains.*

57

VOCABULARY

ad , prep. with acc., toward (with verb of motion); near (with verb not indicating motion)	exīstimō (exīstimā-), I think, consider
appropinquō (appropinquā-), I approach	fortūna , fortune, good fortune, fate
certa , certain, sure, fixed	occupō (occupā-), I seize, take, take possession of
	superba , proud, haughty



ST. PETER'S AT ROME

58

EXERCISES

- 1 Fortūna dominae est certa.
- 2 Domina silvās nōtās occupābit.
- 3 Domina in villā magnā habitat.
- 4 Novae portae villārum laudantur.
- 5 Aquam ad dominam villae magnae portābunt.
- 6 Domina villae in viā Rōmānā ambulat.
- 7 Nōnne sunt villae puellārum parvae?
- 8 Num sunt filiae agricolārum timidae?

59

- 1 The farmers' daughters live in a country house.
- 2 They live in the queen's forest in small villas.
- 3 The good fortune of the girls is well known.
- 4 Farmers' daughters love the land and forests.
- 5 The girls are not the haughty daughters of queens.
- 6 Julia and Octavia are considered good girls.

60

IN VIA APPIA (ON THE APPIAN WAY)

Dominae Rōmānae in villis novīs habitābant. Dominārum villa erat ad Viam Appiam, nōtam viam Italiae. Agricola in Viā Appiā ambulābat. Villam dominārum spectābat et laudābat. Villa dominārum erat magna. Agricolae villa erat parva. Agricola ad villam magnam appropinquābat. Fīliās dominārum spectābat et salūtābat. Dominae villae erant superbae. Agricola dominās nōn salūtābat; ā dominīs nōn salūtābātur.

VIA APPIA, *Appian Way*

61 VOCABULARY REVIEWS — SUGGESTIONS

The words in the review vocabularies that follow may be used:

(1) as a *written* time-limited test; (2) as an *oral* time-limited test.

For the written test each pupil will fold and cut lengthwise, through the middle, one sheet of standard-sized pad. The pupil will write his name at the top of one of these slips. Then he will write the consecutive numbers from 1 to 25 inclusive, down the left margin. Next he will turn over the slip and write the numbers 26 to 50 in a similar manner on the reverse side.

At a signal from the teacher he will open his book to the list of Latin words and write on his slip, number for number, the English equivalents. When "Time!" is called by the teacher, he must instantly cease writing. The proper time limit for writing fifty words is six minutes.

This exercise may also be used with profit as an oral test. With his eyes on the Latin words, a pupil should be able to give the English equivalents of fifty in a minute. If he pronounces each Latin word before giving the English, the rate should be forty a minute.

After his list of fifty English words has been corrected, the pupil may be required to write after each English word on his list the Latin equivalent. These Latin words he may check with the words of the original list in his textbook.

Reviews of this type may be used as a means of assuring the ready recall of the English word when its Latin equivalent is visualized. The pupil may be expected to write forty Latin words in six minutes, when the English is given. From forty to fifty Latin words a minute is a fair rate for oral tests based on the vocabulary of the following lesson.



LUSCINIAE, *nightingales*

LESSON X

VOCABULARY REVIEW

62

TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 1

1 ad	26 nāvigō
2 agricolā	27 nōn
3 ambulō	28 nōta
4 amō	29 nova
5 appellō	30 nūntiō
6 appropinquō	31 parva
7 aqua	32 patria
8 bona	33 porta
9 certa	34 portō
10 cōservō	35 puella
11 convocō	36 pugnō
12 cūr	37 putō
13 diū	38 quis
14 domina	39 rēgina
15 et	40 salūtō
16 exspectō	41 servō
17 filia	42 silva
18 habitō	43 spectō
19 īnsula	44 sum
20 intrō	45 terra
21 labōrō	46 timida
22 laudō	47 ubi
23 longa	48 via
24 magna	49 villa
25 nauta	50 vocō



VACCA, *cow*

63

1	toward, near	26	I sail
2	farmer	27	not
3	I walk	28	well-known
4	I love, like	29	new
5	I call, name	30	I announce
6	I approach	31	small
7	water	32	native land, country
8	good	33	gate
9	sure, certain	34	I carry
10	I save (fully)	35	girl
11	I call together	36	I fight
12	why?	37	I think
13	a long time	38	who?
14	lady	39	queen
15	and	40	I greet
16	I wait for, await	41	I save, protect
17	daughter	42	forest
18	I live, dwell	43	I look at
19	island	44	I am
20	I enter	45	land, country
21	I work	46	cowardly, timid
22	I praise	47	where?
23	long	48	road, way
24	large, great	49	country house, villa
25	sailor	50	I call, summon



ALAUDAE, skylarks

LESSON XI

DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT — USE OF THE

64

DATIVE

1 **Octāvia Annae pictūram dat**, *Octavia gives a picture to Anna*, or, *Octavia gives Anna a picture.*

2 **Nauta agricolīs fābulam nārrat**, *the sailor tells a story to the farmers*, or, *the sailor tells the farmers a story.*

3 **Pecūnia Octāviae dabitur**, *the money will be given to Octavia*, or, *the money will be given Octavia.*

In sentence 1, **pictūram** is the thing given, the direct object of **dat**; **Annae** is the person to whom the picture is given. **Annae** is in the dative case, the indirect object of **dat**. The ending is **-ae**. (Compare with genitive singular.)

In sentence 2, **fābulam** is the thing told, the direct object of **nārrat**; **agricolīs** represents the persons to whom the sailor tells the story. **Agricolīs** is in the dative plural, the indirect object of **nārrat**. The ending is **-īs**. (Compare with ablative plural.)

In sentence 3, **Octāviae** is in the dative case (singular); **Octāviae** is the indirect object of the passive verb **dabitur**. The ending is **-ae**.

Rule. *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

In a Latin sentence the indirect object regularly is placed before the direct object. This order may be changed for reasons of emphasis.

65

VOCABULARY

dō (da-),¹ I give

fābula, f., story

incola, m. and f., inhabitant

misera, sad, wretched

nārrō (nārrā-), I tell

pecūnia, f., money

pictūra, f., picture

quid, what?

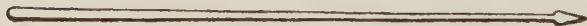
vēra, true

victōria, f., victory

¹ Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive (657). Note the short **a** in all forms except **dās**.

EXERCISES

- 66 1 Anna filiae fābulam nārrat.
2 Puella Annae fābulam nārrābit.
3 Victōriam nautīs nūntiābunt.
4 Nautae incolīs victōriam nūntiābunt.
5 Olivia rēgīnae fābulās longās nārrābat.
6 Fābulae agricolīs ā nautīs nārrantur.
7 Nōnne nārrābis dominae fābulam?
8 Domina puellīs pictūrās dabit.
9 Pecūnia ab agricolīs bonīs Iūliae dabitur.
10 Num filia Annae Rōmae erit?
- 67 Answer in Latin:
1 Quis filiae fābulam nārrābat?
2 Nōnne Galbae fābulam nārrābitis?
3 Quis nautīs victōriam nūntiābit?
4 Quid domina puellīs dabat?
5 Nārrābisne fābulam agricolīs?
6 Num pecūnia Annae dabitur?
7 Nōnne rēgīna nautae pecūniam dabit?
- 68 1 Who will tell a story to the lady?
2 I will tell the lady a true story.
3 Sailors are walking on the Appian Way.
4 They are giving pictures to the inhabitants.
5 They will tell the inhabitants a sad story.
6 The inhabitants will give money to the sailors.
7 Shall we not give the sailors money?

HASTA, *spear*

LESSON XII

FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS — REVIEW

69 Noun, *silva*, f., *forest*

Base, *silv-*

SINGULAR		
CASES		CASE ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>silva</i> , a ¹ forest	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>silvae</i> , of a forest, a forest's	-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>silvae</i> , to (for) a forest (indirect object)	-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>silvam</i> , a forest (direct object)	-am
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>silvā</i> , from, by, (with prep., in) in a forest	-ā
PLURAL		
CASES		CASE ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>silvae</i> , forests	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>silvārum</i> , of forests, forests'	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>silvīs</i> , to (for) forests (indirect object)	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>silvās</i> , forests (direct object)	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>silvīs</i> , from, by, (with prep., in) in forests	-īs

1 Memorize the case endings.

2 The vocative case (case of direct address), the same as the nominative in this declension as in most other declensions, is not given here.

3 The base is obtained by dropping the ending -ae of the genitive singular.

4 What cases in the singular have the same endings? In the plural? What cases in the singular have the same endings as the nominative plural?

5 To decline *silva*, add the case endings to the base *silv-*.

Note The gender of most nouns of this declension is feminine, but names of males are masculine. The following masculines have been used in the previous lessons: *agricola*, *Galba*, *nauta*, *Numa*. *Incola* is usually considered masculine.

¹ Sometimes the article "the" instead of "a" is required, sometimes no article, according to the use.

70 (a) Pronounce each Latin word.

Name the case in which each noun is found.

If the noun is in the singular, give the corresponding plural.

If the noun is in the plural, give the corresponding singular.

1 **Agricola** (what cases?); **portis** (what cases?); **villā**.

2 **Patriam**, **villārum**, **viis**.

3 **Porta**, **nautās**, **rēgīnae** (gen.).

4 **Fortūnae** (dat.), **terrae** (plur.).

(b) Write the Latin for:

1 The picture (as subject), the water (as direct object), of the villa, the villa's, villa (as indirect object).

2 In the water, on (in) the islands, for the farmers.

3 Of the sailors, the sailors (as subject), the daughters (as direct object).

4 Write ten original Latin sentences. Use the nominative singular of **agricola** in 1, the ablative singular of **portis** in 2, the genitive singular of **patriam** in 3, the ablative plural of **villārum** in 4, the nominative plural of **viis** in 5, the accusative plural of **villa** in 6, the dative singular of **nautās** in 7, the dative plural of **rēgīnae** in 8, the accusative singular of **fortūna** in 9, the genitive plural of **terrae** in 10.

71 Using **silva** as a model, write the complete declension of: **insula**, **patria**, **rēgīna bona**.

72 Give the Latin word from which each of the following is derived: fable, fortunate, misery, narrative, occupy, picture, victory.



ARBORES, trees

Nōn est ad astra mollis ē terris via (Seneca) — *There is no easy path from earth to heaven.*

LESSON XIII

Sum, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE — REVIEW

73

Verb, *sum, I am*

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRESENT

sum, I am

es, you are

est, he, she, it is

sumus, we are

estis, you are

sunt, they are

IMPERFECT

eram, I was

erās, you were

erat, he, she, it was

erāmus, we were

erātis, you were

erant, they were

FUTURE

erō, I shall be

eris, you will be

erit, he, she, it will be

erimus, we shall be

eritis, you will be

erunt, they will be

Review the personal endings (2).

Learn the conjugations so thoroughly that you can recite each tense in order, with the English for each form, or give the English for Latin, or Latin for English, in any order.

74

USES OF THE BLACKBOARD

The blackboard is a valuable aid in the Latin classroom. By its use all members of the class enjoy an equal opportunity to visualize Latin words and sentences written in script, and to share in noting and in correcting errors.

It is suggested that pupils follow the practice of putting their names at the top of the board. Each pupil should write his exercise on the board strictly within assigned space limits.

Vertical lines drawn between the spaces assigned to individual pupils will be found of value to this end. Exercises should be carefully aligned and neatly and legibly written.

75

EXERCISES

Translate rapidly:

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 sumus, eram, erit. | 7 Fortūna incolae est misera. |
| 2 erō, erās, erat. | 8 Victōria Galbae erat nōta. |
| 3 sunt, erunt, erant. | 9 Misera erit fortūna dominae. |
| 4 erit, erāmus, estis. | 10 Suntne fābulae nautārum vērae? |
| 5 eritis, est, es. | 11 Pictūrae Rōmae sunt nōtae. |
| 6 sum, erātis, erimus. | 12 Victōriae patriae erunt magnae. |

76

- 1 We shall not¹ be inhabitants of Italy.
- 2 The queen of Italy is not haughty.
- 3 You, Julia, are a good daughter.
- 4 Anna and Julia were not unhappy girls.
- 5 We were in the streets of Rome.
- 6 I am not the daughter of the farmer.
- 7 Galba and Numa are inhabitants of Italy.
- 8 I was not on the Appian Way.
- 9 The sailors will carry the queen's money.
- 10 You are the well-known daughter of Galba.
- 11 The queen's daughter was a haughty lady.
- 12 I shall not be queen of a great country.

¹The Latin **nōn**, *not*, regularly is placed directly before the Latin word which it modifies, usually a verb.



ROMAN COINS

LESSON XIV

FIRST CONJUGATION — REVIEW — PRESENT SYSTEM

77 Verb, **portō**, *I carry*

Present stem, **portā-**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT

I carry, am carrying, etc.

I am carried, etc.

portō	portāmus
portās	portātis
portat	portant

portor	portāmur
portāris	portāminī
portātur	portantur

IMPERFECT

I carried, was carrying, etc.

I was carried, etc.

portābam	portābāmus
portābās	portābātis
portābat	portābant

portābar	portābāmur
portābāris	portābāminī
portābātur	portābantur

FUTURE

I shall carry, etc.

I shall be carried, etc.

portābō	portābimus
portābis	portābitis
portābit	portābunt

portābor	portābimur
portāberis	portābiminī
portābitur	portābuntur

1 The present, imperfect, and future tenses of **portō** in the indicative, active, and passive, have been given in previous lessons. The conjugation of these tenses is presented in this lesson for purposes of review, comparison, and drill.

2 It is expected that the exercises in this lesson shall be both oral and written. The pupil should give orally, the English equivalents from the teacher's pronunciation of the Latin forms, and in a similar manner the Latin equivalents for the English. Written home work may be assigned, and full use made of the blackboard.

3 Written and oral synopses of some of the verbs given in the preceding lessons will afford an excellent preparation for the exercises.

78

EXERCISES

- 1 Labōrāmus, nāvigābant, properābō, putās.
- 2 Parābimus, pugnābat, amābitur, servāris.
- 3 Apellābuntur, appellābantur, nāvigant, vocās.
- 4 Nūntiābant, putābis, vocāmur, servābar.
- 5 Putās, convocābāminī, spectābit, spectat.
- 6 Vocābiminī, occupābātur, existimat, servābor.
- 7 Appellāmur, existimō, laudābantur, occupābuntur.
- 8 Occupō, amābitur, vocābam, nāvigābunt, erunt.
- 9 Appellātur, existimās, occupābit, parābātur.
- 10 Exspectābāminī, properābant, nūntiābitur, amantur.
- 11 Occupābunt, laudābiminī, putātis, parābātur.
- 12 Exspectābat, nāvigābunt, laudābāmus, sunt.

79

CLAUDIA

Claudia, puella Americāna, in Americā diū habitābat in villā Octāviae. Nunc in Italiā habitat. Claudia pictūrās pulchrās et statuās nōtās ibi spectābit. Incolae Italiae fābulās longās dē (*about*) pictūris et statuīs nārrābunt. Claudia pictūrās et statuās laudābit. Sed patriam amat. Mox ad Americam nāvigābit. Ibi ab dominā villae Americānae exspectātur.

80 AURAL: Close books. Write the foregoing paragraph at teacher's dictation. Compare with original. Translate.

81

VOCABULARY

America, <i>America</i>	nunc, adv., <i>now</i>
Americāna, adj., <i>American</i>	parō (parā-), <i>I get ready, prepare</i>
Claudia, a girl's name	properō (properā-), <i>I hasten, hurry</i>
ibi, adv., <i>there</i>	pulchra, <i>beautiful</i>
mox, adv., <i>presently</i>	statua, <i>statue</i>

LESSON XV

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN *-us* — THE VOCATIVE CASE — GENDER IN ENGLISH AND LATIN

82 Noun, *servus*, m., *a servant, slave*

Base, *serv-*

SINGULAR	
CASES	CASE ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i> servus , <i>a servant</i>	-us
<i>Gen.</i> servī , <i>of a servant, a servant's</i>	-ī
<i>Dat.</i> servō , <i>to or for a servant</i>	-ō
<i>Acc.</i> servum , <i>servant</i> (direct object)	-um
<i>Abl.</i> servō , <i>with, from, by a servant</i>	-ō
<i>Voc.</i> serve , <i>O servant!</i>	-e
PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i> servī , <i>the servants</i>	-ī
<i>Gen.</i> servōrum , <i>of the servants, servants'</i>	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> servīs , <i>to or for the servants</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i> servōs , <i>servants</i> (direct object)	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i> servīs , <i>with, from, by servants</i>	-īs
<i>Voc.</i> servī , <i>O servants!</i>	-ī

Nouns ending in *-ius* have a genitive singular in *-ī*: *sociī*. In the other cases the endings are added to the base, *soci-*, without change.

83 THE VOCATIVE CASE

The *vocative case* is used in direct address: "Marcus, where are you going?" In Latin, "Marcus" would be expressed in the vocative case. In the plural, the vocative is always the same as the nominative. In the singular, also, the Latin nominative and vocative are alike except in nouns of the second declension that end in *-us*. These nouns (and adjectives) have a vocative ending in *-e*: **Serve! Mārce! Serve bone!**

The vocative singular of *filius*, *son*, and of proper nouns that end in *-ius*, *Iūlius*, ends in *-ī* (not *-ie*): *fili!* *Iūli!*

The vocative rarely stands first in a Latin sentence. Regularly it is placed second: *Cūr, fili, properās?*

84

VOCABULARY

animus, *-ī*, m., *spirit, soul*

filius, *-ī*, m., *son*

Brūtus, *-ī*, m., *Brutus*

Iūlius, *-ī*, m., *Julius*

dominus, *-ī*, m., *master*

Mārcus, *-ī*, m., *Marcus*

equus, *-ī*, m., *horse*

servus, *-ī*, m., *slave, servant*

socius, *-ī*, m., *ally, comrade*

85 In English, names of males are masculine and names of females are feminine. Names of objects without sex are neuter. In Latin, also, names of males are masculine and names of females are feminine. The gender of objects without sex is determined in various ways. At present, we need only to remember that nouns of the first declension are feminine, unless they are the names of males (*agricola*, *nauta*, *incola*, *Galba*, etc.); nouns of the second declension in *-us* are masculine.

This jingle was a favorite with the boys and girls of a generation ago who were learning the gender of nouns:

- 1 Nations, males, rivers, winds,
Mounts, and months are *masculines*.
- 2 Females, isles, lands, towns, and trees —
Among the *feminines* are these.
- 3 Whatever cannot be declined
This is of the *neuter* kind.
- 4 *Common* is whatever can
Include a woman and a man.

86

EXERCISES

- 1 Equus soci magnus¹ erat.
- 2 Servi dominorum equum magnum laudabant.
- 3 Animus equi a servis laudabatur.
- 4 Animi equorum non timidi existimantur.
- 5 Servus equo misero aquam non dabit.
- 6 Aqua equis miseris a servo non dabitur.
- 7 Quis, Brute, servos appellabit bonos?
- 8 Filii reginae in equis portabantur.
- 9 Amasne, Iuli, magnos domini equos?
- 10 Socii filiorum equos domini expectant.

87

- 1 Who, Julius, does not love a good¹ horse?
- 2 Shall we, Brutus, not praise the spirit of a great horse?
- 3 The spirits of great horses are not cowardly, are they?
- 4 Who, (my) son, will be carried on the horse?
- 5 The cowardly servants will not give the horses water.
- 6 The master's son will give the horse water.
- 7 The horse is not considered cowardly by the master.
- 8 Comrades, shall we not wait for the horses?
- 9 At Rome we shall be carried on the great horses.
- 10 The master praises the spirits of (his) son's horses.

¹ In this, and in the following lesson, all adjectives must have the same endings as the nouns that they modify.



A ROMAN LAMP



THE TOMB OF HADRIAN

LESSON XVI

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN -um

88 Noun, **bellum**, n., *war*

Base, **bell-**

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
CASES	CASE ENDINGS	CASES	CASE ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i> bellum	-um	<i>Nom.</i> bella	-a
<i>Gen.</i> belli	-ī	<i>Gen.</i> bellōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> bellō	-ō	<i>Dat.</i> bellīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i> bellum	-um	<i>Acc.</i> bella	-a
<i>Abl.</i> bellō	-ō	<i>Abl.</i> bellīs	-īs

1 Nouns ending in **-ium** (**auxilium**) have **-ī** in the genitive singular (**auxili**). In the other cases the endings are added to the base, **auxili-**, without change.

2 The vocative is the same as the nominative.

3 Compare **bellum** with the declension of **servus**. In the singular, what case is different? What cases are different in the plural? Learn now and remember that in *all* neuter (Latin) nouns (and adjectives) the nominative and accusative plurals are alike and *always* end in **-a**. The gender is neuter.

89

VOCABULARY

auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help*

bellum, -ī, n., *war*

forum, -ī, n., *market place*

frumentum, -ī, n., *grain*

oppidānus, -ī, m., *townsman*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town*

periculum, -ī, n., *danger*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle*

Decline: **oppidum**, **periculum magnum**, **proelium**.



Equi, *horses*

90

EXERCISES

- 1 Oppida nōta in Italiā erant.
- 2 In oppidis Rōmānīs viae bonae erant.
- 3 Dominī in oppidō Rōmānō habitābant.
- 4 Incola oppidī oppidānus appellābātur.
- 5 Incolae oppidōrum oppidānī appellābantur.
- 6 Oppidānī oppidum et forum laudābant.
- 7 Proelia et perīcula bellōrum oppidānī nōn amant.
- 8 In bellīs magnīs servī dominīs auxilium dabant.
- 9 Oppidum et incolae oppidī ā servīs cōservābantur.
- 10 Nōne laudābis, Brūte, auxilium magnum servōrum bonōrum?

91

- 1 The farmers will give aid to the townsmen.
- 2 Aid will be given the townsmen by the farmers.
- 3 The slaves will give the horses grain and water.
- 4 Grain will be given to the horses by the slaves.
- 5 The horses are large and the grain is good.
- 6 Son, who will give the townsmen aid?
- 7 The dangers are great and the town is small.
- 8 In wars, the help of the slaves was well known.
- 9 Will not the farmers give aid to the slaves?
- 10 We shall praise the towns and the townsmen.

DOMINUS ET SERVUS, *master and slave*

LESSON XVII

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

92 An adjective has three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. An adjective of the **bonus** type, in agreement (1) with a masculine noun, is declined like **servus**; (2) with a feminine noun, like **silva**; (3) with a neuter noun, like **bellum**.

An adjective always has the same gender, number, and case as its noun, but does not always have the same endings. **Agri-
cola** is declined like a feminine noun, but is really masculine because it denotes a man. **Agricola bonus** (not **bona**) is correct.

93 Rule. *An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.*

94 Adjective, **bonus**, *good*

Base; **bon-**

SINGULAR		
<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
bonus (voc. bone)	bona	bonum
bonī	bonae	bonī
bonō	bonae	bonō
bonum	bonam	bonum
bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL		
bonī	bonae	bona
bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
bonōs	bonās	bona
bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

95

VOCABULARY

aequus, -a, -um, *level, just, honest*

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep, tall*

amicus, -a, -um, *friendly*

amicus, -ī, m., *friend*

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *advice, plan*

inimicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly*

inimicus, -ī, m., *enemy*

longus, -a, -um, *long*

per, prep. with acc., *through*

96

DRILL: ORAL AND WRITTEN

Decline: *rēgīna amīca, proelium longum, nauta inimīcus.*

Practice on these and other combinations of noun and adjective until you can recite and write the declensions rapidly and correctly.

97

EXERCISES

- 1 Nōnne spectābis, fili bone, nautam altum?
- 2 Nauta in oppidō incolārum inimīcōrum ambulat.
- 3 Cūr sunt incolae nautīs (*dat.*) inimīcī?
- 4 Num occupābunt nautae viās oppidī et forum?
- 5 Agricola est aequus; cōsiliū et auxilium nautae altō *dat.*
- 6 Agricolae nōn sunt timidī; nautās nōn laudābunt.
- 7 Nōnne nautae amīcī ab agricolīs bonīs laudābantur?
- 8 Nautae altī per aquam nāvigābunt et frūmentum ad equōs agricolārum aequōrum portābunt.
- 9 Oppidum nōtum est in altīs silvīs et silvae sunt in insulā magnā.

98

- 1 The tall sailors live on a small island.
- 2 The good sailor carries grain to (*ad* with *acc.*) the just farmer's country house.
- 3 The friendly farmers do not live in towns; they love the good soil (*terra*).
- 4 A just farmer is friendly to a good townsman.
- 5 The farmers' horses are walking in the long roads and are carrying aid to (*ad*) the inhabitants of the little town.
- 6 The tall sailor will not give aid to an unfriendly inhabitant.
- 7 Shall we not praise the tall sailor's little island and the good land of the friendly farmers?



PILUM, *javelin*

LESSON XVIII

FIVE IMPORTANT PREPOSITIONS

99 Study the illustrative sentences until you are sure that you understand the meanings and the uses of the prepositions.

1 **Brūtus ā villā properat**, *Brutus hastens away from his country house* (perhaps he is on his way to town).

2 **Brūtus dē villā properat**, *Brutus hastens (down) from his country house* (maybe his house is on a hill).

3 **Brūtus ex villā properat**, *Brutus hastens out of his country house* (he was inside).

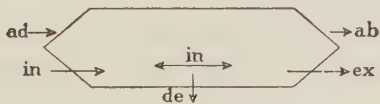
4 **Brūtus ad villam properat**, *Brutus hastens toward (to) his country house* (he is on his way home).

5 **Brūtus in villam properat**, *Brutus hastens into his country house* (he actually enters).

6 **Brūtus in villā habitat**, *Brutus lives in the country house.*

100

AN ILLUSTRATIVE DEVICE



101

VOCABULARY

ab (ā), prep. with abl., *from, away from* (with personal agent, by)

dē, prep. with abl., *down from*

ex (ē), prep. with abl., *out of, from* (**ex** before a vowel or **h**)

in, prep. with acc., *into, against*

in, prep. with abl., *in, on*

prō, prep. with abl., *in defense of, in front of, for*

arma, -ōrum (plur. only), n., *weapons, arms*

castra, -ōrum (plur. only), n., *camp*

liberō (liberā-), *I set free*

locō (locā-), *I place, put*

multus, -a, -um, *much*, plur., *many*

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall*

tardus, -a, -um, *slow*

Note 1. You have used the preposition **ab** (**ā**) with a passive verb many times to denote a personal agent (44). **Ab** may be translated *by* only when it denotes a *personal* agent with a passive verb.

Note 2. The Latin preposition **in** is used with (1) a noun (or pronoun) in the ablative: **in oppidō labōrat**, *he works in the town*; **in oppidō ambulat**, *he walks in the town*; (2) a noun (or pronoun) in the accusative: **in oppidum properat**, *he hastens into* (sometimes *against*) *the town*. Whenever, in your reading, you see the Latin preposition **in**, examine the word which it governs. If the word is in the ablative, translate the preposition by *in* or *on* according to the sense; if the noun is in the accusative, translate *into* (or *against*).

102

EXERCISES

1 **Ab oppidō, ex oppidō, in oppidō, in oppidum, prō oppidō, dē oppidō.**

2 **Ad castra, ex castrīs, in castra, in castrīs, ā castrīs, prō castrīs, dē castrīs.**

3 **Dē silvā, ad īnsulās, in terrā, in aquam, prō patriā.**

103 1 **Away from towns, in towns, into towns, out of towns, in defense of towns.**

2 **Toward the island, into camp, out of the water, down from the wall, in defense of (their) native land.**

104 **Oppidum parvum et oppidānī sunt in periculō magnō. Incolae magnī oppidī sunt inimīcī. Arma multa ad oppidum parvum nunc portant. Equōs magnōs in silvīs altīs locant. Arma ad bellum parant. Parvī oppidī incolae sunt tardī. In forō labōrant et nautīs fābulās longās narrant. Prō portīs oppidī nōn pugnābunt. In mūrō arma nōn parant. Incolae timidī dē mūrō ad agricolās amīcōs properābunt. Quis, incolae tardī, oppidum ē periculō liberābit?**



ROMAN COINS

LESSON XIX

VOCABULARY REVIEW

105

TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 2

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------|
| 1 ab (ā) | 26 incola |
| 2 aequus | 27 inimicus |
| 3 altus | 28 liberō |
| 4 amicus (<i>adj.</i>) | 29 locō |
| 5 amicus (<i>noun</i>) | 30 longus |
| 6 animus | 31 misera |
| 7 arma | 32 mox |
| 8 auxilium | 33 nārrō |
| 9 bellum | 34 nunc |
| 10 castra | 35 occupō |
| 11 cōnsilium | 36 oppidānus |
| 12 dē | 37 oppidum |
| 13 dō | 38 pecūnia |
| 14 dominus | 39 periculum |
| 15 equus | 40 pictūra |
| 16 ex (ē) | 41 proelium |
| 17 existimō | 42 properō |
| 18 fābula | 43 pulchra |
| 19 filius | 44 quid? |
| 20 fortūna | 45 sed |
| 21 forum | 46 socius |
| 22 frūmentum | 47 statua |
| 23 ibi | 48 superba |
| 24 in (with <i>acc.</i>) | 49 vērā |
| 25 in (with <i>abl.</i>) | 50 victōria |



LEOPARDĪ, *leopards*

106

1 from, away from	26 inhabitant
2 fair, just	27 unfriendly
3 high, deep, tall	28 set free
4 friendly	29 place, put
5 friend	30 long
6 spirit, soul	31 sad, wretched
7 weapons, arms	32 presently
8 aid, help	33 tell
9 war	34 now
10 camp	35 seize, take possession of
11 advice, plan	36 townsman
12 down from	37 town
13 give	38 money
14 master	39 danger
15 horse	40 picture
16 out of, from	41 battle
17 think, consider	42 hasten, hurry
18 story	43 beautiful
19 son	44 what?
20 fortune, fate	45 but
21 market place	46 ally, comrade
22 grain	47 statue
23 there	48 proud, haughty
24 into, against	49 true
25 in, on	50 victory



MŪLĪ, mules

LESSON XX

ENGLISH FROM LATIN — THE FAMILY TREE

107 To the pupils:

You have noticed in some of the preceding lessons how certain familiar English words come directly from the Latin. As you progress in your studies, you will gradually acquire the habit of relating many English words to their Latin originals. In the lessons that follow, it is planned to present groups of words that will assist you in acquiring such a habit. In this way, your stock of English words will grow surprisingly fast and their meanings will be more fully understood because of your increasing knowledge of their Latin ancestry. Many of you will gradually acquire much skill in seeing through the Latin the real meaning of a variety and range of English words that were before unfamiliar.

Recent investigations indicate that about fifty-two per cent of the English words used by authors and writers in various fields are of Latin origin. Many of these words come directly from the Latin, some of them from the Latin through the French. It is quite apparent, therefore, that the study of English through Latin is of immense practical value. In fact, there is no other study in the high school curriculum that should yield such immediate, definite, and abundant returns in useful, everyday values as the study of Latin.

In your work in derivation, you should make use of a notebook. For this purpose, a book of the loose-leaf type, similar to the one that is used for recording experiments in physics, will be found the most convenient. It is strongly advised that such a book be opened by each of you early in the first year of study and that the same book be used systematically

Iniūria nōn excūsāt iniūriam — *A wrong does not excuse a wrong.*

LESSON XXI

SECOND CONJUGATION, INDICATIVE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT — ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

- 110** Verb, *moneō*, *I advise, warn*
Present Active Infinitive, *monēre*, *to advise*
Present Stem, *monē-*

PRESENT

ACTIVE

I advise, do advise, etc.

<i>moneō</i>	<i>monēmus</i>
<i>monēs</i>	<i>monētis</i>
<i>monet</i>	<i>monent</i>

PASSIVE

I am advised, am being advised, etc.

<i>moneor</i>	<i>monēmur</i>
<i>monēris</i>	<i>monēmini</i>
<i>monētur</i>	<i>monentur</i>

IMPERFECT

I was advising, etc.

<i>monēbam</i>	<i>monēbāmus</i>
<i>monēbās</i>	<i>monēbātis</i>
<i>monēbat</i>	<i>monēbant</i>

I was being advised, etc.

<i>monēbar</i>	<i>monēbāmur</i>
<i>monēbāris</i>	<i>monēbāmini</i>
<i>monēbātur</i>	<i>monēbantur</i>

First conjugation verbs have *ā* before *-re* in the infinitive: *portāre*. Second conjugation verbs have *ē* before *-re* in the infinitive: *monēre*.

111 Hereafter, the present active infinitive, not the present stem, will be given in the vocabularies.

112

VOCABULARY

<i>dēbeō</i> , <i>dēbēre</i> , <i>ought, owe, deserve</i>	<i>moveō</i> , <i>movēre</i> , <i>move</i>
<i>habeō</i> , <i>habēre</i> , <i>have, hold. consider</i>	<i>populus</i> , <i>-ī</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>the people</i>
<i>moneō</i> , <i>monēre</i> , <i>advise, warn</i>	<i>videō</i> , <i>vidēre</i> , <i>see</i>

113 Conjugate orally (also write):

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 <i>dēbeō</i> , in the present active | 3 <i>moveō</i> , in the imperfect active |
| 2 <i>habeō</i> , in the present passive | 4 <i>videō</i> , in the imperfect passive |

114 ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

1 **Frumentum equis movēbātur.**

The grain was being moved by means of horses.

2 **Armīs nōn pecūniā pugnābimus.**

We shall fight with weapons not with money.

115 Rule. *The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

116

EXERCISES

- 1 Oppidum et amicum oppidī populū vidēre dēbēmus.
- 2 Ad oppidum properābāmus et incolās amīcōs vidēbāmus.
- 3 Socius agricolās timidōs ex villis in oppidum movēbat.
- 4 Agricolaē timidī ā sociis mox movēbantur.
- 5 Dēbentne oppidānī agricolam aequū ē periculō liberāre?
- 6 Arma dē mūrō nōn equis sed ā servīs movēbantur.
- 7 Multa arma ā populō oppidī nōn vidēbantur.
- 8 Nōnne monēbāmus populū amicum oppidōrum magnōrum?
- 9 Nauta ad oppida equō portātur et populū monet.
- 10 Nautam bonum et equū altū laudāre dēbētis.

117

- 1 The weapons were moved out of the town by the horses.
- 2 The horses deserve to have much grain and good water.
- 3 The inhabitants of the town do not have good weapons.
- 4 Will they fight in the great war with small weapons?
- 5 Ought we to hasten out of the camp into the town?
- 6 We saw horses and many weapons in the camp.
- 7 Were you warning the honest farmers?
- 8 The good people were warned by a friendly sailor.
- 9 The town will not be freed by means of money.
- 10 The town will be saved by the help of the sailors.

Nil mortālibus arduum est (Horace) — *Nothing is too hard for man to dare.*

LESSON XXII

SECOND CONJUGATION, INDICATIVE FUTURE — SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN *-er* AND *-ir*

118 Verb, *moneō, monēre, advise* Present stem, *monē-*

ACTIVE		FUTURE		PASSIVE	
<i>I shall advise, you will advise, etc.</i>				<i>I shall be advised, you will be advised, etc.</i>	
<i>monēbō</i>	<i>monēbimus</i>	<i>monēbor</i>	<i>monēbimur</i>		
<i>monēbis</i>	<i>monēbitis</i>	<i>monēberis</i>	<i>monēbimini</i>		
<i>monēbit</i>	<i>monēbunt</i>	<i>monēbitur</i>	<i>monēbuntur</i>		

119 SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN *-er* AND *-ir*

The gender is masculine.

<i>puer, puerī, m., boy</i>		<i>ager, agrī, m., field</i>		<i>vir, virī, m., man</i>	
base, <i>puer-</i>		base, <i>agr-</i>		base, <i>vir-</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>puer</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>virī</i>
<i>puerī</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>virōrum</i>
<i>puerō</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>virīs</i>
<i>puerum</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>virōs</i>
<i>puerō</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>virīs</i>

120 When you study a noun learn (1) the nominative, (2) the genitive, (3) the gender, (4) the English equivalent.

121 VOCABULARY

<i>ager, agrī, m., field</i>	<i>liber, librī, m., book</i>
<i>amicitia, -ae, f., friendship</i>	<i>locus, -ī, m. (in sing.), place</i>
<i>diligentia, -ae, f., diligence, care</i>	<i>loca, -ōrum, n. (in the plur.), places</i>
<i>exemplum, -ī, n., example</i>	<i>puer, puerī, m., boy</i>
<i>iubeō, iubēre, order</i>	<i>vir, virī, m., man</i>

122 Decline (orally and in writing): **puer bonus, ager longus, liber magnus.**

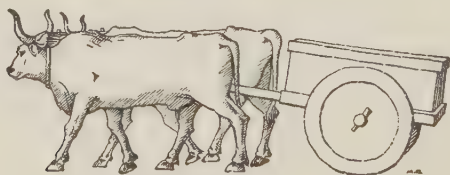
123

EXERCISES

- 1 Castra ex silvīs in agrōs longōs movēbuntur.
- 2 Agricolaē puerōs tardōs ex agrō in villam vocābunt.
- 3 Quis iubēbit puerum parvum in agrō labōrāre?
- 4 Puerī frūmentum ab agrīs ad oppida equīs movēbunt.
- 5 Num frūmentum ā puerīs ad villās movēbitur?
- 6 Galba diligentiam puerōrum videt et laudat.
- 7 Statua Galbae ā puerīs vidēbitur et laudābitur.
- 8 Equōrum auxiliō frūmentum in oppidum movēbātur.
- 9 Domīnī puerōs equīs frūmentum bonum dare iubēbunt.
- 10 Loca aequa agrī longī ā dominō occupābuntur.

124

- 1 The boys have the horses in the level fields.
- 2 By means of horses much grain will be moved.
- 3 The boys like the horses; they do not like books.
- 4 The horses are working in the level field.
- 5 The men will order the boys to work in the fields.
- 6 With the help of the horses the boys will move the grain.
- 7 The boys ought to give the horses grain and water.
- 8 The men will order the slow boy to carry water to the horses.
- 9 The master orders the man to give an example of care.
- 10 The boys will see and praise the man's good example.



BOVĒS ET CARRUS, *oxen and cart*

Poëta nāscitur, nōn fit (Horace) — *A poet is born, not made.*

LESSON XXIII

SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN -er

125 Liber, libera, liberum, *free*

Base, liber-

SINGULAR

Masculine

liber

liberī

liberō

liberum

liberō

Feminine

libera

liberae

liberae

liberam

liberā

Neuter

liberum

liberī

liberō

liberum

liberō

PLURAL

liberī

liberōrum

liberīs

liberōs

liberīs

liberae

liberārum

liberīs

liberās

liberīs

libera

liberōrum

liberīs

libera

liberīs

1 Compare the masculine of the foregoing with the declension of *puer*; the feminine with *silva*; the neuter with *bellum*.

2 Decline together *vir liber, oppidum liberum, puella libera, poëta liber*.

126

VOCABULARY

bene, adv., *well*

esse, present infin. of *sum*, *to be*

glōria, -ae, f., *glory, renown*

hodiē, adv., *today*

iam, adv., *by this time, already*

liber, libera, liberum, *free*

memoria, -ae, f., *memory*

neque . . . neque, conj., *neither . . . nor*

nōn iam, *no longer*

poëta, -ae, m., *poet*

postea, adv., *afterwards*

teneō, tenēre, *hold, keep*; with *memoriā*, *remember*

verbum, -ī, n., *word*

127

EXERCISES

- 1 Italiam, patriam magnam virōrum liberōrum, vidēs.
- 2 Italiae liberae, patriae poētārum, glōriam dabimus.
- 3 Mox in viis oppidōrum incolās liberōs vidēbis.
- 4 Postea in Forō Rōmānō poētās magnōs vidēbimus.
- 5 Incolae oppidōrum liberōrum sunt virī bonī.
- 6 Parvīs in oppidīs poētam magnum nōn vidēmus.
- 7 Incolae liberī poētās et verba poētārum memoriā tenent.
- 8 Nōne, Mārce, memoriā bene tenēbis glōriam poētārum?
- 9 Puerī liberī glōriam poētae memoriā tenēre debent.
- 10 Quis puerōs poētīs auxilium dare iubēbit?
- 11 Poēta bonus neque servum neque inimicum habet.
- 12 Glōria poētārum memoriā populī liberī diū tenēbitur.
- 13 Hodiē Rōmam, magnum Italiae oppidum, vidēbis.
- 14 Postea glōriam Rōmae et virōrum liberōrum laudābis.

128

- 1 Shall I see a poet in the streets of the free town?
- 2 Not in the town, but at Rome, you will see many poets.
- 3 We ought to remember the great words of the poets.
- 4 A poet ought to be a free man in a free country.
- 5 A poor slave was afterwards a famous Roman poet.
- 6 We shall remember Italy, the land of poets.



A BRIDGE OVER THE TIBER

Cui saepe mille imposui plāgārum in diem (Lucilius) — *I have often given him a thousand stripes a day.*

LESSON XXIV

SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN *-er*

(Continued)

129 Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful, pretty* Base pulchr-

SINGULAR

Masculine

pulcher
pulchrī
pulchrō
pulchrum
pulchrō

Feminine

pulchra
pulchrae
pulchrae
pulchram
pulchrā

Neuter

pulchrum
pulchrī
pulchrō
pulchrum
pulchrō

PLURAL

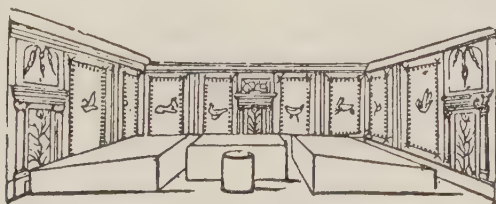
pulchrī
pulchrōrum
pulchrīs
pulchrōs
pulchrīs

pulchrae
pulchrārum
pulchrīs
pulchrās
pulchrīs

pulchra
pulchrōrum
pulchrīs
pulchra
pulchrīs

1. Compare the masculine of the foregoing with the declension of *ager*.

2 Decline together: *via pulchra, oppidum pulchrum, equus pulcher.*



TRICLINIUM, *table-couch*

130

ORBILIUS, LUDI MAGISTER

Orbilius erat lūdī Rōmānī magister. Filius erat virī liberī Beneventī, oppidī in Italiā nōtī. Orbilius multīs in proeliis in Macedoniā pugnābat. Posteā, Beneventī (*at Beneventum*) et Rōmae Orbilius puerōs parvōs in lūdō habēbat. Magister discipulīs fābulās pulchrās nārrābat. Discipulōs ē memoriā fābulās recitāre iubēbat. Timidī discipulī fābulās novās ē memoriā nōn bene recitābant. Magister discipulōs miserōs ferulā castigābat. Discipulī neque fābulās neque Orbilium, magistrum. amābant.

Horātius, puer (posteā erat magnus poēta Rōmānus), ab Orbiliō, magistrō, docēbātur. Horātius erat puer nōn piger sed tardus. Puerō, Horātiō, fābulam longam nārrābat Orbilius. Magister Horātium, discipulum timidum, fābulam pulchram ē memoriā recitāre iubēbat. Horātius, puer tardus, fābulam longam memoriā nōn tenēbat. Irātus magister, Orbilius, discipulum miserum ferulā longā castigābat. Posteā Horātius, nōn iam puer, Orbilium appellābat "plāgōsum."

131

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

Beneventum, -ī, n., a town in Italy

castigō, castigāre, *whip, beat*

discipulus, -ī, m., *pupil*

doceō, docēre, *teach*

ferula, -ae, f., *ruler*

irātus, -a, -um, *angry*

lūdus, -ī, m., *school; in plur., often games*

Macedonia, -ae, f., a country of Europe

magister, magistrī, m., *master, master of a school*

miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, unhappy*

piger, pigra, pigrum, *lazy*

plāgōsus, -a, -um, *full of blows*
recitō, recitāre, *recite (aloud)*



WAX WRITING TABLETS

LESSON XXV

REVIEW OF *Amō, Moneō, Sum*

INDICATIVE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE (ACTIVE VOICE) OF *Audiō* (FOURTH CONJUGATION)

132

amō, amāre	moneō, monēre	audiō, audire	sum, esse
------------	---------------	---------------	-----------

PRESENT

amō	moneō	audiō	sum
amās	monēs	audīs	es
amat	monet	audit	est
amāmus	monēmus	audīmus	sumus
amātis	monētis	audītis	estis
amant	monent	audiunt	sunt

IMPERFECT

amābam	monēbam	audiēbam	eram
amābās	monēbās	audiēbās	erās
amābat	monēbat	audiēbat	erat
amābāmus	monēbāmus	audiēbāmus	erāmus
amābātis	monēbātis	audiēbātis	erātis
amābant	monēbant	audiēbant	erant

FUTURE

amābō	monēbō	audiam	erō
amābis	monēbis	audiēs	eris
amābit	monēbit	audiet	erit
amābimus	monēbimus	audiēmus	erimus
amābitis	monēbitis	audiētis	eritis
amābunt	monēbunt	audient	erunt

133

VOCABULARY

audiō, audire, <i>hear</i>	inveniō, invenire, <i>come upon,</i>
conveniō, convenire, <i>come to-</i>	<i>find</i>
<i>gether, meet</i>	mūniō, mūnire, <i>fortify</i>
impediō, impedire, <i>hinder</i>	veniō, venīre, <i>come</i>

134 1 Review present, imperfect, and future of **amō, moneō, sum** (132).

2 Compare the present stems: **amā-** (ā, or first conjugation), **monē-** (ē, or second conjugation), **audī-** (ī, or fourth conjugation).

3 What is the present stem of **impediō, mūniō, veniō**?

4 In the conjugation of **audiō**, observe (1) that **u** is required before **-nt** in **audiunt** (the same is true of **erunt**), (2) that **ē** must always precede the imperfect tense sign **ba** (**audiēbat**), (3) that the future is quite different from **amābō, monēbit, monēbunt**, but *easier*. What vowel is the sign of the future in **audiam**; in **audient**?

5 The sign of the future tense of the fourth conjugation is **a** in the first person singular, active and passive, elsewhere **e**.

6 Write the future of **impediō, mūniō, veniō**.

7 Write the complete conjugation of **impediō, mūniō**, and **veniō** in the active voice, three tenses as already given. (Give the future tense especial attention.)

135 Write in the active:

- (1) the present, third singular of **ambulō, impediō, teneō, sum**;
- (2) the present, third plural of **appellō, iubeō, audiō, sum**;
- (3) the imperfect second singular of **dēbeō, laudō, mūniō, sum**;
- (4) the future, first singular of **nārrō, veniō, moveō, sum**;
- (5) the future, third plural of **nūntiō, habeō, audiō, sum**.

136 Derivation: Give, with meaning, two or more English words derived from each of the following: **ambulō, impediō, appellō, audiō, dēbeō, laudō, nārrō, moveō, nūntiō**.

Nōn omnia possumus omnēs (Virgil) — *We cannot all do all things.*

LESSON XXVI

INDICATIVE PASSIVE, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE OF *Laudō, Doceō, Audiō*

137 FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRESENT

laudor	doceor	audior
laudāris	docēris	audīris
laudātur	docētur	audītur
laudāmur	docēmur	audīmur
laudāmini	docēmini	audīmini
laudentur	docentur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT

laudābar	docēbar	audiēbar
laudābāris	docēbāris	audiēbāris
laudābātur	docēbātur	audiēbātur
laudābāmur	docēbāmur	audiēbāmur
laudābāmini	docēbāmini	audiēbāmini
laudābantur	docēbantur	audiēbantur

FUTURE

laudābor	docēbor	audiar
laudāberis	docēberis	audiēris
laudābitur	docēbitur	audiētur
laudābimur	docēbimur	audiēmur
laudābimini	docēbimini	audiēmini
laudābuntur	docēbuntur	audientur

138 Recite orally *impediō, mūniō, and inveniō* in the active and passive of the three tenses given, and then write the conjugations from memory.

139 Write a Latin word suggested by each of the following: amicable, animus, auxiliary, debit, equal, filial, inimical, liberate, populous, prepare, social, verbal.

140

VERB DRILL

- 1 Veniam, venīs, veniēbant, veniunt.
- 2 Audior, audiēbātur, audiētur, audimur.
- 3 Mūniuntur, mūnītur, mūniēbantur, mūniētur.
- 4 Conveniunt, convenient, conveniētis, conveniēbāmus.
- 5 Impediēbar, impediēris, impediēbāminī, impediuntur.
- 6 Invenit, inveniet, invenīēbat, invenīētis.
- 7 Mūnīs, mūniēminī, mūnientur, mūniēmus.
- 8 Impedimus, impedīemus, veniēbās, veniēs.
- 9 Audiminī, audiēbātis, mūniēbāris, mūnīminī.
- 10 Mūniēbam, veniēbāmus, impediā, impediā.

141 (Whenever possible, give both singular and plural.)

- 1 We shall be hindered, we shall hinder, I was coming, we were fortifying.
- 2 You are being fortified, you were being fortified, you were hearing, you are heard.
- 3 You will come, you were coming, I shall hinder, I am hindering.
- 4 I shall fortify, he will be fortified, you will be fortified, you are fortifying.
- 5 You will find, they were finding, they will find, he finds.
- 6 He is hindered, you were being hindered, you will be hindered, they will be hindered.
- 7 They were coming together, you will come together, they come together, they will come together.
- 8 They will be fortified, it was being fortified, they are being fortified, it is being fortified.
- 9 We are heard, they were heard, they will be heard, I am heard.
- 10 He comes, he was coming, I shall come, he will come.

Dā dextram miserō (Virgil) — *To one in need lend a hand.*

LESSON XXVII

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *Ille* AND *Hic*

142

AS ADJECTIVES

(a) *Ille* via, *that* road; *hic* puer, *this* boy; *hoc* bellum, *this* war.

AS PRONOUNS

(b) *Ille* servum monet, *he (that man)* advises the slave.

Haec pecūniam dat, *she (this woman)* gives money.

Mārcus et *Brūtus* sunt amīcī; *ille* agricola, *hic* poēta est,
Marcus and *Brutus* are friends; the former is a farmer,
the latter a poet.

Ille denotes *that*; *that* at a distance in time or place, the former;
hic *this*; *this* near or belonging to the speaker, the latter.

143

Ille, that

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

144

Hic, this

<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

145

VOCABULARY

anteā, adv., *before, previously*
beneficium, -ī, n., *kindness,*
favor

expugnō, *expugnāre*, *take by*
assault, storm

hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative
adj. and pro., *this; he, she, it*
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative
adj. and pro., *that; he, she, it*
timeō, timēre, *fear*

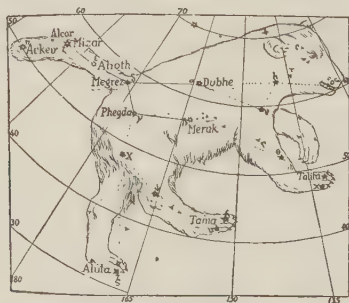
146

EXERCISES

- 1 Quis illum equum timēbit? Hic puer?
- 2 Nōnne illi dabit hic aquam et frūmentum?
- 3 Hi socii illōs virōs nōn iam audiunt.
- 4 Perīcula magna ad oppida parva venient.
- 5 Illi viri in hunc agrum iam conveniēbant.
- 6 Illi viās hōrum oppidōrum posteā occupābunt.
- 7 Hae viae oppidōrum illōs nunc impediunt.
- 8 Frūmentum hīs equīs ab illō virō nōn dabitur.
- 9 Hic socius illam magistrī fābulam anteā audiēbat.
- 10 Illa proelia et fābulae proeliōrum hunc nōn servābunt.

147

- 1 That plan afterwards will be praised by the people.
- 2 Good examples are now given to those servants.
- 3 Those queens do not fear the dangers of this war.
- 4 They no longer praise wars and battles.
- 5 The kindness of this queen is not considered great.
- 6 That kindness of this good man will be praised.
- 7 Shall we not fear the kindnesses of that proud man?
- 8 We praise the former, but the latter we fear.
- 9 This kindness of those men will not save the town.
- 10 The fields and the towns already are in great danger.
- 11 An unfriendly queen will take the latter by assault.

URSA MAJOR, *The Great Bear*

LESSON XXVIII

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *Ipsē* — ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

148

Ipsē, self

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

Ipsē dominus, the man himself, the very man.

Ipsa rēgīna, the queen herself, the very queen.

Ipsum periculum, the danger itself, the very danger.

Decline *ipse dominus, ipsa rēgīna, ipsum periculum.*

149

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

Dominus cum servō labōrat, the master is working with (his) slave (friendly association).

Puer cum inimicō pugnat, the boy fights with an enemy (unfriendly association).

150 Rule. *The ablative is used with the preposition cum to denote accompaniment.*

Do not confuse the ablative of accompaniment with the ablative of means. In English we may use the preposition *with* to express both *means* and *accompaniment*. Remember that "He fights with weapons" in Latin is *armīs pugnat*. Test *accompaniment* by asking: "In company with whom?"

151

VOCABULARY

<i>cum</i> , prep. with abl., <i>with</i>	<i>ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self, very</i>
<i>grātus, -a, -um, pleasant, welcome, grateful</i>	<i>saepe, adv., often</i>
	<i>semper, adv., always</i>

152

EXERCISES

- 1 Filii oppidānōrum ipsōrum hōc periculō impediuntur.
- 2 Beneficiō ipsō hōrum amīcōrum impedimur.
- 3 Diligentiā sociōrum virī nōn saepe impediuntur.
- 4 Nunc sumus cum amīcīs; inimīcōs nōn iam timēbimus.
- 5 Cum puellis et puerīs in castra veniēbant socii.
- 6 Incolae puerōs cum servīs in agrīs nōn tenēbunt.
- 7 Ipsōrum puerōrum diligentiā castra mūniēbantur.
- 8 Domini ipsīs servīs exempla beneficī dant.
- 9 Loca pulchra Italiae ipsius vidēre dēbētis.
- 10 Italiae ipsī glōriam magnam semper dabimus.
- 11 Glōria Italiae ipsius puerīs (*dat.*) erit memoria grāta.

153

- 1 The place itself is not large.
- 2 We shall see the places themselves.
- 3 The example of the master himself was good.
- 4 They were seen by the son himself.
- 5 Men were fighting with their enemies in the very streets.
- 6 The very towns were in great danger of war.
- 7 Who will give aid to the queen, Octavia, herself?
- 8 The boys are working in the fields with the very slave.
- 9 We shall order the slave to come into camp with the boys.
- 10 Neither the girls nor the boys themselves fear that danger.

154 AURAL: Translate the Latin sentences above at the teacher's dictation. After translating each sentence, give the corresponding Latin orally.



LUPĪ, wolves

LESSON XXIX

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

155 1 In Latin, regular verbs have four principal parts. You have been using two: **portō, portāre**; **moneō, monēre**; **audiō, audire**. What is the present stem of each? How obtained? What tenses are conjugated on the present stem?

2 The principal parts of **portō**, a regular first conjugation verb, are: **portō, I carry**; **portāre, to carry**; **portāvī, I carried, have carried**; **portātus (having been) carried**.

156 Perfect Indicative Active of **portō** Perfect stem, **portāv-**

portāvī, I carried, have carried	portāvimus, we carried, have carried
portāvistī, you carried, have carried	portāvistis, you carried, have carried
portāvit, he carried, has carried	portāvērunt, they carried, have carried

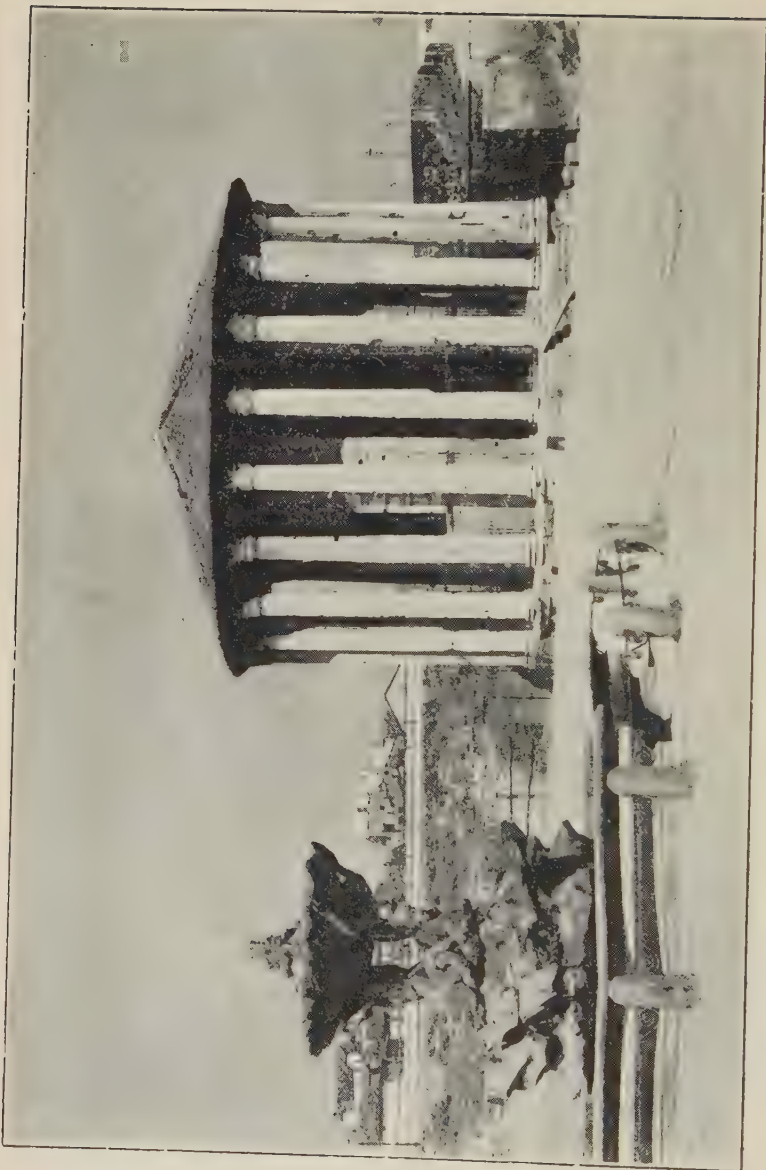
1 Special Endings of the Perfect

-ī, I	-imus, we
-istī, you (sing.)	-istis, you (plur.)
-it, he (she, it)	-ērunt, they

2 Give orally the principal parts of **properō, labōrō, nūntiō**. Write the perfect active of each verb.

157 VOCABULARY

certē, adv., certainly, at least	cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfir-
comparō, comparāre, compa-	māvī, cōfirmātus, strength-
rāvī, comparātus, get to-	en, encourage, confirm
gether, prepare	dō, dare, dedī, datus, give (657)
concitō, concitāre, concitāvī,	(Learn the perfect tense.)
concitātus, arouse, excite, in-	ēvocō, ēvocāre, ēvocāvī, ēvo-
cite	cātus, call out



A ROMAN TEMPLE

158 1 The imperfect (sometimes called the past descriptive) tense represents an action in past time as (1) actually going on, (2) customary or repeated: **Nauta illam fābulam nārrābat**, *the sailor was telling (kept telling, used to tell) that story*.

Do not use the imperfect unless you wish to indicate that the act you are describing *was actually taking place, used (often) to take place* or *was being repeated*, all in past time.

2 The perfect tense is used mainly in *narration*, not in *description*. The perfect merely indicates that the act, or event, took place. **Servus ad dominum properāvit**, *the slave hurried toward his master*. No word picture is painted of a hurrying slave.

The perfect sometimes represents an action as *just completed*, from the standpoint of the writer or speaker: **Puerum (modo) vocāvit**, *he has (just now) called the boy*.

159

EXERCISES

- 1 Quis incolās in hoc oppidum movēbat?
- 2 Agricolae frūmentum in castra portāvērunt.
- 3 Dominī populō arma certē comparāvērunt.
- 4 Dominōrum amīcī animōs incolārum certē cōfirmant.
- 5 Nōnne, filiī, miserōs agricolās ex agrīs ēvocāvistis?
- 6 Inimīcī superbī agrōs et villās occupāvērunt.
- 7 Oppidānī agricolīs arma dedērunt et cum agricolīs prō oppidō certē pugnābunt.

160

- 1 We used to tell this story.
- 2 Who told the boys those stories?
- 3 He hurried toward the country house.
- 4 They have (just) given those horses grain.
- 5 You were arousing the spirits of the men.
- 6 You have (just) called the slaves from the field.
- 7 The boys walked in the town with the master.
- 8 You announced the victory to the schoolmaster's son.
- 9 The masters at least strengthened the spirits of the people.

160a

CERES ET PROSERPINA

Cerēs, dea (*goddess*) agrōrum et frūmentī, filiam Proserpinam habēbat. Puella, Proserpina, in agrīs Siciliae (*Sicily*) ōlim ambulābat et flōrēs (*flowers*) pulchrōs carpēbat (*was gathering*). Proserpina perīculum nōn timēbat.

Plūto, deus rēgnī subterrāneī (*underground*), Proserpinam spectāvit et amāvit. Statim puellam ad currum (*chariot*) portāvit; equōs magnōs concitāvit; ad rēgnū subterrāneum cum Proserpinā properāvit. Frūstrā clāmābat puella; frūstrā timēbat; frūstrā dolēbat. Cerēs filiam nōn audivit.

Tamen Proserpina nōn diū dolēbat. Puella mox erat rēgīna rēgnī subterrāneī. Cerēs autem diū dolēbat et filiam per terram et per caelum diū petēbat (*sought*) — frūstrā. Tandem Iuppiter auxilium dedit. Deus bonus Proserpinam in terrā et in caelō partem (*a part*) vītae cum mātře (*mother*) agere (*to spend*), cum maritō sub terrā partem, iussit (*ordered*).



Courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art

CERES

LESSON XXX

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT) AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

161

PLUPERFECT

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (1) portāveram, <i>I had carried</i> | portāverāmus, <i>we had carried</i> |
| portāverās, <i>you had carried</i> | portāverātis, <i>you had carried</i> |
| portāverat, <i>he had carried</i> | portāverant, <i>they had carried</i> |

(2) The formation of this tense is perfectly regular. The pluperfect is one of the easiest in Latin: **portāv-** (perfect stem) + **-era-** (tense sign) + **-m** (personal ending). Until, by practice, you can take in the whole word at a glance, translate beginning with the ending: **-nt, they; -era-, had; portāv-, carried.**

162

FUTURE PERFECT

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) portāverō, <i>I shall have carried</i> | portāverimus, <i>we shall have carried</i> |
| portāveris, <i>you will have carried</i> | portāveritis, <i>you will have carried</i> |
| portāverit, <i>he will have carried</i> | portāverint, <i>they will have carried</i> |

(2) The formation is: **portāv-** (*have carried*); **-eri-** (*will*); **-nt** (*they*). Remember that the first person singular is **portāverō** (compare **amābō; erō**). Write the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of **appellō, dō, existimō**.

163 Below are given some of the English words that are derived from **portō**. If in doubt, consult an English dictionary for the meanings of each word. Use the words correctly, each in an English sentence: deport, comport, export, import, report, support; department, portage, porter; portable.

164

EXERCISES

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Comparāverit, comparāverat. | 1 They had sailed. |
| 2 Concitāverant, concitāverint. | 2 You will have told. |
| 3 Cōfirmāverimus, cōfirmāverō. | 3 They had {given.
saved. |
| 4 Dederātis, dederis. | 4 They will have walked. |
| 5 Evocāveram, ēvocāverint. | 5 They had greeted. |
| 6 Nūntiāvimus, nūntiāverant. | 6 He will have {given.
called. |
| 7 Dedit, appropinquāverint. | 7 I had recited. |

165 For the notebook:

Copy the following in your notebook, giving particular attention to correctness in spelling, and in punctuation:

166

DERIVATION

TYPE I (Without definitions)

locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus, place Present stem, locā- Base of Past Participle: locāt-	local, locally, localize, localization; locate, location, locative; allocate, allocation; collocate, collocation; dislocate; locus, locomotive, locomotion.
--	---

TYPE II (With definitions)

(vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus, call)

English Word	Latin Stem or Base	Latin Prefix	Definition
vocal	vocā-		<i>pertaining to voice</i>
evoke	vocā-	e	<i>call out</i>
convoke	vocā-	cum (con)	<i>call together</i>
revoke	vocā-	re	<i>call back</i>
invoke	vocā-	in	<i>call upon, ask for</i>
vocation	vocāt-		<i>a calling, occupation</i>
invocation	vocāt-	in	<i>a calling upon, a prayer</i>
vocational	vocāt-		<i>pertaining to a vocation</i>
vocative	vocāt-		<i>case of calling, case of address</i>
vocalize	vocā-		<i>make vocal</i>

LESSON XXXI

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF *Sum* — DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

167

PERFECT

SINGULAR

I was, have been, etc.

fuī

fuistī

fuit

PLURAL

We were, we have been, etc.

fuimus

fuistis

fuērunt

PLUPERFECT

I had been, etc.

fueram

fuerās

fuerat

We had been, etc.

fuerāmus

fuerātis

fuerant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been, etc.

fuerō

fueris

fuerit

We shall have been, etc.

fuerimus

fueritis

fuerint

168

DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

Study these two ways of expressing in Latin the same thought:

- 1 **Vir equum habet**, *the man has a horse.*
- 2 **Virō est equus** (*to the man is a horse*), *the man has a horse.*
- 3 **Puella pecūniam habēbat**, *the girl had money.*
- 4 **Puellae erat pecūnia** (*to the girl was money*), *the girl had money.*

In 2 and 4, the datives, **virō** and **puellae**, represent the owners, or possessors, and therefore are called Datives of Possessor. Some form of **sum** is required with the dative of possessor.

169 Rule. *In Latin, possession or ownership may be expressed by the dative with some form of sum.*

170

VOCABULARY

cōpia , -ae, f., abundance, supply; plur., cōpiae , forces, troops	fēmina , -ae, f., woman
	monumentum , -ī, n., monument
	vicīnus , -ī, m., neighbor
vicīnus , -a, -um, neighboring	

171

EXERCISES

- 1 Ille vir servōs bonōs habēbat.
- 2 Illī virō erant servī bonī.
- 3 Haec fēmina filium magnum habet.
- 4 Huic fēminae est filius magnus.
- 5 Hī agricolae equōs multōs habēbant.
- 6 Hīs agricolīs fuērunt equī multī.
- 7 Ille puer cōpīam pecūniae nōn habēbit.
- 8 Illī puerō nōn erit cōpia pecūniae.
- 9 Hic equus dominum bonum nōn habet.
- 10 Huic equō nōn est dominus bonus.
- 11 Vicīnī illōrum virōrum fuerint amīcī.
- 12 In hōc Italiae oppidō fuerant monumenta multā.

172 (Write the first six sentences in two ways.)

- 1 Italy has good fields and beautiful towns.
- 2 This townsman had a beautiful daughter.
- 3 That large town will have a new gate.
- 4 Many farmers of Italy have small fields.
- 5 Those sons of Marcus have proud spirits.
- 6 The townsmen will have good help in this battle.
- 7 The glory of battle has not always been great.
- 8 Have you been in those beautiful places?
- 9 We shall give the boys a good example of friendship.
- 10 Those poets had been good friends to these boys.
- 11 These poets had many friends and an abundance of money.

Quot hominēs, tot sententiae (Terence) — *Opinions are as numerous as men.*

LESSON XXXII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *Is* — REVIEW OF *Hic* AND *Ille* (143, 144)

173

Is, this, that; he, she, it

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>iī, eī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>
<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs</i>

(a) *Is as an Adjective*

- 1 *Iī puerī bene labōrant, these (those) boys work well.*
- 2 *Ea castra mūniet, he will fortify this (that) camp.*
- 3 *Eī puellae pecūniam nōn dabō, I shall not give this (that) girl money.*

Is, does *not* imply that the person or object is near to or belongs to the speaker (*hic*), or is remote from the speaker (*ille*). Translate by *this* or *that*.

(b) *Is as a Pronoun*

- 1 *Is fuerat superbus, he had been proud.*
- 2 *Eam vocābō, I shall call her.*
- 3 *Iis pecūniam dederat, he had given them money.*
- 4 *Id habeo, I have it.*

174 a

VOCABULARY

<i>amplūs, -a, -um, large, abundant, distinguished</i>	<i>lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language</i>
<i>atque, conj., and also</i>	<i>officiū, -ī, n., duty, service</i>
<i>clārus, -a, -um, clear, famous</i>	<i>ōrō¹(ī)(speak), beg, beseech, pray</i>
<i>ēgregius, -a, -um, excellent</i>	<i>prōvincia, -ae, f., province</i>
<i>is, ea, id, this, that; he, she, it</i>	<i>rēgnum, -ī, n., supreme power, kingdom, throne</i>

¹ Hereafter, the first conjugation will be indicated by a numeral.

174 b

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven*cibus, -ī, m., *food*deus, -ī, m., *god (629)*Postumius, -ī, m., *Postumius*reportō (1), *bring back, win*suspiciēbat, *he looked up at*

175

EXERCISES

- 1 Is cibus est amplus et bonus.
- 2 Quis cōpiam eius cibī in oppidum portāvit?
- 3 Illī servī ēgregiū amplam cibī cōpiam portāvērunt.
- 4 Ubi sunt illī servī? Vidētisne illōs in agrō?
- 5 Eōs ipsōs nōn vidēmus, sed eōrum equī sunt in viā.
- 6 Servī dominum ēgregium habēbant sed eum nōn amābant.
- 7 Quis rēgnum eius prōvinciae occupāverat? Rēgīna?
- 8 Ea rēgnum occupāvit, sed eius beneficia sunt grāta.
- 9 Sabīnī longō in proeliō deōs caelī nōn ōrāvērunt. Sed
Postumius caelum clārum suspiciēbat atque auxilium
ōrābat. Illī victōriam nōn reportāvērunt; hic rēgnum
et Rōmam auxiliō deōrum cōservāvit.

176

- 1 Have not the streets of those towns been excellent?
- 2 Previously the weapons of this people had been excellent.
- 3 The language of the Romans was excellent.
- 4 An abundance of these weapons is in the camp.
- 5 This excellent man will always be loved by (his) friends.
- 6 The Sabines were fighting for (prō) those beautiful
fields, the Romans for supreme power.
- 7 We love the former, the latter we praise.
- 8 You ought to praise the service of that man.
- 9 This duty will be pleasant to that girl.
- 10 The language of those provinces is not beautiful.

ASINUS, *donkey*

LESSON XXXIII

STORY OF DAEDALUS AND ICARUS

177

VOCABULARY

aedificō (ī), *build*

altē, adv., *high*

altius, adv., *higher, too high*

clāmō (ī), *shout, cry out*

contineō, *continēre*, *hold together, restrain*

et . . . et, *both . . . and*

itaque, adv., *and so, therefore*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time*

lātus, -a, -um, *wide*

lūcidus, -a, -um, *shining, clear*

nāvigium, -ī, n., *boat*

propter, prep. with acc., *on account of, from*

trāns, prep. with acc., *across*



Courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art

DAEDALUS TRIES HIS WINGS

178

DAEDALUS ET ICARUS

Puer Icarus et Daedalus pater nōtā in īnsulā, magnā Crētā, diū habitābant. Daedalus rēginae (*dat.*) illiūs īnsulae Labyrinthum aedificāverat. Labyrinthus et puerīs (*dat.*) et virīs erat periculōsus quod (*because*) in eō habitābat mōnstrum, Mīnō-
taurus. Daedalus illud mōnstrum propter filium timēbat. Mīnos, vir aequus, rēgnum Crētae anteā occupāverat. Sed is Mīnos Daedalum cum filiō in īnsulā tenēbat.

Patria Daedalī longē ā Crētā trāns aquās et lātās et altās erat. Nāvigium Daedalus nōn habēbat. Itaque pater ēgre-
gius ālās magnās finxerat (*had fashioned*) et eās Icarō multā cērā callidē aptāverat. Ille puerum ālīs volāre (*to fly*) docēbat. Puer novīs ālīs superbus¹ altē in caelum clārum volāvit. "Icare! Icare!" clāmābat pater miser, "Altius, Icare, volās." Puer stultus altius atque altius ad sōlem lūcidum volābat. "Icare!" iterum clāmāvit pater, "Cēra ālās nōn diū continēbit. Icare! fili! Patrem audī (*hear*)." Icarus patrem nōn audiēbat.

Daedalus, pater miser, trāns aquās lātās ad patriam volāvit sōlus (*alone*). Filium posteā nōn vidēbat.

179

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

āla, -ae, f., *wing*

aptō (1), *fit, fasten*

callidē, adv., *cleverly*

cēra, -ae, f., *wax*

Crēta, -ae, f., *Crete*

labyrinthus, -ī, m., *labyrinth*

Mīnos, king of Crete

Mīnōtaurus, -ī, m., a monster,
half bull, half human

mōnstrum, -ī, n., *monster*

pater (nom.), patrem (acc.),
father

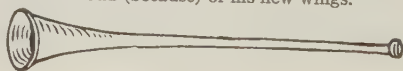
periculōsus, -a, -um, *full of
danger*

sōlem (acc.), m., *sun*

stultus, -a, -um, *silly, foolish*

volō (1), *fly*

¹ Proud (because) of his new wings.



TUBA, *trumpet*

LESSON XXXIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW

180

TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 3

1 amicitia	26 ipse
2 amplus	27 iubeō
3 antea	28 liber (librī)
4 audiō	29 liber (<i>adj.</i>)
5 bene	30 loca (121)
6 beneficium	31 locus
7 certē	32 memoria
8 cibus	33 moneō
9 comparō	34 moveō
10 concitō	35 multī
11 cōfirmō	36 multus
12 conveniō	37 mūniō
13 cōpia, cōpiae	38 mūrus
14 dēbeō	39 neque . . . neque
15 dīligentia	40 nōn iam
16 ēvocō	41 parō
17 exemplum	42 poēta
18 expugnō	43 populus
19 glōria	44 posteā
20 habeō	45 tardus
21 hic	46 teneō
22 iam	47 timeō
23 ille	48 veniō
24 impediō	49 verbum
25 inveniō	50 videō



IUGUM, *yoke*

181

1	friendship	26	self
2	large, distinguished	27	order
3	before, previously	28	book
4	hear	29	free
5	well	30	places
6	kindness, favor	31	place
7	certainly, at least	32	memory
8	food	33	warn
9	get together, prepare	34	move
10	arouse, excite	35	many
11	strengthen, encourage	36	much
12	come together, meet	37	fortify
13	supply, forces	38	wall
14	ought, owe	39	neither . . . nor
15	care, painstaking	40	no longer
16	call out	41	get ready
17	example	42	poet
18	take by assault	43	people
19	glory, renown	44	afterwards
20	have, hold	45	slow
21	this	46	hold, keep
22	by this time, already	47	fear
23	that	48	come
24	hinder	49	word
25	come upon, find	50	see



TRĪGA, three-horse chariot

Mēns sibi cōnscia rēcti (Virgil) — *A mind conscious of its own rectitude.*

LESSON XXXV

PERSONAL PRONOUNS, *Ego* AND *Tū* — PRESENT IMPERATIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

182	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	ego , <i>I</i>	nōs , <i>we</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	meī , <i>of me</i>	nostrum , <i>of us</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi , <i>to (for) me</i>	nōbīs , <i>to (for) us</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	mē , <i>me</i>	nōs , <i>us</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	mē , <i>me</i> (various uses)	nōbīs , <i>us</i> (various uses)
<i>Nom.</i>	tū , <i>you</i>	vōs , <i>you</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	tui , <i>of you</i>	vestrum , <i>of you</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	tibi , <i>to (for) you</i>	vōbīs , <i>to (for) you</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	tē , <i>you</i>	vōs , <i>you</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	tē , <i>you</i> (various uses)	vōbīs , <i>you</i> (various uses)

In the nominative case, the personal pronouns are used only for emphasis and contrast.

1 **Ego labōrō, tū nōn labōrās**, *I work, you do not work.*

2 **Tū, fili, fuisti in periculō**, *You, son, have been in danger.*

In 1, note the contrast; 2 illustrates a common use of the personal pronoun before a noun in the vocative.

183 Cum, when used with the ablative of a personal pronoun, is always attached: **tēcum** (not **cum tē**), **vōbiscum**.

184 PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
portā , <i>carry (you, sing.)</i>	portāte , <i>carry (you, plur.)</i>
monē , <i>advise</i> “ “	monēte , <i>advise</i> “ “
audī , <i>hear</i> “ “	audīte , <i>hear</i> “ “
es , <i>be</i> “ “	este , <i>be</i> “ “

Note that the present active imperative, second person singular, is the same as the present stem.

185 Give the present imperatives of *mūniō*, *comparō*, *doceō*.

186

EXERCISES

- 1 Venī, amīce, mēcum in prōvinciās.
- 2 Evocāte servōs ex agrīs in oppidum.
- 3 Timēte, discipulī, exemplum illius servī.
- 4 Audite, puerī, fābulās hōrum magistrōrum.
- 5 Docē, magister, puerōs ¹ exempla virōrum bonōrum.
- 6 Tū mēcum in prōvinciās Rōmānās veniēs.
- 7 Mihi date eōs librōs, et verba magistrī audite.
- 8 Ego vōs cum filiō in viā oppidī vidēbam.
- 9 Nōs, domine, nōn tē sed exemplum miserum timēmus.
- 10 Quis nostrum eī arma propter amicītiā dabit?
- 11 Vōbiscum et cum amīcīs nōn erimus miserī.
- 12 Quis, agricola bone, tēcum in villā habitat?

187

- 1 The lazy farmers did not give us this food.
- 2 Be good, work well, love (your) country.
- 3 Who of you does not praise a good example?
- 4 Hear, (my) son, the words of your teacher.
- 5 Come, men, into the province with me.
- 6 Praise the kindness of a good man; fear the example of an enemy.
- 7 Fortify the towns, men, by walls and by gates.
- 8 Order the slaves to fortify these level places.
- 9 The farmers ought to come into town with us.
- 10 We shall come into those places with you.
- 11 You will find many friends with us at Rome.
- 12 The example of those men did not hinder us.

188 AURAL: Translate the Latin sentences above at the teacher's dictation.

¹ *Doceō* takes two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing.

Disce, puer, virtutem ex mē vērūmque labōrem (Virgil) — *Learn, my boy, from me the true worth of toil.*

LESSON XXXVI

STORY OF CINCINNATUS

189

VOCABULARY

apud, prep. with acc., *among,*
at the home of

celeriter, adv., *quickly, swiftly*

diligenter, adv., *with care*

imperium, -ī, n., *command,*
power

obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, ob-
sessus, *besiege*

removeō, removēre, remōvī,
remōtus, *remove*

retineō, retinēre, retinui, re-
tentus, *retain, hold back*

sine, prep. with abl., *without*

sub, prep. with acc., *under;*
with abl., under, at the foot of

tum, adv., *then*



Photograph by Reynolds

THE FABRICIAN BRIDGE

The oldest bridge in Rome. It was built in 62 B.C

190

CINCINNATUS

L.¹ Quinctius Cincinnātus, agricola, ā populō Rōmānō vir magnus habebātur. Cōsul fuerat sed propter dissēsiōnem inter (*among*) patrēs Rōmānōs officium ultrō dēposuerat (*had resigned*) et trāns Tiberim in casā rūsticā habitābat. Ipse diligenter agrōs parvōs arābat. Postea Aequi cōpiās Rōmānās obsidebant. Apud patrēs et populum magnus erat terror. Tum patrēs, propter periculum, Cincinnātum nōmināvērunt dictātōrem. Ad eum patrēs trāns Tiberim properant et ipsum inveniunt agrum parvum arantem. Cincinnātus statim iubet maritam togam parāre. Togā rītē vēlātus (*garbed*) Cincinnātus mandāta populī audit. Tum patrēs eum dictātōrem salūtant et ad bellum mittunt (*send*).

Cincinnātus celeriter cōpiās Rōmānās ex periculō liberāvit et Aequōs sub iugum mīsīt (*sent*). Triumphāns Rōmam intrāvit. Imperium nōn diū retinēbat sed ad casam agrōsque properāvit.

191

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

Aequi, -ōrum, m., Latin people, rivals of the Romans	mora, -ae, f., delay
arō (ī), plow; arantem, plow- ing (modifies ipsum)	nōminō (ī), name
casa, -ae, f., cottage	patrēs, senators, fathers
dictātōrem (acc.), dictator	rīte, adv., appropriately
dissēsiō, dissēsiōnem (acc.), f., disagreement	rūsticus, -a, -um, rural
iugum, -i, n., yoke	statim, adv., forthwith
mandātum, -ī, n., order, com- mand	terror, m., terror, panic
marita, -ae, f., wife	Tiberim, m. (acc.), the river Tiber
	toga, -ae, f., toga
	triumphāns, triumphant
	ultrō, adv., voluntarily

¹ "L" is the abbreviation for the Roman name, Lūcius.

LESSON XXXVII

ONE HUNDRED WORD TEST, NO. 1

(§ 192, 40 words; § 193, 60 words)

For suggestions, see 380.

192

TIME LIMIT, 12 MINUTES — DEGREE OF
ACCURACY, 90%

1 ab (ā)	21 habitō
2 ad	22 ibi
3 altus	23 inimīcus
4 ambulō	24 laudō
5 animus	25 longus
6 appellō	26 mox
7 auxilium	27 nārrō
8 bellum	28 nunc
9 cōservō	29 occupō
10 cōsiliū	30 oppidum
11 convocō	31 parvus
12 cūr	32 pecūnia
13 dē	33 proelium
14 diū	34 properō
15 dō	35 puella
16 domina	36 quis
17 ex (ē)	37 sed
18 exīstimō	38 servō
19 fābula	39 silva
20 frūmentum	40 socius

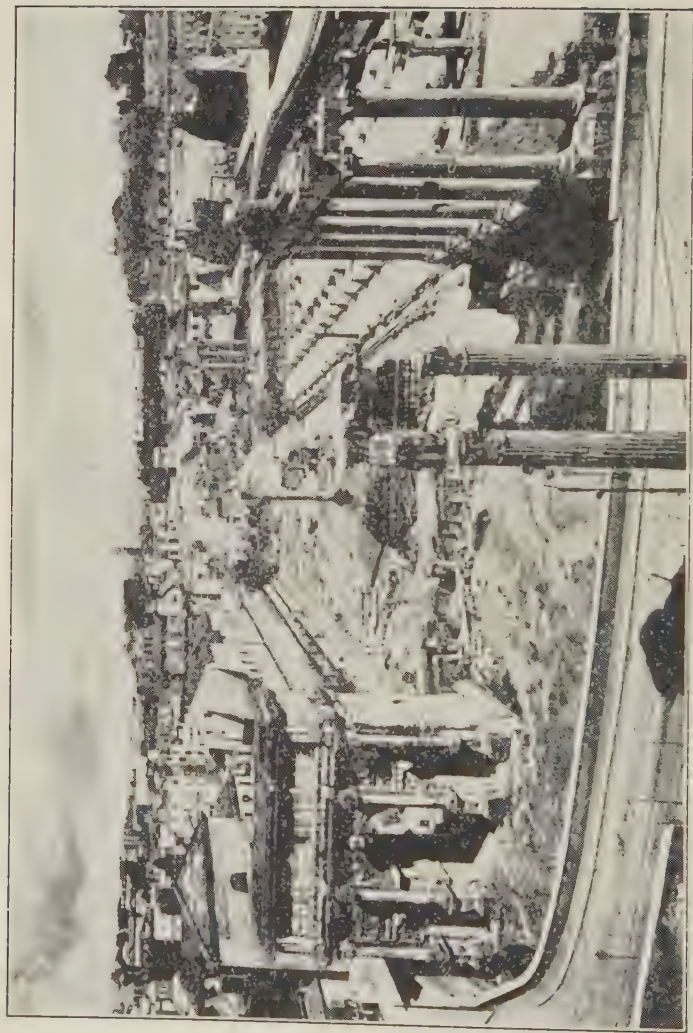
193

REVIEW

1 Decline: **silva**; **servus parvus**, singular only; **bellum longum**, plural only; **tū** and **ego**, genitive singular and plural.

2 Conjugate **moneō** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative active.

3 Write the principal parts of: **servō**, **dō**.



RUINS OF THE ROMAN FORUM

Hoc opus, hic labor est (Virgil) — *This is the task, this the struggle.*

LESSON XXXVIII

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

194 Review perfect of **portō**, 156.

Principal parts: **moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus**, *advise*.

Perfect stem: **monu-**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>I have advised, etc.</i>	<i>We have advised, etc.</i>
monuī	monuimus
monuistī	monuistis
monuit	monuērunt

Principal parts: **iubeō**, **iubēre**, **iussī**, **iussus**, *order*

Perfect stem: **iuss-**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>I have ordered, etc.</i>	<i>We have ordered, etc.</i>
iussī	iussimus
iussistī	iussistis
iussit	iussērunt

195 Below are the principal parts of the second conjugation verbs already given. Learn them.

contineō, **continēre**, **continūī**, **contentus**, *hold together, restrain*
dēbeō, **dēbēre**, **dēbuī**, **dēbitus**, *owe, ought*
doceō, **docēre**, **docuī**, **doctus**, *teach*
habeō, **habēre**, **habuī**, **habitus**, *have, hold*
iubeō, **iubēre**, **iussī**, **iussus**, *order, command*
moneō, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus**, *advise, warn*
moveō, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, *move*
teneō, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, —, *hold, keep*
timeō, **timēre**, **timuī**, —, *fear*
videō, **vidēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsus**, *see*

196 Give orally, and then write with the English for each form, the perfect of **timeō**, **contineō**, **videō**, **sum**, **moveō**, **ēvocō**.

197

EXERCISES

- 1 Ego eum virum nōn timuī; cūr eum tū timuistī?
- 2 Quis docuit puerōs? Nōs eōs nōn docuimus.
- 3 Iussitne agricola eōs cōpiam cibī ex agrīs movēre?
- 4 Agricolae nōs frūmentum ex agrō portāre iussērunt.
- 5 Illi dēbent nōbīscum ad agrum venīre.
- 6 Vōs, puerī, beneficia eōrum virōrum vidistis.
- 7 Nōs vōbīscum nōn fuimus; ea nōn vidimus.
- 8 Cēra ālās Icarī nōn diū continuit.
- 9 Oppidānī arma ex oppidīs in castra mōvērunt.

198

- 1 I have not been with you long in this place.
- 2 That victory has always been well known to me.
- 3 They ordered us to give you (*plur.*) food and water.
- 4 Many friends ought to come to town with us.
- 5 With you we did not fear the dangers of the province.
- 6 You (*plur.*) will be taught to recite by that master.
- 7 I have not ordered you (*sing.*) to move the camp.
- 8 Who of us did not see the glory of this province?
- 9 You have seen many good examples of diligence.
- 10 With me, you ought to praise the kindness of this man.
- 11 Who of you will not order the boys to listen to (hear) the words of the teacher?

199 Give two English words suggested by each of the following: **audiō**, **cōfirmō**, **contineō**, **impediō**, **inveniō**, **moneō**, ***eneō**, **videō**.



GLADIUS, sword

Sapiēns et bonum ferre potest modicē, et malum fortiter (Varro) — *A wise man can bear good fortune with moderation, ill fortune with courage.*

LESSON XXXIX

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION — ABLATIVE OF TIME

200 Review 161, 162. Review principal parts of verbs, 195.

201 Verb, *moneō*, *advise* Perfect stem, *monu-*

PLUPERFECT

SINGULAR

I had advised, etc.

monueram

monuerās

monuerat

PLURAL

We had advised, etc.

monuerāmus

monuerātis

monuerant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have advised, etc.

monuerō

monueris

monuerit

We shall have advised, etc.

monuerimus

monueritis

monuerint

Review 43, 99, 115.

202 *Hōc annō oppidum occupābō.*

I shall seize the town within this year.

In his annis multis tē nōn vidī.

Within these many years I have not seen you.

203 Rule. *The ablative is used with, or without, a preposition to express the time within which an action occurs.*

204

VOCABULARY

primus, -a, -um, *first*

secundus, -a, -um, *second*

tertius, -a, -um, *third*

quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth*

quīntus, -a, -um, *fifth*

sextus, -a, -um, *sixth*

septimus, -a, -um, *seventh*

octāvus, -a, -um, *eighth*

nōnus, -a, -um, *ninth*

decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*

annus, -ī, m., *year*

spatium, -ī, n., *space, time, distance*

205

EXERCISES

- 1 Annō bellī primō prōvinciās occupāverant.
- 2 Eō annō ego neque tē neque filium videram.
- 3 Sextō in annō rēgnum prōvinciārum occupāverit.
- 4 Eum iubē, amīce, hoc rēgnum occupāre.
- 5 Ille septimō bellī annō castra expugnāverat.
- 6 Vōs, magistrī, docēte puerōs pigrōs diligentiam.
- 7 Eōs, domine ēgregie, iam docuimus et docēbimus.
- 8 Oppidānī spatiō annī filiōs nōn viderant.
- 9 Hī (virī) castra ad oppidum mōverint.
- 10 Vōs inimīcōs timuerātis, nōs eōs nōn timuerāmus.

206

- 1 I had not feared you, I feared (your) friends.
- 2 In that third year of the war you had seen the glory of (your) native country.
- 3 With me you had praised the kindness of the god of war.
- 4 Within the space of a year the townsmen had built a high wall.
- 5 In that space (of time) the men had moved the women into camp.
- 6 The inhabitants will have saved the town with the aid of the slaves.
- 7 Who had ordered you to hurry toward the forum with me?
- 8 In the fourth year of the great war, we had won the victory.
- 9 They had ordered you, with a friend, to come to us.
- 10 This year, with you and with the boys, we shall have seen those places.

AGNUS, *lamb*

Nōn est vivere sed valēre vīta (Martial) — *Life is accomplishment, not mere existence.*

LESSON XL

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN, THIRD PERSON — POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES (SOMETIMES PRONOUNS)

207

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

Nom. (lacking)

Gen. **sui**, of *himself, herself, itself, themselves*

Dat. **sibi**, to (for) *himself, herself, itself, themselves*

Acc. **sē**, or **sēsē**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves* (direct obj.)

Abl. **sē**, or **sēsē** (with, etc.) *himself, herself, itself, themselves*

Review **ipse** (148).

- 1 **Vir sē laudat**, *the man praises himself* (reflexive).
- 2 **Vir ipse puerum laudat**, *the man himself* (intensive)
praises the boy.
- 3 **Puella sē laudat**, *the girl praises herself.*
- 4 **Viri sē laudant**, *the men praise themselves.*
- 5 **Bellum sē nōn incitat**, *war does not incite itself.*

Sē refers (reflects) back to the subject of its sentence. Translate by "himself," "herself," "themselves," as the subject requires.

With the ablative of the reflexive pronoun, as with the personal pronouns, **cum** is an enclitic: **sēcum** (not **cum sē**).

208

VOCABULARY

aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour*

initium, -ī, n., *beginning*

inopia, -ae, f., *lack*

meus, -a, -um, *my, mine*

noster, **nostra**, **nostrum**, *our*,
ours

nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger*,
message

paucī, -ae, -a, *few*

sui, reflex. pro., of *himself*,
herself, itself, themselves

suus, -a, -um, *his (own), her*
(own), their (own)

tuus, -a, -um, *your, yours*

vester, **vestra**, **vestrum**, *your*,
yours (refers to more than one)

vigilia, -ae, f., *watch* (of the
night)

209 POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

Meus, tuus, suus are declined like **bonus** (94).

Noster and **vester** are declined like **pulcher** (129).

The vocative of **meus** is **mī** (**mī fili**; **mī amice**).

When these words modify nouns directly, they are possessive *adjectives*: **Hic est equus meus** (adj.), *this is my horse*.

When they modify nouns indirectly, they are possessive *pronouns*: **Hic equus est meus** (pronoun), *this horse is mine*.

Be sure to make these adjectives and pronouns agree in gender, number, and case with their nouns, not with the words to which they refer.

1 **Hortus tuus, Octāvia, est magnus.**

Your garden is large, Octavia.

2 **Hortus, Octāvia, est tuus.**

The garden is yours, Octavia.

Tuus, in both instances, refers to Octavia, but agrees in gender, number, and case with **hortus**.

210

EXERCISES

- 1 **Filius tuus aut cum amīcō meō aut cum suō veniet.**
- 2 **Filiae meae aut cum servīs suīs aut cum meīs venient.**
- 3 **Prīmā vigiliā, nūntius ipse victōriam nostram confirmāvit.**
- 4 **Initiō proelī nūntiī ad castra sua properāverant.**
- 5 **Paucīs hōrīs filia mea aut equum meum aut suum habēbit.**

211

- 1 Few men praise either themselves or their own kindness.
- 2 These women praise their own sons but not themselves.
- 3 This man praises his own daughter but not mine.
- 4 I shall move my camp on account of the lack of food.
- 5 The messengers gave food to a friend but not to themselves.
- 6 This messenger did not have his own horse with him (self).

LESSON XLI

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT
INDICATIVE ACTIVE — FOURTH CONJUGATION

212 Review the present, imperfect, and future of **audiō** (132).
Also review conjugations in **194, 201**.

213 Principal parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**
Perfect stem, **audīv-**

PERFECT

I heard, have heard, etc. *We heard, have heard, etc.*

audīvī **audivimus**

audivistī **audivistis**

audīvit **audivērunt**

PLUPERFECT

I had heard, etc. *We had heard, etc.*

audiveram **audiverāmus**

audiverās **audiverātis**

audiverat **audiverant**

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have heard, etc. *We shall have heard, etc.*

audiverō **audiverimus**

audiveris **audiveritis**

audiverit **audiverint**

214 Learn these principal parts:

impediō, impedire, impedīvī, impeditus, hinder

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus, fortify

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus,¹ come

**conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus, come to-
gether, meet**

inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus, come upon, find

dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī, dormītūrus,¹ sleep

¹ When a verb has no past participle, the future active participle is sometimes given as the fourth principal part (542).

215

EXERCISES

- 1 Vēnī, vīdī, fuī, dedī, iussī.
- 2 Impedivērunt, mūnīverant, vīderint, fuistī, dedit.
- 3 Audīvīt, fuerās, mūnīverās, vīdistis, exspectāverat.
- 4 Venit, vēnit, vēnimus, venīmus, habuerō.
- 5 Cōservāverint, fuerant, iussimus, audīverāmus.
- 6 Convēneritis, convēnerant, audīverit, fueram, impedīverātis.

216

BUCEPHALUS

Alexander Magnus (*the Great*) equum ēgregium habēbat. Eum Alexander appellāvit Bucephalum. Equus perīcula bellī sibi nōn iam timēbat. Illī equō erat animus ferē hūmānus. Alexander Bucephalum amābat et ab equō suō amābātur.

Bucephalus cum dominō suō multa proelia intrābat. Alexandrum Magnum equus portābat superbus. Nōtō in proeliō Alexander cum Bucephalō longē ā sociīs sōlus pugnābat. Proelium erat longum. Volābant tēla. Iterum atque iterum vulnerābātur — nōn Alexander, sed fīdus Bucephalus. Ille equus tamen ex proelī periculīs per tēla ad amīcōs dominum portāvit tūtum.

Bucephalus ipse post illud proelium prope suum dominum cārum animam expīrāvit. Alexander suōs (sociōs) oppidum in eō locō aedificāre iussit. Id oppidum ille appellāvit Bucephala.

217

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

anima , -ae, f., <i>breath, life</i>	hūmānus , -a, -um, <i>human</i>
Bucephala (acc. plur.), n., name of town	longē , adv., <i>far, far away</i>
Bucephalus , -ī, m., Alexander's horse	post , prep. with acc., <i>after</i>
cārus , -a, -um, <i>dear</i>	prope , prep. with acc., <i>near</i>
expīrō (ī), <i>breathe out</i>	sōlus , irreg. adj., <i>alone</i>
ferē , adv., <i>almost</i>	tamen , adv., <i>nevertheless</i>
fīdus , -a, -um, <i>faithful</i>	tēlum , -ī, n., <i>weapon, missile</i>
	tūtus , -a, -um, <i>safe, unharmed</i>
	vulnerō (ī), <i>wound</i>

Aequam mementō rēbus in arduis servāre mentem (Horace) — *When things go wrong, remember to keep a calm mind.*

LESSON XLII

THE INTERROGATIVE *Quis* AS (1) A PRONOUN, (2) AN ADJECTIVE

218 Before you study *quis* review the declensions and uses of *ille* (143), *hic* (144), *ipse* (148), and *is* (173).

219 *Quis* as a Pronoun

SINGULAR		
<i>Masculine and Feminine</i>		<i>Neuter</i>
<i>quis</i> (<i>quī</i>), <i>who?</i>	(<i>quae</i>) ¹	<i>quid</i> (<i>quod</i>), <i>what?</i>
<i>cuius</i> , <i>whose? of whom?</i>	(<i>cuius</i>)	<i>cuius</i> , <i>of what?</i>
<i>cui</i> , <i>to whom? for whom?</i>	(<i>cui</i>)	<i>cui</i> , <i>to what? for what?</i>
<i>quem</i> , <i>whom?</i> (obj.)	(<i>quam</i>)	<i>quid</i> (<i>quod</i>), <i>what?</i> (obj.)
<i>quō</i> , <i>with, from, by whom?</i>	(<i>quā</i>)	<i>quō</i> , <i>with, from, by what?</i>

PLURAL		
<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>quī</i> , <i>who?</i>	(<i>quae</i>), <i>who?</i>	<i>quae</i> , <i>what?</i>
<i>quōrum</i>	(<i>quārum</i>)	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>quibus</i>	(<i>quibus</i>)	<i>quibus</i>
<i>quōs</i>	(<i>quās</i>)	<i>quae</i>
<i>quibus</i>	(<i>quibus</i>)	<i>quibus</i>

220 VOCABULARY

<i>lĕgātus</i> , -ī, m., <i>envoy, lieutenant</i>	<i>quī</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> (adj.), <i>what?</i>
<i>manēō</i> , <i>manĕre</i> , <i>mānsī</i> , <i>mān-</i>	<i>respondeō</i> , <i>respondĕre</i> , <i>re-</i>
<i>sūrus</i> , <i>remain, stay</i>	<i>spondī</i> , <i>respōnsus</i> , <i>answer,</i>
<i>praemium</i> , -ī, n., <i>reward</i>	<i>reply</i>
<i>quis</i> , <i>quid</i> (pro.), <i>who? what?</i>	<i>sīc</i> , adv., <i>thus, so</i>

¹ The forms in parentheses are used as adjectives.

221

Quis as a Pronoun

Compare the endings of the genitive and dative singular with the genitive and dative singular endings of the other pronouns.

Examine the endings of the neuter nominative and accusative plural. Fix these unusual neuter forms in mind.

222

Quī (quis) as an Adjective

- 1 Quī puer, *what boy?* Quī puerī, *what boys?*
- 2 Cuius puellae, *what girl's?* Quārum puellārum, *what girls'?*
- 3 Cui bellō, *for what war?* Quibus bellis, *for or by what wars?*
- 4 Quod (rather than quid) bellum? *what war?*

With the interrogative *quis*, *cum* sometimes is an enclitic: *quōcum*, *quācum*, *quibuscum* (207).

223

EXERCISES (AURAL¹ AND WRITTEN)

- 1 Quis nōbīs respondēbit? Ego vōbīs nōn respondēbō.
 - 2 Quis sē nōn laudat? Quī sē nōn laudant?
 - 3 Quis ā sē nōn laudātur; quī ā sē nōn laudantur?
 - 4 Quī puer nostrō magistrō sic respondit?
 - 5 Quae tēla illī inimīcī sēcum habēbant?
 - 6 Quōcum longē ā periculō in castrīs is mānserat?
 - 7 Eum neque cum Mārcō neque vōbīscum vīdimus.
 - 8 Lēgātī nōbīs nōn respondērunt; vōbīsne responderant?
 - 9 Quod praemium huic puerō dedit ille lēgātus?
 - 10 Cum quibus amīcīs in oppidō mānsistis?
- 1 To whom did they reply? To you?
 - 2 What war, what dangers have you feared?
 - 3 To what boy shall I give this money?
 - 4 With whom were you remaining in camp?
 - 5 Whose weapons have you seen?
 - 6 Who will remain in camp with us?
 - 7 To whose sons shall we give the reward?
 - 8 By whom was the story heard?
 - 9 What lieutenant will have fortified the camp?

¹ In the aural exercises, it is expected that the teacher will read the Latin and the English aloud, and that the pupil, with book closed, shall translate separate words, phrases, clauses, and, finally, entire sentences.

LESSON XLIII

THE IRREGULAR VERB *Possum* — THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

224 Review the indicative of *sum* (650).

225 1 Principal parts: *possum*, *I am able, I can; posse, to be able; potui, I have been able, was able, could.*

2 *Possum* is a much used verb. Learn the indicative thoroughly (651), and the English for every form, especially of the imperfect and perfect.

3 Formation: *pot-* (base of the indeclinable adjective *potis, able*) + *sum* (*I am*) = *possum* (*potsum*), *I am able, I can.* Throughout the verb, the *t* of *pot-* is changed to *s* before a form of *sum* that begins with *s*.

4 *Possum, I can, am able; poteram, I could, was able; potui, I could, have been able.* An infinitive regularly completes the meaning of *possum*: *Potes labōrāre, you can work.*

226 ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

1 In *eō oppidō annum habitābam, I lived in that town a year.*

2 *Puer ūnam hōram mēcum mānsit, the boy remained with me one hour.*

227 Rule. *Duration of time is expressed by the accusative.*

How is time *within which* expressed (203)?

228

VOCABULARY

ūnus,¹ -a, -um, *one*

quattuor, *four*

quīnque, *five*

sex, *six*

septem, *seven*

octo, *eight*

novem, *nine*

decem, *ten*

malus, -a, -um, *bad*

possum, posse, potui, be able,

can

¹ *Unus* has the pronoun endings *ūnīus, ūnīus, ūnīus*, in the genitive and *ūnī, ūnī, ūnī*, in the dative singular. The other cardinal numbers given are not declined.

229

EXERCISES

- 1 Potes venīre; pugnāre poterat; respondēre potuērunt.
- 2 Eum monēre possumus; eum vulnerāre nōn potuerās.
- 3 Illi nōs vidēre potuerant; quis castra movēre potuit?
- 4 Equōs continēre nōn possunt; mē impedire poterant.
- 5 Sē diligentiam docēre poterit; puer esse bonus potest,
sed est malus.
- 6 Quōs retinēre potuerātis? Servōs ēvocāre poterunt.
- 7 Vōs pecūniam retinēre nōn potestis; illi oppida mūnīre
potuerint.
- 8 Initiō proeli sex hōrās erat tēlōrum inopia magna.
- 9 Septem hōrās in castrōrum mūrō lēgātus mānserat.
- 10 Paucis hōris tibi praemium pulchrum ille dabit.
- 11 Amīci nostrī ad castra longā viā vēnerant.
- 12 Quattuor hōrās in castris nōbiscum manēbunt.

230

- 1 I shall not be able to save him.
- 2 You have not been able to come to us.
- 3 Who can tell me that story about (dē) the battle?
- 4 You can tell me many stories about those men.
- 5 I shall not be able to have you with me today.
- 6 With whom did the lieutenant remain ten hours?
- 7 Marcus was a lieutenant (for) eight years.
- 8 For seven years he had not been in one battle.
- 9 They will not be able to give aid to one enemy.
- 10 The aid of one lieutenant cannot save this town.
- 11 With whom had they been able to work those hours?

231 AURAL: Translate the foregoing Latin sentences at the teacher's dictation.



CORVĪ, crows

LESSON XLIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW

232

TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 4

1 aut	26 quattuor
2 aut . . . aut	27 quīnque
3 decimus	28 quīntus
4 ego	29 rēgnum
5 ēgregius	30 respondeō
6 hōra	31 secundus
7 initium	32 septem
8 inopia	33 septimus
9 is	34 sex
10 lēgātus	35 sextus
11 lingua	36 sīc
12 maneō	37 sine
13 meus	38 spatium
14 nōnus	39 suī (<i>reflex. pro.</i>)
15 noster	40 suus
16 nūntius	41 tamen
17 octāvus	42 tēlum
18 octō	43 tertius
19 officium	44 tū
20 paucī	45 tūtus
21 per	46 tuus
22 praemium	47 ūnus
23 primus	48 vester
24 prōvincia	49 vigilia
25 quārtus	50 vulnerō



GALLUS, rooster

233

1 or	26 four
2 either . . . or	27 five
3 tenth	28 fifth
4 I	29 supreme power
5 excellent	30 answer
6 hour	31 second
7 beginning	32 seven
8 lack	33 seventh
9 this, that (he, she, it)	34 six
10 envoy, lieutenant	35 sixth
11 tongue	36 thus, so
12 remain, stay	37 without
13 my, mine	38 space, time
14 ninth	39 of himself
15 our, ours	40 his, her, its, their, theirs
16 messenger, message	41 nevertheless
17 eighth	42 missile, weapon
18 eight	43 third
19 duty, service	44 you
20 few	45 safe, unharmed
21 through	46 your, yours (<i>sing.</i>)
22 reward	47 one
23 first	48 your, yours (<i>plur.</i>)
24 province	49 watch (of the night)
25 fourth	50 wound

ALEXANDER MAGNUS, *Alexander the Great*

Frātrēs Helenae, lūcida sīdera (Horace) — *Shining constellations, brothers of Helen.* (Castor and Pollux.)

LESSON XLV

STORY OF THE GEMINI (THE TWINS)

234 For the notebook:

Under the headings Type I and Type II of the tabular form, (166) put a similar exercise in your notebook, using the verb *moveō*.

Number of words:

(1) Under Type I, not fewer than 20.

(2) Under Type II, not fewer than 10.

235

VOCABULARY

dēsperō (1), *despair of* **finitimus**, -a, -um, *neighboring*
Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*



RUINS OF THE TEMPLE OF CASTOR AND POLLUX

236

GEMINI (THE TWINS)

Castor et Pollux filiī Iovis (*of Jupiter*) erant. Illī in Graeciā diū habitābant et miserōs (virōs) ē periculīs multīs liberābant. Postrēmō pater (*their father*) magnōs filiōs ā terrā in caelum vocāvit. Illīs locum clārum inter caelī stellās dedit pater. Rōmānī illās stellās lūcidās appellāvērunt "Geminōs."

Posteā Rōmānī in proeliō magnō ad lacum (*lake*) Regillum cum Sabīnīs, finitimīs, pugnābant. Victōriam dēspērāverant Rōmānī. Sed Postumius post sōlis occāsum (*after sunset*) Geminōs in caelō iam splendidōs vīdit. Auxilium illōs prō Rōmānīs ōrāvit.¹ Geminī Postumium audīvērunt et Rōmānīs auxilium dedērunt atque victōriam.

Geminī ipsī in equīs albīs ad locum proeli ā Rōmānīs vidēbantur. Rōmānī, propter illius victōriae memoriam, Geminōrum monumentum in Forō aedificāvērunt.

237

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

albus, -a, -um, *white*

splendidus, -a, -um, *glowing*

postrēmō, adv., *finally*

stella, -ae, f., *star*

¹Like *doceō* (and some other verbs), may take two accusatives.



A ROMAN LAMP

Fortūna opēs auferre, nōn animum potest (Seneca) — *Fortune can rob us of treasures, not of courage.*

LESSON XLVI

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

238 1 Review 158, 1, 2, for the distinction between the perfect and the imperfect tense.

2 Review the principal parts and English meanings of all verbs in 195 and 214, especially the past participles.

3 The perfect indicative passive is conjugated by combining the present of *sum* with the past participle.

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

I was, have been, carried, etc. *We were, have been, carried, etc.*

portātus sum

portātī sumus

portātus es

portātī estis

portātus est

portātī sunt

I was, have been, advised, etc. *We were, have been, advised, etc.*

monitus sum

monitī sumus

monitus es

monitī estis

monitus est

monitī sunt

I was, have been, heard, etc. *We were, have been, heard, etc.*

audītus sum

audītī sumus

audītus es

audītī estis

audītus est

audītī sunt

239

VOCABULARY

commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, *alarm, excite, arouse*

impedimentum, -ī, n., *hindrance*; plur., *baggage* (of an army)

prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus, *keep away*.

signum, -ī, n., *sign, signal, standard*

superō (ī), *overcome, excel, surpass*

sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *hold up, check, support, withstand*

vīcus, -ī, m., *village*

240

PAST PARTICIPLES

The past participle is an adjective. It is declined like **bonus**, and like all other adjectives must agree with its subject (the word it modifies) in gender, number, and case.

- 1 **Puer monitus est**, *the boy was warned.*
- 2 **Puella monita est**, *the girl was warned.*
- 3 **Oppidum monitum est**, *the town was warned.*
- 4 **Pueri monitī sunt**, *the boys were warned.*
- 5 **Puellae monitae sunt**, *the girls were warned.*
- 6 **Oppida monita sunt**, *the towns were warned.*

241

EXERCISES

- 1 Signum datum est, signa data sunt.
- 2 Lēgātī oppidānōs ā castrīs prohibuērunt.
- 3 Oppidānī ā castrīs prohibītī sunt.
- 4 Lēgātī proelium nōn sustinuērunt.
- 5 Proelium ā lēgātō nōn sustentum est.
- 6 Proelia ā lēgātīs nōn sustenta sunt.
- 7 Quis in vīcum signum portāvit?
- 8 A quō portātum est signum in vīcum?
- 9 Possuntne lēgātī eōs vicōs occupāre?
- 10 A quibus occupāta sunt ea oppida?

242

- 1 We have been aroused by the danger of war.
- 2 You have been surpassed by few men.
- 3 I have been kept away from the villages.
- 4 The poor men can not support the standards.
- 5 By what men were our standards carried?
- 6 We were alarmed by that signal of war.
- 7 Have they been able to keep their friends from danger?
- 8 You ought to carry the standard into our camp.
- 9 The baggage was moved in the third watch.
- 10 What hindrance can keep us away from our friends?

LESSON XLVII

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

243 1 Review the principal parts and the English equivalents of all verbs in **195**, with particular attention to the past participles.

2 Review the perfect passive (**238**). How is it formed? With what must the past participle always agree?

3 Review the imperfect and future of **sum** (**73**), also the perfect and pluperfect active of the first, second, and fourth conjugations (**644, 645, 648**).

244 1 The pluperfect passive is formed by combining the imperfect of **sum** with the past participle; the future perfect by combining the future of **sum** with the past participle.

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE

2 *I had been ordered, etc.* *We had been ordered, etc.*

iussus eram **iussī erāmus**

iussus erās **iussī erātis**

iussus erat **iussī erant**

3 Conjugate the pluperfect active and passive of **parō, dō, videō, audiō, inveniō**.

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

4 *I shall have been ordered,* *We shall have been ordered,*
etc. *etc.*

iussus erō **iussī erimus**

iussus eris **iussī eritis**

iussus erit **iussī erunt**

5 Conjugate the future perfect active and passive of **vocō, nūntiō, moveō, videō, impediō**.

6 Remember that the third plural active is **iusserint**, and the passive is **iussī erunt**.

245

EXERCISES

- 1 Ad vīcum cum sociīs venīre iussī erāmus.
- 2 Mūrī altī oppidōrum ab oppidānīs aedificātī erant.
- 3 Initiō proelī impedīmenta in castra portāta erant.
- 4 Septem hōrās in oppidō vōbīscum mānserint.
- 5 Paucīs in hōrīs nūntiī ā lēgātīs vīsī erunt.
- 6 Primā vigiliā in oppidum convēnerant cōpiaē nostrae.
- 7 Multa tēla post bellum in agrīs inventa erant.
- 8 Ea (tēla) ā vicīnīs diū cōservābuntur.
- 9 A quibus nūntiīs datum erit oppidānīs signum?
- 10 Quibuscum illius proelī monumenta vīderātis?
- 11 Cui lēgātō datum erat illud praemium?
- 12 Spatium quattuor hōrārum nūntiī mānserant.
- 13 Una imperī hōra illīs ā lēgātō nōn data est.

246

- 1 (There) had been an abundance of grain in the villages.
- 2 By whom had the grain been moved into the villages?
- 3 The neighbors had given aid to these messengers.
- 4 Aid had not been given to the faithful farmers.
- 5 Why, faithful slave, could you not save yourself?
- 6 In a few hours the signal will have been given.
- 7 In the space of one hour the signals will have been given.
- 8 The services of the lieutenants will have been praised.
- 9 That great monument had been moved from the Appian Way.
- 10 Can men move great monuments long distances?¹
- 11 We had been warned of (about) the danger by a few men.
- 12 You had been ordered by the lieutenant to come to me.

¹ Extent of space, like duration of time, is expressed by the accusative (227).



PHĀSIĀNA, *pheasant*

LESSON XLVIII

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

247 The relative pronoun has precisely the same forms as the interrogative adjective **quī**. The plurals have the same translations as the corresponding forms of the singular. Review the plural of **quis** (219).

SINGULAR

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
quī , <i>who</i>	quae , <i>who</i>	quod , <i>which</i>
cuius , <i>whose, of whom</i>	cuius , <i>whose, of whom</i>	cuius , <i>of which</i>
cui , <i>to (for) whom</i>	cui , <i>to (for) whom</i>	cui , <i>to (for) which</i>
quem , <i>whom (obj.)</i>	quam , <i>whom (obj.)</i>	quod , <i>which (obj.)</i>
quō , <i>with, by, etc., whom</i>	quā , <i>with, by, etc., whom</i>	quō , <i>with, by, etc., which</i>

248

VOCABULARY

admoneō , <i>admonēre</i> , admonuī , admonitus , <i>remind</i> , <i>admonish</i>	fāma , -ae, f., <i>reputation, report</i>
barbarus , -a, -um, <i>foreign, barbarous</i>	pācō (1), <i>pacify, subdue</i>
barbarus , -ī, m., <i>foreigner, barbarian</i>	prōvideō , prōvidēre , prōvidī , prōvīsus , <i>foresee</i>
factum , -ī, n., <i>thing done, act, deed</i>	quī , quae , quod , <i>rel. pro., who, which</i>
	vīta , -ae, f., <i>life</i>

249 AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

- Nūntius quem vidēs mēcum nōn diū manēbit.**
The messenger whom you see will not stay with me long.
- Puellae quārum officia laudās sunt fidae.**
The girls whose services you are praising are faithful.
- Virī quibus auxilium dedistī sunt lēgātī.**
The men to whom you rendered (gave) help are lieutenants.

In each of the foregoing sentences, name the antecedent of the relative pronoun, and give the reason for the (1) gender, (2) number, (3) case of each relative pronoun.

250 Rule. *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but the case of the relative is determined by its use in its own clause.*

251

EXERCISES

- 1 Quis est nūntius quem admonuit lēgātus?
- 2 Graecia est terra quam Rōmānī pācāvērunt.
- 3 Quis arma quae illī habēbant comparāverat?
- 4 Iīs quī nōn labōrant pecūniam nōn dabimus.
- 5 Ea, cui auxilium dedistī, erat filia mea.
- 6 Sunt nostrī sociī quōrum vītae fuērunt in periculō.
- 7 Fāma lēgātī quem illī timuerant erat mala.
- 8 Servī impedīmenta quae equīs portāta sunt comparāverant.
- 9 Cuius erat factum barbarum quō lēgātī commotī sunt?
- 10 Vestrae sunt filiae quibus nūntiī auxilium dedērunt.

252

- 1 Who prepared the food which you have with you?
- 2 My food was prepared by the messengers' sons.
- 3 Those dangers which had been foreseen by you were great.
- 4 Who saw the men by whom the province had been pacified?
- 5 The man to whom the good example has been given was cowardly.
- 6 I cannot advise this man who has not always been faithful.
- 7 Who was able to foresee the dangers which have come?



LAUREL AND OAK WREATHS

Forsan et haec olim meminisse iuvabit (Virgil) — *Some day perhaps the memory of even these hardships will be sweet.*

LESSON XLIX

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE — REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE

253

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

1 **Inopiā cibi labōrant**, *they are suffering from (on account of, because of) a lack of food.*

254 **Rule.** *Cause may be expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Note. Cause may also be expressed by (1) **propter** with the accusative: **Propter inopiam cibi labōrant**, *they are suffering on account of the lack of food*; (2) **dē** with the ablative: **Dē inopiā cibi labōrant**, *they are suffering from (because of, due to) a lack of food.* Sometimes the ablative of cause is best translated by the English preposition *by*.

255 2 Review the ablative of

- (1) *place where or in which* (33, note)
- (2) *personal agent* (44)
- (3) *means or instrument* (115)
- (4) *accompaniment* (150)
- (5) *time within which* (203)
- (6) *cause* (253, 254)

(a) Study the illustrative sentences and review the rule for each of the six uses of the ablative given above.

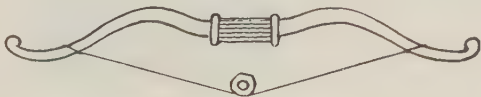
(b) In what three uses is a preposition required? Write two short Latin sentences to illustrate each of the three uses.

(c) In what uses are prepositions *not* required? Write sentences illustrative of these uses, as directed above.

256

VOCABULARY

crēber, crēbra, crēbrum , <i>fre-</i>	fuga , -ae, f., <i>flight</i>
<i>quent, thick</i>	iniūria , -ae, f., <i>injury, wrong</i>



ARCUS, *bow*



Photograph by Reynolds

TEMPLE OF NEPTUNE AT PESTO (ANCIENT PAESTUM)

257 In the following sentences, express *cause* both by the ablative and by **propter** with the accusative:

- 1 Because of the frequent dangers of war he had got together the weapons.
- 2 The lieutenant had been alarmed by the great lack of food.
- 3 They kept the horses with them because of the lack of grain.
- 4 Those boys had been alarmed by the flight of the men.
- 5 They can withstand the dangers of battle because of the abundance of weapons.
- 6 The men were asking aid on account of frequent injuries.
- 7 We cannot give aid on account of the flight of the slaves.
- 8 Within a few hours they will have been saved by their friends.

258

TEMPLA

MAGISTER: Vidētisne, discipulī, in pictūrā templa magna?

DISCIPULĪ: Templa magna, magister bone, et agrōs pulchrōs certē vidēmus. Suntne haec templa in Americā? Quis templa aedificāvit?

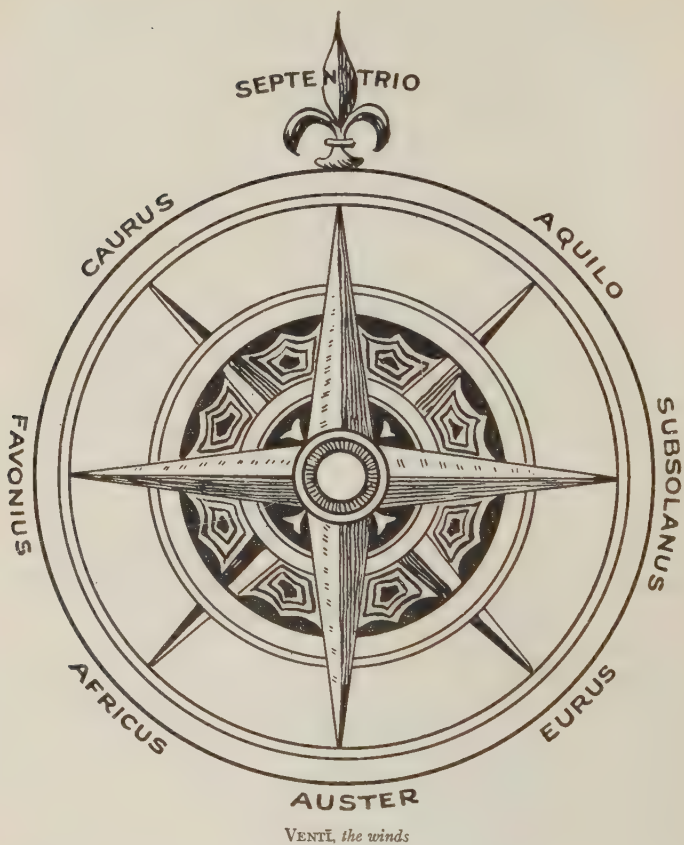
MAGISTER: Haec templa nōn sunt in Americā. Templa quae in pictūrā vidētis in Italiā ā virīs antīquīs (*of old*) aedificāta sunt. Virī antīquī auxiliō multōrum servōrum magna templa aedificāre poterant.

DISCIPULĪ: Cuius deī est templum magnum quod in pictūrā vidēmus?

MAGISTER: Neptūnī, deī aquārum et nautārum, est templum.

DISCIPULĪ: Quā dē causā ā virīs antīquīs aedificābantur templa? Timēbantne illī perīcula bellī? Labōrābantne inopiā cibī? Beneficiīsne deōrum templa aedificābant?

MAGISTER: Multīs dē causīs virī antīquī templa aedificābant. Vōbīs causās nunc nārrāre nōn possum; paucīs annīs vōs ipsī causās invenīre poteritis.



259

Septentrio (*Boreās*), *north wind*
 Aquilo, *northeast wind*
 Subsolanus, *east wind*
 Eurus (*Vulturnus*), *southeast*
wind

Auster (*Notus*), *south wind*
 Africus, *southwest wind*
 Favonius (*Zephyrus*), *west wind*
 Caurus, *northwest wind*

Prō arīs atque focīs! (Sallust) — *For your altars and your fires!*

LESSON L

PATRIOTIC DEFENSE OF THE HOME CITY

260

VOCABULARY

absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, autem, conj. (never first),
be away, absent moreover, however
interim, adv., meanwhile



Photograph by Reynolds

ARPINO (ANCIENT ARPINUM)

Cicero, greatest master of Latin prose, and Rome's most distinguished orator, was born near Arpinum in 106 B.C. Like many other ancient towns, Arpinum was built on a hilltop to facilitate defense in time of war.

261 PATRIOTIC DEFENSE OF THE HOME CITY

Castra quae nunc vidēre potestis nōn longē absunt ab oppidō vestrō. Lēgātus auxiliō servōrum et equōrum tēla multa in castra sua mōvit. Unā hōrā ea tēla ē castrīs ad mūrōs vestrōs mōta erunt. Lēgātus oppidum oppugnāre potest, sed, propter dīligentiam oppidānōrum, nōn poterit id expugnāre. Poteruntne cōpiae inimīcae arma quae sēcum habent sine auxiliō equōrum movēre? Venietne cum suis (*his men*) ipse lēgātus? Nōnne illum, sociī, vidēre potestis? Ad ipsās oppidī portās mox erit proelium magnum.

Interim in oppidō, tēla multa ab oppidānīs comparāta sunt. Ego impetum (*attack*) vōbiscum exspectābō et sustinēbō. Puellae ipsae cum cōpiīs inimicīs pugnāre nōn possunt. Illae sunt timidae, tamen nōn clāmant. Puerī autem animōsī bene labōrant. Hī ad patrēs, quī prō ipsīs portīs pugnant, aquam et cibum trāns fossam portant neque tēlis crēbris neque ā lēgātō superbō commoventur.

Sine auxiliō puerōrum fidōrum nōn diū pugnāre possunt patrēs.

Animī bonī (*of good courage*) este, oppidānī ēgregiī; mox erit victōria vestra. Hodiē nōn frūstrā prō patriā pugnātis. Postea filiīs vestris fābulās dē hōc proeliō saepe nārrābitis.

262

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

animōsus, -a, -um, *spirited*

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch*

frūstrā, adv., *in vain*

oppugnō (r), *attack*



MERGĪ, gulls, divers

Cui prōdest, is facit (Seneca) — *He who profits by an act is a party to it.*

LESSON LI

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

263 1 The ending of the genitive singular is **-is**.

2 Masculine and feminine nouns are declined alike.

3 Study the general rules for gender (85). Apply these rules to **cōsul**, **soror**, **pater**.

4 Nouns ending in **-or**, unless they refer to females (**soror**), are masculine (**timor**, **labor**).

5 Drop the genitive singular ending **-is** to obtain the base.

264 THIRD DECLENSION

cōsul , m., <i>consul</i>	soror , f., <i>sister</i>	pater , m., <i>father</i>
base, consul-	base, soror-	base, patr-

SINGULAR

cōsul	soror	pater
cōsulis	sorōris	patris
cōsuli	sorōrī	patri
cōsulem	sorōrem	patrem
cōsule	sorōre	patre

PLURAL

cōsulēs	sorōrēs	patrēs
cōsulum	sorōrum	patrum
cōsulibus	sorōribus	patribus
cōsulēs	sorōrēs	patrēs
cōsulibus	sorōribus	patribus

Compare **cōsuli** with **cui**, **cōsulem** with **quem**, **cōsulibus** with **quibus**.

265 VOCABULARY

cōsul , cōsulis , m., <i>consul</i>	māter , mātris , f., <i>mother</i>
frāter , frātris , m., <i>brother</i>	-que (enclitic), conj., <i>and</i>
impetum , m. (acc.), <i>attack</i>	soror , sorōris , f., <i>sister</i>
labor , labōris , m., <i>work, hardship</i>	subitō , adv., <i>suddenly</i>
timor , timōris , m., <i>fear</i>	

266 Decline together: *cōsul magnus, soror mea, pater noster, hic timor, ille labor.*

267

EXERCISES

- 1 Hodiē magnus timor oppidum Rōmānum subitō occupāvit.
- 2 Frāter nōtus cōsulis quīque nūntiōs prō portā viderat.
- 3 Sororēs mātresque¹ cōsulum magnō in timōre fuērunt.
- 4 Cōsulēs in oppidum patrēs statim convocāvērunt.
- 5 Cōsulēs patrēsque impetum magnum in mūrōs oppidi exspectāvērant.
- 6 Ex agrōrum labōre in oppidum agricolae vocātī sunt.
- 7 Nūntiī appropinquāvērunt et cōsulēs Rōmānōs patrēsque salutāvērunt.
- 8 Mox timor mātis et sorōrum cōsulis clārī remōtus est.
- 9 Nūntiī erant patrum Rōmānōrum cōsulumque amīcī.

268 To the pupil:

- (1) Translate the nine sentences at dictation.
- (2) Write correct English translations.
- (3) Without consulting the Latin originals, translate your English sentences into Latin.
- (4) Compare your Latin sentences with the originals.

¹ The enclitic *-que* (and) is used to join two words that are closely associated in thought, especially when *et* connects phrases or clauses in the same sentence. *-que* is always attached to the second of two words thus connected.



LICTORS WITH FASCES

Dōs est magna parentium virtūs (Horace) — *The virtue of one's forbears is a noble dowry.*

LESSON LII

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (*Continued*)

269

dux, m., <i>leader</i>	legiō, f., <i>legion</i>	homō, m., <i>man</i>	CASE
base, duc-	base, legiōn-	base, homin-	ENDINGS

SINGULAR

dux	legiō	homō	-s or —
ducis	legiōnis	hominis	-is
duci	legiōnī	hominī	-ī
ducem	legiōnem	hominem	-em
duce	legiōne	homine	-e

PLURAL

ducēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	-ēs
ducum	legiōnum	hominum	-um
ducibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	-ibus
ducēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	-ēs
ducibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	-ibus

270 Decline: *rēx bonus, prima lūx, is homō, illa legiō.*

271

VOCABULARY

dux, ducis, m., <i>leader, general</i>	nam, conj., <i>for, because</i>
enim, conj. (never first), <i>indeed, to be sure, for</i>	pāx, pācis (plur. rare), f., <i>peace</i>
homō, hominis, m., <i>man, human being</i>	quot, indecl. adj., <i>how many?</i>
legiō, legiōnis, f., <i>legion</i>	rēx, rēgis, m., <i>king</i>
lūx, lūcis, f. (no gen. plur.), <i>light</i>	valē, <i>good-bye</i> (said to one person)
	valēte, <i>good-bye</i> (said to more than one person)



LEPUS, *hare*

272

FILIUS SUPERBUS

Ego sum puer Rōmānus. Frātrēs quattuor et sorōrem ūnam habeo. Cum mātē, sorōre, frātribus Rōmae habitō. Pater meus est homō clārus. Est enim dux sex legiōnum Rōmānārum, quibus in legiōnibus multa mīlia (*thousands*) hominum sunt. Pater officiīs multis in (*to*) patriam ā cōsulibus saepe laudātus est. A suis legiōnibus quoque (*also*) saepe laudātur.

Illae legiōnēs cum duce suō, patre meō, in proelia saepe intrant neque timent. Pater Rōmae nōbiscum nunc est. Hodiē enim in Italiā est pāx. Mox autem erit bellum. Crās (*tomorrow*) cum legiōnibus quās sēcum habet pater ad castra properābit. Dux legiōnēque prō patriā pugnābunt.

Valēte, legiōnēs! Valē, mī pater!

273 (Answer the following questions in Latin orally. Every answer should be a complete sentence.)

- 1 Quis nārrat hanc fābulam? Ubi habitābat puer?
- 2 Quot frātrēs habēbat puer? Quot sorōrēs?
- 3 Cuius filius erat hic puer? Ubi erat pater?
- 4 Quot legiōnēs sēcum habēbat pater? Timēbantne legiōnēs bellum?
- 5 Quī patrem puerī laudābant? Cūr laudābant cōsulēs ducem suum?
- 6 Amābātur ne dux ā legiōnibus? Amābatne dux legiōnēs?
- 7 Cūr properābat dux ad castra? Quibuscum properāvit pater puerī?
- 8 Timēbantne legiōnēs pericula? Bellumne ā legiōnibus amābātur?



CORONAE, crowns

Possunt, quia posse videntur (Virgil) — *As a man thinketh, so he is.*

LESSON LIII

THIRD CONJUGATION, INDICATIVE PRESENT

274 1 Compare the present tenses of **dūcō** and **audiō**, especially the quantities of the **i**.

2 The principal parts of a typical verb of each conjugation:

1st: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus**

2nd: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**

3rd: **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus**

4th: **audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus**

3 Always accent the next to the last syllable of the present active infinitive of first, second, and fourth conjugation verbs, but the third from the last syllable of third conjugation verbs.

275

PRESENT INDICATIVE

dūcō, I lead; present stem: **dūce-**

audiō, I hear; present stem: **audi-**

ACTIVE

I lead, etc. I hear, etc.

dūcō

audiō

dūcis

audīs

dūcit

audit

dūcimus

audīmus

dūcitis

audītis

dūcunt

audiunt

PASSIVE

I am led, etc. I am heard, etc.

dūcor

audior

dūceris

audīris

dūcitur

auditur

dūcimur

audīmur

dūciminī

audīminī

dūcuntur

audiuntur

276

VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, drive, do

contrā, prep. with acc., against

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, lead

mittō, mittere, misī, missus, send

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus,

put, place

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, rule

vāllum, -ī, n., rampart, pali-

sade

vincō, vincere, vicī, victus,

conquer, defeat

277 Like **dūcō**, conjugate each of the following in the indicative present, active and passive: **agō**, **mittō**, **pōnō**, **regō**.

278

EXERCISES

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1 Dūcunt, dūcuntur. | 1 I am sending, I am sent. |
| 2 Audiunt, audiuntur. | 2 I am hearing, I am heard. |
| 3 Mittit, mittitur. | 3 He leads, he is led. |
| 4 Impedit, impeditur. | 4 He hinders, he is hindered. |
| 5 Regō, regor. | 5 They rule, they are ruled. |
| 6 Mūniō, mūnior. | 6 They fortify, they are fortified. |
| 7 Pōnit, pōnīmī. | 7 He drives, he is driven. |
| 8 Mūnit, mūnīmī. | 8 He hears, he is heard. |
| 9 Agimus, agimur. | 9 We are leading, we are led. |
| 10 Audīmus, audīmur. | 10 We are hindering, we are hindered. |
| 11 Dūcis, dūceris. | 11 You place, you are placed. |
| 12 Impedīs, impedīris. | 12 You hear, you are heard. |
| 13 Pōnit, pōnuntur. | 13 They send, they are being sent. |
| 14 Mūnit, mūniunt. | 14 They fortify, they are being fortified. |

279 Prīma lūce¹ dux Rōmānus cōpiās suās ē vāllō castrōrum contrā cōpiās rēgis dūcit. Oppidānī contrā Rōmānōs ā rēge ipsō in proelium nōn dūcuntur sed mittuntur. Rēx sibi proelia tīmet et in oppidō longē ā perīculō manet. Sed in ipsīs mūrīs oppidī rēx nōn est tūtus, nam oppidānī miserī per oppidī viās ā legiōnibus aguntur. Rēx ipse ā duce Rōmānō celeriter vincitur et (to) Rōmam portābitur.

280 Write the Latin of the preceding paragraph from dictation; compare with the original; translate.

¹ At daybreak.



FĒLES, cat

LESSON LIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW

281

TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 5

1 absum	26 lūx
2 admoneō	27 malus
3 agō	28 māter
4 atque	29 mittō
5 autem	30 nam
6 barbarus	31 novem
7 clārus	32 pācō
8 commoveō	33 pater
9 cōnsul	34 pāx
10 contrā	35 pōnō
11 crēber	36 possum
12 decem	37 post
13 dūcō	38 prohibeō
14 dux	39 propter
15 enim	40 prōvideō
16 factum	41 regō
17 fāma	42 rēx
18 frāter	43 signum
19 fuga	44 soror
20 homō	45 statim
21 impedīmentum	46 superō
22 iniūria	47 sustineō
23 interim	48 timor
24 labor	49 vīcus
25 longē	50 vincō



Mūs, mouse

282	1	be away	26	light
	2	remind	27	bad
	3	drive, do	28	mother
	4	and also	29	send
	5	moreover	30	for
	6	barbarous	31	nine
	7	clear, famous	32	pacify, subdue
	8	alarm, excite	33	father
	9	consul	34	peace
10		against	35	put, place
11		frequent, thick	36	be able, can
12		ten	37	after
13		lead	38	prevent
14		leader	39	on account of
15		indeed, for	40	foresee
16		act, deed	41	rule
17		reputation, report	42	king
18		brother	43	sign, standard
19		flight	44	sister
20		man	45	at once
21		hindrance	46	overcome, surpass
22		injury, wrong	47	withstand, support
23		meanwhile	48	fear
24		work	49	village
25		far	50	conquer, defeat



NĀVIS LIBURNA, *swift war galley*

Alium silere quod volēs, primus silē (Seneca) — *If you wish your secret kept, be the first to keep it.*

LESSON LV

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (*Continued*) — THE LOCATIVE CASE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

283	mīles , m., <i>soldier</i>	prīnceps , m., <i>leader</i>
	base, milit-	base, prīncip-
	mīles	prīnceps
	militis	prīncipis
	militī	prīncipī
	militem	prīncipem
	militē	prīncipe
	militēs	prīncipēs
	militum	prīncipum
	militibus	prīncipibus
	militēs	prīncipēs
	militibus	prīncipibus

Decline together: **quī miles**, **ille princeps**.

284

THE LOCATIVE CASE

Rōmae has been translated “at Rome”; **Beneventī**, “at Beneventum.” The names of towns and cities, and a few other words (**dōmī**, *at home*) have a locative case. In the singular the ending of the first declension is **-ae**, of the second declension, **-ī**: **Capuae**, *at Capua*; **Corinthī**, *at Corinth*.

The names of a few cities are plural only: **Athēnae**, **-ārum**, *f., Athens*; locative: **Athēnīs**, *at Athens*. The ending is **-īs**.

285

VOCABULARY

campus , -ī , m., <i>field, plain</i>	mīles , militis , m., <i>soldier</i>
comes , comitis , m., <i>comrade</i>	pīlum , -ī , n., <i>javelin</i>
eques , equitis , m., <i>horseman</i> ; plur., <i>cavalry</i>	prīnceps , prīncipis , m., <i>leader</i> , <i>chief (man)</i>
gladius , gladī , m., <i>sword</i>	uxor , uxōris , <i>f., wife</i>

286

EXERCISES

- 1 Propter fugam equitum princeps Capuae manēre nōn poterat.
- 2 Uxor ducis quī militēs in barbarōs dūcit nunc est domī.
- 3 Athēnīs propter periculī fāmam illa nōn diū mānsit.
- 4 Militēs nostrī comitum suōrum iniūriās nōn prōvīderant.
- 5 Comitēs principis quī Rōmae sunt gladiōs comparābunt.
- 6 Illud factum comitum fidōrum fuerit grātum clārō principī.
- 7 Inter militēs nostrōs et equitēs barbarōrum mox erit proelium.
- 8 Nōn sine iniuriā vicinōrum dux barbarōs vincere poterit.
- 9 Militēs quī sunt Corinthī dē factīs comitum admonitī sunt.
- 10 Fuga equitum erat periculōsa illīs barbarīs sed nōbīs grāta.
- 11 Auxiliō principis dux barbarōs vincit et pācat.

287

- 1 We are sending these soldiers who are now at Capua to the leader.
- 2 Whose cavalry is at Rome? At Corinth? At Athens?
- 3 Roman soldiers often fought with swords and javelins.
- 4 The soldiers of our chief are conquering the king's forces.
- 5 Who are the companions whom the leader has with him?
- 6 That king cannot conquer Roman soldiers by means of cavalry.
- 7 Who can lead our cavalry out of camp into the plain?
- 8 The leader of the cavalry is not at Capua; he is at Athens.
- 9 Today we shall remain at home with our companions.
- 10 The good wife of our leader is at home with her friends.

288 Give English words suggested by the Latin, as follows:

(1) *contrā, frūstrā, homō, interim, soror*, — one word each;

(2) *agō, cōsul, frāter, labor, māter, pater, pāx, pōnō, rēx, vincō*, — two or more words each.

Nihil est vērītātis lūce dulcius (Cicero) — *Nothing is sweeter than the light of truth.*

LESSON LVI

INDICATIVE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF *Dūcō*

289

IMPERFECT

ACTIVE

I led, was leading, etc.

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant

PASSIVE

I was led, was being led, etc.

dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur

FUTURE

I shall lead, etc.

I shall be led, etc.

dūcam	dūcēmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcet	dūcent

dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēris	dūcēminī
dūcētur	dūcentur

1 Compare the future tense of *dūcō* with the corresponding forms of *audiō* (132, 134).

2 Like *dūcō*, conjugate the imperfect and future tenses of the following verbs: *agō, mittō, pōnō, regō, vincō*.



Photograph by Reynolds

VIA FLAMINIA

Recent view of an ancient road originally built by C. Flaminius, consul, 220 B.C. It extends from Rome northeast more than 150 miles to ancient Ariminum (modern Rimini).

290

EXERCISES

- 1 Arma ad oppidum ā ducibus mittentur.
- 2 Gladiūs pilisque sē regere nōn possunt militēs.
- 3 Propter cibī inopiam militēs incolās ab insulā agēbant.
- 4 Is cōsul ab rēge vincētur et ex oppidō agētur.
- 5 Impedīmenta militum ā ducibus ad castra mittentur.
- 6 Hōrā proelī septimā ducēs cum legiōnibus oppidum
vincent.
- 7 Dīligentiā prīncipum militēs ē periculīs dūcentur.
- 8 Prīncipēs ad vīcōs pīla et gladiōs mittēbant.
- 9 Pilīs gladiīsque nostrīs oppidānōs crās vincēmus.
- 10 Incolae illiūs vīcī diū ā militibus Rōmānīs regentur.
- 11 Tū ab equitibus rēgīnae dūcēris, ego ā cōsule dūcar.
- 12 Ad vīcum pulchrum quī est lātō in campō Italiae dūcēmur.

291

- 1 Will he not lead to camp the soldiers whom he has at
Rome?
- 2 The general was leading his men to a beautiful Roman
town.
- 3 The baggage of our forces will not be sent from camp
today.
- 4 Shall we send the books to our friends who are at Athens?
- 5 The books were sent to him by his sister who is now at
home.
- 6 The brothers who have been at Corinth will soon be at
Athens.
- 7 They were conquered by that consul whom you saw today.
- 8 We shall send the money either today or tomorrow (*crās*).
- 9 Our soldiers cannot conquer the forces of that king.
- 10 The commander was leading his men with him from the
village.



ANAS, duck

Rēbus angustis animōsus atque fortis appārē (Horace) — *Face your troubles with a high courage.*

LESSON LVII

MARATHON I

292

VOCABULARY

civitas, civitatis, f., *state, citizenship*

cōcilium, cōciliī, n., *council*

dēcertō (1), *fight to a finish*

dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlectus, *select, choose*

imperātor, imperātōris, m., *commander, general*

instruō, instruere, instrūxī, instrūctus, *arrange*

liberī, liberōrum, m., *children*

ōrdō, ordinis, m., *rank, class*

quoque, adv., *also (never first)*

293

MARATHON I

In bellō secundō inter Graecōs et Persās, Darius, rēx Persārum, in Graeciam cōpiās magnās misit. Ille enim propter multās Athēniēnsium iniūrias suī commōtus erat. Primum Erētriam, parvam Graeciae civitātem, vicit; nam in incolās Erētriae quoque inflammātus erat. Ducēs Darī virōs illius civitātis



THE PLAIN OF MARATHON

cum uxōribus liberisque Sūsa¹ dēportāverunt. Sūsa, quod oppidum Darī superbum erat in Persiā longē ab Erētriā erant.

Deinde Persae in Atticam, quā in civitāte Athēnae erant, vērunt. In plāitiē (*plain*) Marathoniā Persae ōdinēs suōs instrūxerant et Athēniēsēs exspectābant. Ea enim loca equitibus Persārum campum aequum dedērunt.

In cōciliō ducum dēcertare ad (*near*) Marathōnem statūtum est (*it was decided*). Decem erant ducēs in castris Athēniēsium sed ex eō numerō Miltiades eius proelī dēlectus est imperātor.

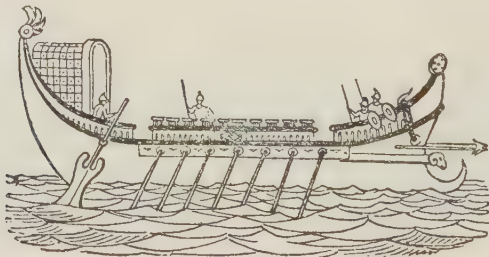
294

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

Athēnae, -ārum, f., *Athens*
 Athēniēsēs, Athēniēsium,
 m., *the Athenians*
 deinde, adv., *then, next*
 dēportō (1), *carry off, banish*
 Erētria, -ae, f., *Eretria*
 Graecus, -ī, m., *a Greek*
 inflammō (1), *arouse, inflame*

Marathon, Marathōnis, f.,
Marathon, a city in Greece
 Marathonius, -a, -um, of *Marathon*
 Miltiades, -is, m., *a Greek general*
 Persae, -ārum, m., *the Persians*
 Sūsa, -ōrum, n., *Susa, capital of Persia*

¹ *To Susa.* With verbs expressing motion, *ad* is omitted with *domus* (*home*) and with the names of towns and cities: *Puer domum venit, Rōmam properābō, Athēnās veniunt.* Sūsa is here accusative neuter plural.



NĀVIS LONGA, a war galley

Historia est testis temporum, lux vērītātis (Cicero) — *History is the witness of time, the light of truth.*

LESSON LVIII

THIRD CONJUGATION, PERFECT SYSTEM

295 Verb, *dūcō, lead*

Perfect stem, *dūx-*

PERFECT

ACTIVE

I led, have led, etc.

<i>dūxī</i>	<i>dūximus</i>
<i>dūxistī</i>	<i>dūxistis</i>
<i>dūxit</i>	<i>dūxērunt</i>

PASSIVE

I was led, have been led, etc.

<i>ductus</i> ¹	<i>sum</i>	<i>ductī</i> ¹	<i>sumus</i>
	<i>es</i>		<i>estis</i>
	<i>est</i>		<i>sunt</i>

PLUPERFECT

I had led, etc.

<i>dūxeram</i>	<i>dūxerāmus</i>
<i>dūxerās</i>	<i>dūxerātis</i>
<i>dūxerat</i>	<i>dūxerant</i>

I had been led, etc.

<i>ductus</i>	<i>eram</i>	<i>ductī</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
	<i>erās</i>		<i>erātis</i>
	<i>erat</i>		<i>erant</i>

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have led, etc.

<i>dūxerō</i>	<i>dūxerimus</i>
<i>dūxeris</i>	<i>dūxeritis</i>
<i>dūxerit</i>	<i>dūxerint</i>

I shall have been led, etc.

<i>ductus</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>ductī</i>	<i>erimus</i>
	<i>eris</i>		<i>eritis</i>
	<i>erit</i>		<i>erunt</i>

296 Like *dūcō*, conjugate *gerō*, *premō* and *scribō*.

297

VOCABULARY

<i>cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī,</i>	<i>pedes, peditis, m., foot soldier</i>
<i>cognitus, learn, recognize</i>	<i>premō, premere, pressī, pres-</i>
<i>epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle</i>	<i>sus, press, oppress</i>
<i>gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus,</i>	<i>quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī,</i>
<i>carry on, accomplish</i>	<i>quaesitus, seek, inquire</i>
<i>opprimō, opprimere, oppressī,</i>	<i>scribō, scribere, scripsī, scrip-</i>
<i>oppressus, hard press, crush</i>	<i>tus, write</i>

¹ See 240.

298 Write in parallel columns, with translations, synopses of the following throughout the six tenses of the indicative active and passive:

- 1 **dūcō**, in the first person singular;
- 2 **gerō**, in the third person plural;
- 3 **quaerō**, in the first person plural.

299

EXERCISES

1 Num Athēnās¹ missī sunt peditēs dē quōrum factis Corinthī cognōveram? 2 Quī rēx comitēs nostrōs dē quōrum periculō quaesivistī oppresserat? 3 Cūr neque ā comitibus neque ā lēgātō dē rēgis factō quaesivit cōsul? 4 Bella magna ab imperātōre longē ab Italiā gesta erant. 5 Nōs quī Athēnīs fuimus ā rēge nōn oppressi sumus. 6 Nostrī comitēs ex bellī periculīs domum¹ missī sunt. 7 Lēgātus illius principis peditēs equitēsque Athēnās¹ dūxerit. 8 Quōrum sunt filiī quī in pericula bellī ducti sunt? 9 Quod sociōrum oppidum ab illō rēge oppressum erat? 10 Ea epistula quam Corinthum¹ ad tē mīsī domi ā mē scripta erat.

300 1 The letters have been written. 2 Was this letter written by you? 3 By whom was that war carried on? 4 You have not been hard pressed by the consul. 5 Our soldiers will have been led into camp. 6 The consul will be at Rome; we shall remain at Athens. 7 We had not been hard pressed by the general. 8 The letters which I had with me had been sent by you. 9 We had been sent away from the danger. 10 You had been led into many dangers.

¹ See note on *Sūsa* (293).



CANIS, dog

Nōn paucis malle ā sapientibus esse probātum (Lucilius) — *Better the praise of a few wise men than of many fools.*

LESSON LIX

USE OF THE ENGLISH DICTIONARY

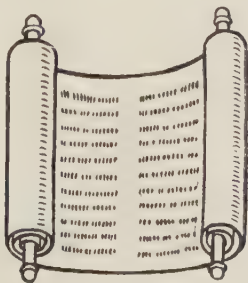
301 Every member of the class should own a good abridged English dictionary. It is indispensable that the dictionary selected should be one that shows the language-origin of English words that are derived from other languages. Such books are Webster's Secondary School Dictionary, Worcester's Comprehensive School Dictionary, and the Desk Standard Dictionary.

Pupils may use the English dictionary in adding to their store of derivatives:

- (1) by looking for words derived from the simple stems of the verb that is being studied; and
- (2) by looking in alphabetic sequence for words derived from the Latin by combination of a prefix with the verb stem or stems.

302 For the notebook:

By the addition of Type III, as presented on the following page, a suitable and complete form for a notebook exercise in derivation is obtained.



A SCROLL OF MANUSCRIPT
125

303 Complete the exercise in Type I, as required, and copy in notebook the entire exercise, including Types I, II, and III.

Verb, **dūcō**, *I lead*

dūcō, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**

TYPE I (Without definitions). See § 166

duct, ductile, ductility

and

20 additional words derived from **dūcō**

304

TYPE II (With definitions)

English Word	Latin Root or Base	Latin Prefix	Definition
adduce	dūc-	ad	<i>lead to (a conclusion), bring forward</i>
conduce	dūc-	cum (con)	<i>lead together, assist</i>
deduce	dūc-	dē	<i>lead down, conclude</i>
educe	dūc-	ē	<i>lead out, derive</i>
induce	dūc-	in	<i>lead into, persuade</i>
produce	dūc-	prō	<i>lead forth, exhibit</i>
reduce	dūc-	re	<i>lead back, lower in rank</i>
conduct	duct-	cum (con)	<i>lead together, escort</i>
conductor	duct-	cum (con)	<i>one who conducts, leads</i>
production	duct-	prō	<i>act of producing; that which is produced</i>

305 By using **mitt-** and **miss-** of **mitto**, **mitt(ere)**, **mīsī**, **miss(us)**, *send*, make a table similar to Type II. **Cum** will be written **com**, the suffix **-tion** will be **-sion**. In this exercise, omit the prefix **dē** and the suffix **-tor**. Add the prefixes **di(s)** and **per**.

306

TYPE III (With examples of use)

English Word	Latin Stem or Base	Latin Prefix	Use in English Sentence
duct	duct-		<i>This duct conveys the water</i>
inductive	duct-	in	<i>I teach by the inductive method</i>
inductively	duct-	in	<i>Solve the problem inductively</i>
induction	duct-	in	<i>He has an induction coil</i>
producer	dūc-	prō	<i>The farmer is a producer</i>
productivity	duct-	prō	<i>That field has high productivity</i>
reducible	dūc-	re	<i>That fraction is reducible</i>

Mēns sāna in corpore sãnō (Juvenal) — *A sound mind in a sound body.*

LESSON LX

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (*Continued*)

307

NEUTER NOUNS

tempus, <i>time</i> base, tempor-	genus, <i>race, kind</i> base, gener-	CASE ENDINGS
tempus	genus	-
temporis	generis	-is
temporī	generī	-ī
tempus	genus	-
tempore	genere	-e
tempora	genera	-a
temporum	generum	-um
temporibus	generibus	-ibus
tempora	genera	-a
temporibus	generibus	-ibus

As in all other neuter nouns, the nominative and the accusative plurals end in **-a**. The nominative and accusative singulars are alike.

308

VOCABULARY

corpus, corporis, n., <i>body</i>	obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus, <i>obtain, hold</i>
doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, <i>suffer, grieve</i>	sānus, -a, -um, <i>sound, well</i>
genus, generis, n., <i>race, descent, kind, class</i>	tempus, temporis, n., <i>time</i>
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus, <i>pick, select, read</i>	vulnus, vulneris, n., <i>wound</i>

309 Decline together: id tempus, corpus sānum, hoc genus, vulnus miserum.



Sūs, *pig*

EXERCISES

310 1 Spatium temporis longum is manēbit. 2 Eō tempore rēgem vīdit. 3 Ex illis generibus sunt rēgēs. 4 Vulnēra misera habent. 5 Dē corpore sānō multa¹ lēgit. 6 Nostrum genus nōn laudāmus. 7 Nostris temporibus ille rēxit. 8 Corpora sāna laudābimus. 9 Discipulī huius lūdī sāna corpora habent. 10 Meus pater est ab clārō hominū genere. 11 Eō tempore nostrī gladii prō patriā pugnābant. 12 Puerī illōrum temporū in lūdō hōrās multās manēbant. 13 Nōn genere clārō sed labōre magnō victōriam obtinēbimus.

311 1 In these times of war we do not fear. 2 Good classes of men do not always rule the state. 3 The soldier suffers from wretched wounds on the body. 4 The soldiers are suffering from wounds on their bodies. 5 The boy had a good spirit in a sound body. 6 Many leaders have come from that race of men. 7 We could not run on account of wretched wounds. 8 During those times of peace they did not suffer. 9 Do the pupils of your school have sound bodies? 10 The faithful soldier will suffer on account of many wounds.

312 Give English words associated by derivation with each of the following, as indicated:

with **tempus**, 4 words

with **genus**, 3 words

with **corpus**, 4 words

with **rēx**, 2 words

with **vulnus**, 2 words

with **puer**, 2 words

¹ Neuter acc. plur., *many things, much*.



A GLADIATOR

Dum anima est, spēs est (Cicero) — *While there is life, there is hope.*

LESSON LXI

MARATHON II

313

VOCABULARY

circiter, adv., *about, nearly*
dīmīttō, dīmīttēre, dīmīsī, dī-
missus, *send away, despatch*
numerus, -ī, m., *number*

perveniō, pervenīre, pervēni,
perventūrus, *come through,*
arrive

prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmisī,
prōmissus, *promise*
quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj.,
forty

reveniō, revenīre, revēni, re-
ventūrus, *return*

tandem, adv., *finally, at last*
trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty*



THE ACROPOLIS AT ATHENS

314

MARATHON II

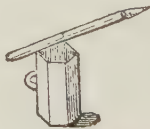
Persae decem milia equitum et centum milia peditum habebant. Athēniēnsēs autem decem milia peditum habebant. Cōpia parvae etiam Plataeēnsium ab Athēniēnsibus expectatae erant et iam veniebant. Sparta quoque auxilium prōmiserat. Itaque cursor vēlōx, Phīdippus nōmine (*by name*), Spartam, oppidum Lacōniae, auxiliī causā¹ dīmissus est. Ille ē plānitiē (*plain*) Marathonīā, circiter centum quadrāgintā milia passuum, sex et trīgintā hōris Spartam cucurrit. Sparta tandem mīsit auxilium quod promissum erat, sed mīlitēs ex eō oppidō post proelium Athēnās pervēnerunt, itaque nōn in proeliō erant. Phīdippus autem, cursor vēlōx, celeriter revēnit et in proeliō cum Persis in plānitiē Marathonīā bene pugnāvit.

315

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

centum milia, <i>one hundred thousand(s)</i>	cursor vēlōx, <i>a swift runner</i>
centum quadrāgintā milia passuum, <i>one hundred and forty miles (thousands of paces)</i>	decem milia equitum, <i>ten thousands (of) cavalry</i>
currō, currere, cucurri, cursurus, <i>run</i>	Lacōnia, -ae, f., <i>a district of Greece</i>
	Plataeēnsēs, Plataeēnsium, <i>inhabitants of Plataeae</i>
	Sparta, -ae, f., <i>a city of Greece</i>

¹ For the sake of help, to get help; bellī causā, for the sake of war; amicitiae causā, for friendship's sake. In this use causā (an abl. of cause) always follows the genitive.



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

LESSON LXII

INFINITIVES AS IN ENGLISH

316

PRESENT INFINITIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

First conjugation,	vocāre , <i>to call</i>	vocārī , <i>to be called</i>
Second conjugation,	monēre , <i>to advise</i>	monērī , <i>to be advised</i>
Third conjugation,	dūcere , <i>to lead</i>	dūcī , <i>to be led</i>
Fourth conjugation,	audīre , <i>to hear</i>	audīrī , <i>to be heard</i>

The present infinitive of the verb **sum** is **esse**, *to be*.

317

VOCABULARY

ācriter , adv., <i>sharply, fiercely,</i> <i>keenly</i>	fortiter , adv., <i>bravely</i>
dēfendō , dēfendere , dēfendī , dēfēnsus , <i>defend</i>	pūniō , pūnīre , pūnīvī , pūnītus , <i>punish</i>

318

1 **Filius mātrem dēfendere dēbet, dēfendere dēbuit.**

2 *A son ought to defend his mother, ought to have defended.*

3 **Māter ā filiō dēfendī dēbet, dēfendī dēbuit.**

4 *A mother ought to be defended by her son, ought to have been defended.*

5 **Cōsul militēs (acc.) dominam dēfendere iussit.**

6 *The consul ordered the soldiers to defend the lady.*

7 **Cōsul dominam ā militibus dēfendī iussit.**

8 *The consul ordered the lady to be defended by the soldiers.*

319 Rule. *An infinitive is required with dēbeō, iubeō, and certain other Latin verbs, just as with the corresponding English verbs.*

320 Rule. *A noun or pronoun used as the subject of an infinitive must be in the accusative case.*

Note. **Dēbeō** is not defective like the English *ought*: **Librum legere dēbēs**, *you ought to read the book*; **Librum legere dēbuistī**, *you ought to have read the book (it was your duty to read)*; **Librum legere dēbēbis**, *it will be your duty to read the book*.

321

EXERCISES

1 Domum tēcum celeriter currere dēbeō. 2 Socii statim dē bellō audire dēbent. 3 Propter periculum sorōrem suam domum venire iubēbit. 4 Tū illōs librōs domī legere dēbēs. 5 Uxor virum filiōs ācriter pūnīre iusserat. 6 Uxor mei amīci filiōs ad sē dūci iubēbat. 7 Illa puerōs ācriter castigārī iubēbit. 8 Dux lēgātōs trāns campum venire iusserat. 9 Cōnsul militēs castra celeriter mūnīre iubet. 10 Nōnne ille oppidum ā militibus mūnīrī iubēbit? 11 Cōnsulēs dē periculō bellī populum admonēre dēbent. 12 Populus dē periculīs bellōrum ā cōsulibus admonērī dēbuit. 13 Militēs bonī ā ducibus superbīs pūnīrī nōn dēbuērunt. 14 Puellae mātresque ā prīncipe nostrō dēfendī dēbent. 15 Nōnne mātres cum liberis ā cōnsule domum mittī dēbuērunt?

322 1 He ordered his men to defend the camp bravely. 2 Boys, you ought to have sound bodies. 3 My father had ordered me not to come to Corinth. 4 He ordered you to come across the field to him. 5 You ought to come quickly by this beautiful road. 6 My sister will order me to come home quickly. 7 The leader had ordered his men bravely to defend the consul. 8 In times of great danger you ought not to stay at home. 9 You will not order the soldier to be sent home from the war. 10 The reputation of friends ought to be defended by good men.



OSTRICH AND PEACOCK ON ROMAN COINS

Ubi libertās, ibi patria (Juvenal) — *Where freedom is, there shall my country be.*

LESSON LXIII

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (*Continued*)

323

SINGULAR

virtūs, f., <i>virtue</i>	aestās, f., <i>summer</i>	hiems, f., <i>winter</i>
base, virtūt-	base, aestāt-	base, hiem-
virtūs	aestās	hiems
virtūtis	aestātis	hiemis
virtūti	aestāti	hiemi
virtūtem	aestātem	hiemem
virtūte	aestāte	hieme

PLURAL

virtūtēs	aestātēs	hiemēs
virtūtum	aestātum	hiemum
virtūtibus	aestātibus	hiemibus
virtūtēs	aestātēs	hiemēs
virtūtibus	aestātibus	hiemibus

324 Decline together: libertās magna, illa virtūs, hiems longa, ea aestās.

325

VOCABULARY

aestās, aestātis, f., <i>summer</i>	libertās, libertātis, f., <i>freedom, liberty</i>
aetās, aetātis, f., <i>age, period of life</i>	longinquus, -a, -um, <i>distant</i>
celeritās, celeritātis, f., <i>speed, swiftness</i>	pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui, <i>extend</i>
cupiditās, cupiditātis, f., <i>greed, desire</i>	quantus, -a, -um, <i>how great?</i>
flōs, flōris, m., <i>flower, prime</i>	quod, conj., <i>because</i>
Gallia, -ae, f., <i>Gaul</i>	relinquō, relinquere, reliqui, relictus, <i>leave, abandon</i>
hiems, hiemis, f., <i>winter</i>	virtūs, virtūtis, f., <i>virtue, valor</i>

326

EXERCISES

1 Belli tempore libertas populi fuit in periculo. 2 Libertas populi virtute militum defensa est. 3 Aestate milites Romani longe a patria bella gerabant. 4 Nostri milites unam aestatem hiememque in Gallia bellum gesserunt. 5 Principum cupiditate quanta bella acriter gesta sunt! 6 Populi Romani imperium ad longinquas pertinebat terras. 7 Milites, qui imperium Romanum defendebant, erant in aetatis flore. 8 Celeritatem ducis, quod ille defendit nos, laudamus. 9 Virtute gladiisque militum oppidum fortiter defensum erat. 10 Magna est illius militis virtus a quo defensi sumus. 11 Ducis virtutem, quod suos in periculo non reliquit, laudamus. 12 Equitum virtute non relictum est civitas in periculo. 13 Quod in Gallia hiems est longa, Romae relinquemus liberos.

327 1 Because we love liberty, we shall bravely defend our country. 2 I cannot leave the children with you on account of their age. 3 That state was keenly defended by the swords of our soldiers. 4 Will you stay with us at Rome (during) this summer? 5 During the winter soldiers remained in a safe camp. 6 How many comrades abandoned their duties because of greed? 7 Did not the Roman power extend into Gaul? 8 In Gaul summer is a beautiful time of the year. 9 In winter we left Gaul and swiftly hastened to Rome. 10 This wide road by which they came extends into Italy. 11 During the long winter, you can read many books. 12 Roman soldiers fought bravely because they were in the prime of life (of age).



OVIS, sheep

LESSON LXIV

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (*Continued*)

328

NEUTER NOUNS

			CASE ENDINGS
iter, <i>journey</i>	caput, <i>head</i>	flūmen, <i>river</i>	
base, itiner-	base, capit-	base, flūmin-	
iter	caput	flūmen	—
itineris	capitis	flūminis	-is
itinerī	capitī	flūminī	-ī
iter	caput	flūmen	—
itinere	capite	flūmine	-e
itinera	capita	flūmina	-a
itinerum	capitum	flūminum	-um
itineribus	capitibus	flūminibus	-ibus
itinera	capita	flūmina	-a
itineribus	capitibus	flūminibus	-ibus

329 Decline together: iter longum, flūmen altum, caput parvum.

330

VOCABULARY

agmen, agminis, n., <i>marching column</i> (of an army)	iter, itineris, n., <i>journey, march</i>
altitūdō, altitūdinis, f., <i>height, depth</i>	nōmen, nōminis, n., <i>name</i>
caput, capitis, n., <i>head</i>	primō, adv., <i>at first</i>
flūmen, flūminis, n., <i>river</i>	revocō (ī), <i>call back</i>
	trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, <i>lead across</i>

331 Write English words associated by derivation with Latin words, as follows:

- 1 (a) with frāter, pater, and tempus, 3 words each;
- (b) with mīles, 4 words;
- (c) with princeps, gladius, iter, caput, and vulnus, 2 words each.

2 Define each of the derivatives that you have written for frāter and pater.

332

EXERCISES

- 1 Longō itinere, in flūmine, iter pulchrum, cum hōc agmine.
 2 Caput parvum, ex agminibus, nōmine bonō, agminis longī.
 3 Itinerum longōrum, ad flūmen, ea itinera, trāns flūmen.
 4 Nōmina bona, tempore nostrō, in hīs itineribus, illō agmine.
 5 Agmina longa, in flūminibus, capite magnō, per flūmina alta.

333 a 1 In slow columns; across beautiful rivers. 2 On small heads; by a long march; at first. 3 On beautiful journeys; with many virtues. 4 Through long rivers; by a good name. 5 Out of the column; into a deep river.

333 b After you have translated **332** and **333 a**, change both the Latin and the English nouns, with modifying adjectives, from singular to plural, or from plural to singular, and translate.

334 1 Ducēs legiōnēs quīnque ad flūmen mox mittent. 2 Illud flūmen ad quod vēnerint est altum et lātum. 3 In Italiā pauca sunt flūmina eius altitūdinis. 4 Prīmō milītēs trāns flūmen properāre nōn poterunt. 5 Sed altitūdine flūminis nōn diū prohibēbuntur. 6 Itaque ducēs trāns flūmen milītēs mox trādūcent. 7 Hī milītēs ācritēr pugnābunt, sed vulneribus multīs dolēbunt. 8 Ducēs tandem agmina ē proeliō ad castra revocābunt.

335 After you have made correct English renderings of the foregoing sentences, translate your English into Latin and compare with the originals.



NĀVIS ONERĀRIA, merchant ship

LESSON LXV

VOCABULARY REVIEW

336

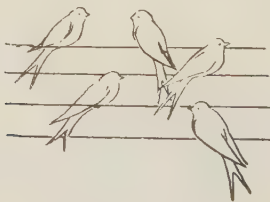
TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 6

1 ācriter	26 iter
2 aestās	27 legō
3 aetās	28 liberī
4 agmen	29 libertās
5 campus	30 longinquus
6 caput	31 mīles
7 celeritās	32 nōmen
8 celeriter	33 numerus
9 circiter	34 obtineō
10 cīvītās	35 ōrdō
11 cognōscō	36 praetereā
12 comes	37 premō
13 concilium	38 prīnceps
14 corpus	39 quadrāgintā
15 cupiditās	40 quaerō
16 dēfendō	41 quot
17 dēligō	42 relinquō
18 epistula	43 sānus
19 eques	44 scribō
20 flūmen	45 tandem
21 fortiter	46 tempus
22 genus	47 trigintā
23 gerō	48 uxor
24 gladius	49 virtūs
25 hiems	50 vulnus



PASSER, *sparrow*

337	1	sharply, fiercely	26	journey, march
	2	summer	27	read, choose, select
	3	age	28	children
	4	marching column	29	freedom, liberty
	5	field, plain	30	distant
	6	head	31	soldier
	7	speed	32	name
	8	swiftly, quickly	33	number
	9	about, nearly	34	obtain, hold
10		state, citizenship	35	rank, class
11		learn, recognize	36	moreover, besides
12		comrade, companion	37	press, oppress
13		council, meeting	38	leader
14		body	39	forty
15		greed, desire	40	seek, inquire
16		defend	41	how many?
17		select, choose	42	leave, abandon
18		letter, epistle	43	sound, well
19		horseman; (<i>plur.</i>), cavalry	44	write
20		river	45	finally, at last
21		bravely	46	time
22		race	47	thirty
23		carry on, accomplish	48	wife
24		sword	49	virtue, valor
25		winter	50	wound



HIRUNDINĒS, swallows

¶ *Et propter vitam vivendī perdere causās (Juvenal) — And for the sake of mere existence, to lose all that makes life worth living.*

LESSON LXVI

INDIRECT STATEMENTS — ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE

338

ENGLISH

DIRECT STATEMENT

INDIRECT STATEMENT

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1 <i>The king is good.</i> | 1 <i>He believes that the king is good.</i> |
| 2 <i>The soldier is fighting.</i> | 2 <i>They say that the soldier is fighting.</i> |
| 3 <i>The consul comes.</i> | 3 <i>He knows that the consul is coming.</i> |
| 4 <i>The man is being sent.</i> | 4 <i>They thought that the man was being sent.</i> |

339

LATIN

DIRECT STATEMENT

INDIRECT STATEMENT

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 <i>Rēx est bonus.</i> | 1 <i>Crēdit rēgem esse bonum.</i> |
| 2 <i>Miles pugnat.</i> | 2 <i>Dicunt militem pugnāre.</i> |
| 3 <i>Cōsul venit.</i> | 3 <i>Scit cōsulem venīre.</i> |
| 4 <i>Vir mittitur.</i> | 4 <i>Putābant virum mittī.</i> |

340

VOCABULARY

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēdi-	intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī,
tus, <i>believe</i>	intellēctus, <i>understand</i>
dīcō, dīcere, dixī, dictus, <i>say,</i>	sciō, scīre, scīvī (scīi), scītus,
<i>speak</i>	<i>know</i>

341 Rule: *An independent (declarative) statement used as the direct object of a verb of saying, telling, hoping, knowing, thinking, believing or perceiving, has its verb in the infinitive with subject accusative.*

342 In English we may say: (1) I believe that he is famous, or, (2) I believe him to be famous.

Sentence (1) illustrates the more common English way.

Sentence (2) illustrates (in English) the *only* correct way of expressing the thought in Latin: **Crēdō eum esse clārum.**

343

EXERCISES

1 Dīcit puerōs eius oppidī esse malōs. 2 Dīxērunt imperātōrem dominum Italiae esse. 3 Scit cōsulem incolās multōs liberāre. 4 Sciō incolās multōs ā cōsule liberārī. 5 Imperātor crēdebāt sociōs esse fidōs. 6 Sciunt illum rēgem intrā mūrōs manēre. 7 Oppidānī crēdunt sociōs castra expugnāre. 8 Oppidānī crēdunt castra ā sociīs expugnārī. 9 Intellegimus tē quattuor sorōrēs habēre. 10 Intellēxit lēgātum ad vīcum cōpiās mittere. 11 Intellēxit cōpiās ad vīcum ā lēgātō mittī. 12 Lēgātus ipse dixit victōriam esse magnam. 13 Hic respondit sē trāns flūmen legiōnēs trādūcere. 14 Illī responderant legiōnēs trāns flūmen ā sē trādūcī.

344 1 They know that the walls of the camp are high. 2 He said that he (himself) was fortifying the camp. 3 He said that the camp was being fortified by himself. 4 They announce that the messenger is coming now. 5 Did you say that the rivers were long and deep? 6 Why do you say that the village is not beautiful? 7 He believes that the horsemen are overcoming their fear. 8 We believe that good soldiers do not fear danger. 9 We believe that danger is not feared by good soldiers. 10 Who will believe that the sons of this man are bad? 11 We know that the general is leading the soldiers. 12 We knew that the soldiers were being led by the general. 13 They will understand that I am not sending the letter.



TIGRIS, tiger

Rēgia, crēde mihi, rēs est succurrere lapsis (Ovid) — *Believe me, it is a kingly act to lift up the fallen.*

LESSON LXVII

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (*Continued*)

345 The stem of each third declension noun studied so far ends in a consonant: **c, l, n, t**, etc.

In this lesson and in the one that follows, the stems of the nouns presented for study end in the vowel **i**, and are therefore called **i-stems**. The base is found by dropping the **-is** of the genitive singular. The genitive plural ends in **-ium**.

346 **I-STEMS, MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS**

cīvis , m. and f., <i>citizen</i>	urbs , f., <i>city</i>	CASE
base, cīv-	base, urb-	ENDINGS
stem, cīvi-	stem, urbi-	

SINGULAR

cīvis	urbs	-s
cīvis	urbis	-is
cīvī	urbī	-ī
cīvem	urbem	-em
cīve	urbe	-e

PLURAL

cīvēs	urbēs	-ēs
cīvium	urbium	-ium
cīvibus	urbibus	-ibus
cīvis, -ēs	urbis, -ēs	-is, -ēs,
cīvibus	urbibus	-ibus

347

VOCABULARY

circum , prep. with acc., <i>around</i>	firmus , -a, -um, <i>strong</i>
cīvis , cīvis , m. and f., <i>citizen</i>	hostis , hostis , m. and f., <i>enemy</i>
dīvidō , dīvidere , dīvīsī , dī- vīsus , <i>divide, separate</i>	mōns , montis , m., <i>mountain</i>
finis , finis , m., <i>end, limit</i> ;	nāvis , nāvis , f., <i>ship</i>
plur., <i>territory, boundaries</i>	pars , partis , f., <i>part, side</i>
	urbs , urbis , f., <i>city</i>

348 Rule. *Masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension ending in -is that have the same number of syllables in the nominative and the genitive singular (cīvis), nouns of one syllable ending in -s preceded by a consonant (urbs), and a few others, are "i-stems."*

349

EXERCISES

1 In urbe parvā multōs annōs habitāvimus. 2 Scīsne nōs in urbe parvā cum amīcīs habitāre? 3 Circum illam urbem sunt montēs altī. 4 Vidēmus circum illam urbem esse montīs altōs. 5 Nostrī cīvēs sunt hominēs bonī. 6 Crēdimus cīvīs nostrōs esse hominēs bonōs. 7 Urbs parva ā cīvibus bonīs amātur. 8 Respondit urbem parvam ā cīvibus amārī. 9 Urbs in partīs duās (*two*) flūmine dīviditur. 10 Dixit urbem in partīs duās flūmine dīvidī. 11 Paucae urbēs montibus altīs continentur. 12 Quis nōn scit paucās urbīs montibus altīs continērī? 13 Urbs nostra vāllīs altīs nōn dēfenditur. 14 Vidēs urbem nostram vāllīs altīs nōn dēfendī. 15 Urbs virtūte cīvium optimē (*best*) mūnītur. 16 Crēdimus urbem virtūte cīvium optimē mūnīrī.

350 1 He praises the city because of the abundance of good water. 2 He says that the city has an abundance of good water. 3 The boundaries of the city are well defended. 4 We think that the boundaries of the city are well defended. 5 The city is not guarded by high ramparts. 6 We know that the city is not guarded by high ramparts. 7 It is defended by the true courage of its citizens. 8 We believe that it is defended by the true courage of its citizens.



A ROMAN PLOWMAN

Dum loquimur fūgerit invida Aetās (Horace) — *While we talk, envious time has fled.*

LESSON LXVIII

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS (*Continued*) — *I-STEMS*, NEUTER NOUNS

351

mare, n., *sea*
base, **mar-**
stem, **mari-**

SINGULAR	PLURAL	CASE ENDINGS	
mare	maria	-e	-ia
maris	marium ¹	-is	-ium
marī	maribus	-ī	-ibus
mare	maria	-e	-ia
marī	maribus	-i	-ibus

Mille, *a thousand*, as a noun, in the singular, is used only in the nominative and accusative and is followed by the genitive (**mille hominum**); as an adjective, in the singular, **mille** has the same form in all cases (**mille hominēs**, **mille hominibus**). For declension, see 633.

Milia, *thousands*, a noun only, is declined like the plural of **mare**, and is followed by a genitive (**multa milia hominum**).

352

VOCABULARY

expōnō , expōnere , expōsui , ex-	mare , maris , n., <i>sea</i>
positus , <i>set forth, explain;</i>	mille , sing. as indecl. adj. and
with ex nāve , <i>put ashore, land</i>	noun, <i>thousand</i> ; milia , plur.
gēns , gentis , f., <i>tribe, nation</i>	as noun, <i>thousands</i>
pōns , pontis , m., <i>bridge</i>	

353 Like **urbs**, decline **gēns**, **mōns** and **pōns**.

Decline together: **gēns libera**, **tūtus pōns**, **mare altum**.

¹ Lacking.



PISCIS, *fish*

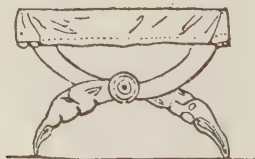
354

EXERCISES

1 Militēs Rōmānī multās gentīs longē ā Rōmā vicērunt
 2 Insulae quae longē in marī sunt dēfendī nōn possunt. 3 In
 urbibus quae sunt prope mare hominēs diū habitāvērunt.
 4 Principēs hārum gentium trāns mare nāvīs mittēbant.
 5 Nostri mille peditēs in hostīs Rōmam dūcent. 6 Darius
 decem milia equitum ex nāvibus exposuit. 7 Militēs sub
 montibus castra celeriter pōnere iussit. 8 Imperātor putat
 pontem altum nōn esse tūtum. 9 Eīs pontibus trāns flūmen
 sex milia militum trādūxit. 10 Hae gentēs marī altō multīs
 in locīs continentur. 11 Quīnque milia hominum illōs pontīs
 dēfendere possunt. 12 Maria, quae Italiam continent, tūta
 putantur.

355 1 Great cities are often near deep seas. 2 They say
 that many tribes dwell in those mountains. 3 The general
 knows that the bridge is being defended by us. 4 He had led
 ten thousand men against a hundred thousand of the enemy.
 5 A hundred islands can be seen in that beautiful sea. 6 Our
 messengers reported that the high bridges were safe. 7 We
 saw many thousands of soldiers in the camp. 8 With a thou-
 sand soldiers they will hold the bridge. 9 With ten thousand
 soldiers they had occupied that mountain.

356 Give English derivatives from each of the following
 Latin words, as indicated: from **mare**, 4 words; from **mille**,
 3 words; from **civis**, 5 words.



A ROMAN CHAIR

LESSON LXIX

PREPOSITIONS — VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS — LATIN PREFIXES USED IN ENGLISH

357 In Latin a compound verb is often formed by combining a simple verb with a prefix. The prefixes used in such compounds are usually prepositions.

It is important in your study of Latin to note the influence of prefixes in modifying or in changing the meaning of the simple verb. The same influence will be observed in derived English words of corresponding formation.

358 Memorize the following table and put it in your notebook:

ALPHABETIC LIST OF COMMON LATIN PREFIXES

ā, ab (abs)	<i>from, away from</i>
ad (af, ag, al, ap, ar, as, at)	<i>to, toward, near</i>
circum	<i>around</i>
con (co, col, com, cum, cor)	<i>with, together</i>
dē	<i>down from, away</i>
dis, dī	<i>apart</i>
ē, ex (ef)	<i>out of, from</i>
in (il, im, ir)	<i>in, into, on, against</i>
inter	<i>among, between</i>
ob (oc, of, op)	<i>against, before</i>
per	<i>through, thoroughly</i>
post	<i>after</i>
prae (pre)	<i>before</i>
prō (prod)	<i>before, forward, for</i>
re (red)	<i>again, back</i>
sub (suc, suf, sum, sup, sus)	<i>under, at the foot of</i>
super	<i>above</i>
trāns (trā)	<i>across, beyond, over</i>

359 Most of the simple verbs, and many of the compounds given below ought to be familiar, because of their use in preceding lessons. From your knowledge of the meaning of each simple verb, and of the prefix, give the meaning of the compound. Verify your definition by referring to the vocabulary at the end of the book. You will notice that the final consonant of the prefix often is changed to agree with the initial consonant of the simple verb. Sometimes it is dropped altogether.

360

1 Ab (ā), <i>away</i>	com-moveō	ē-labōrō
ab-dūcō	com-parō	ē-vocō
ab-sum	col-labōrō	
ā-mittō	5 Dē, <i>down from,</i>	8 In (im), <i>in, into,</i>
ā-moveō	<i>away from</i>	<i>upon, against</i>
	dē-ligō	in-dūcō
2 Ad, <i>to, toward</i>	dē-pōnō	in-scribō
ad-mittō	dē-sum	in-sum
ad-moveō	dē-veniō	in-veniō
ad-veniō	dē-vincō	im-mittō
ap-parō		im-pediō
ap-pellō (3)	6 Dis (dī), <i>apart</i>	im-pōnō
	dis-pellō	
3 Circum, <i>around</i>	dis-pōnō	9 Inter, <i>between</i>
circum-dūcō	dī-mittō	inter-pōnō
circum-scribō	dī-moveō	inter-rogō
circum-veniō		inter-veniō
	7 Ex (ē), <i>out</i>	
4 Con (com, col, etc.), <i>together</i>	ex-pellō	10 Ob (op), <i>against</i>
con-iungō	ex-pōnō	ob-dūcō
con-vocō	ex-spectō	ob-sum
	ex-spīrō	ob-veniō

op-pōnō	prae-dūcō	16 Sub (sum, sup, etc.), <i>under</i>
op-pugnō	prae-mittō	sub-scribō
11 Per, <i>through,</i> <i>thoroughly</i>	prae-moneō	sub-sum
per-agō	prae-pōnō	sub-veniō
per-ambulō	prae-sum	sum-mittō
per-dūcō	14 Prō, <i>forward, for</i>	sup-pōnō
per-legō	prō-dūcō	sus-tineō
per-maneō	prō-pugnō	17 Super, <i>above, over</i>
per-moveō	prō-sum	super-pōnō
per-scribō	prō-vidēō	super-sum
12 Post, <i>after</i>	15 Re (red), <i>insepa-</i> <i>rable; prefix,</i>	18 Trāns (trā), <i>across</i>
post-habēō	<i>back</i>	trāns-mittō
post-scribō	re-dūcō	trāns-scribō
13 Prae, <i>ahead, at</i> <i>the head</i>	re-mittō	trā-dūcō
	re-veniō	
	red-igō (agō)	



Photograph by Reynolds

BAIÆ

Favorite resort of the Romans near modern Naples, noted for its warm baths and beautiful scenery,

LESSON LXX

MARATHON III

361

VOCABULARY

medius, -a, -um, *middle, center* **vīgintī,** indecl. num. adj.,
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *twenty*
drive, defeat

362

MARATHON III

Vēnerat tandem tempus quod fortūnam et Athēnārum et libe-
 rae Graeciae dēcrētūrum (*about to decide*) erat. Nam Miltiades
 sub montibus in plānitīē Marathoniā āciem (*battle line*) suam
 instrūxerat. A Persīs quoque ōrdinēs peditum equitumque
 instrūctī erant. Mox proelium commissum est. Miltiades
 statim suōs milītēs in mediam hostium āciem magnā cum
 audāciā mīsīt. Persae autem impetum Athēniēnsium nōn diū
 sustinēre poterant. Itaque peditēs Miltiadis mediam āciem
 Persārum pepulērunt et magnās hostium cōpiās in fugam dedē-
 runt. Virtūte Miltiadis et militem Graecia ex potestāte barba-
 rōrum servāta est.

Miltiades victōriae nūntium, Phīdippum, quī Spartam auxili
 causā nūper missus erat, Athēnās statim mīsīt. Hic ex plānitīē
 Marathoniā hōrīs perpaucīs Athēnās cucurrit. Athēnae ipsae
 ā Marathōne aberant circiter vīgintī milia passuum. Per por-
 tam Athēnārum, per viās in forum cucurrit Phīdippus dēfessus.
 Itinere longō confectus (*although exhausted*) tamen dixit:
 "Victōria est nostra." Quibus cum verbīs vītā exspirāvit.

Sic prō patriā mortuus est cursor vėlōx Phīdippus.

363

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

audācia, -ae, f., <i>boldness, daring</i>	nūper, adv., <i>recently, lately</i>
dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī,	perpaucī, -ae, -a, <i>very few</i>
dēcrētus, <i>determine, decide</i>	potestās, potestātis, f., <i>power</i>
dēfessus, -a, -um, <i>weary</i>	proelium committere, <i>to begin</i>
mortuus est, <i>died</i>	<i>battle</i>

LESSON LXXI

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

364

ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

ācer, sharp, keen base, *ācr-*; stem, *ācrī-*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrīs, -ēs</i>	<i>ācrīs, -ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

What is the only difference between the masculine and the feminine?

365

ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

omnis, all base, *omn-*; stem, *omni-*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
<i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnīs, -ēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

Most adjectives of the third declension have stems ending in *-i*. This is true of adjectives that have three different endings in the nominative singular (*ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*) and of adjectives that have two endings (*omnis*, *omne*), except comparatives (383). The masculine and feminine genders of adjectives of two endings are declined like *civis*, except that they regularly have *i* in the ablative singular. The neuter is declined exactly like *mare*. In what forms does the declension of the masculine of *ācer* differ from the declension of *civis*?

366 Decline *celer*. How does it differ in declension from *ācer*? Like *omnis*, decline *fortis*; *brevis*; *facilis*.

367

VOCABULARY

<i>acer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen</i>	<i>facilis, facile, easy</i>
<i>brevis, breve, short</i>	<i>fortis, forte, brave</i>
<i>celer, celeris, celere, swift</i>	<i>lectiō, -ōnis, f., lesson</i>
<i>omnis, omne, all</i>	

EXERCISES

368 1 Equitēs, quōs in castrīs vīdistis, sunt celerēs fortēsque.
 2 Brevī tempore ad locum vēnī, quem peditēs ācrēs mūniēbant.
 3 Virī ācrēs, quōs ad mē mīsistī, facilit̄ itinere venient. 4 Servī celerēs quōs ad nōs miserās, brevī tempore vēnērunt. 5 Hostēs celerēs, quī nōbīscum bellum ācre gesserant, tandem victī sunt.
 6 Proelium ācre cum cōpiis hostium fortium ā Rōmānīs pugnābitur. 7 Bella, quae Rōmānī omnibus cum Gallīs gerēbant, erant longa et ācria. 8 Fortēs omnium gentium hominēs in hāc urbe magnā habitant.

369 Dear Father:

I shall write you (ad tē) a short letter again tomorrow. In that letter I shall tell you about a brave boy who is in our school. The story will be short, because I cannot write long letters. You know that my lessons are long and my time in school is short. The teacher says that our lessons are short; but we pupils do not think that many lessons are short. I believe that all the lessons are easy for the keen teacher. I do not think that the language is easy, but I like the stories about the brave Romans. They were keen men, brave soldiers, and good citizens. In a short time I shall be at home (domi) with you.

With best wishes (Valē),

Marcus.

370

- 1 Write the Latin translation of the foregoing paragraph.
- 2 Retranslate your Latin into English without referring to the original.
- 3 Compare your English with the original and correct errors.

Ardua per praeceps glōria vādit iter (Ovid) — *Towering ambition travels a rough road.*

LESSON LXXII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (*Continued*) — ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

371 The adjectives declined below are called adjectives of one ending because in the nominative singular they have their masculine, feminine, and neuter forms all alike.

<i>audāx, bold, daring</i>		<i>potēns, powerful</i>	
base, <i>audāc-</i> ; stem, <i>audāci-</i>		base, <i>potent-</i> ; stem, <i>potenti-</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>potēns</i>
<i>audācis</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>potentis</i>	<i>potentis</i>
<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>potentī</i>	<i>potentī</i>
<i>audācem</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>potentem</i>	<i>potēns</i>
<i>audācī(e)</i>	<i>audācī(e)</i>	<i>potentī(e)</i>	<i>potentī(e)</i>
<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>	<i>potentēs</i>	<i>potentia</i>
<i>audācium</i>	<i>audācium</i>	<i>potentium</i>	<i>potentium</i>
<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>
<i>audācis, -ēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>	<i>potentīs, -ēs</i>	<i>potentia</i>
<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>

372 Decline together: *vir audāx, gēns potēns, bellum pār.*

373 VOCABULARY

<i>audāx, audācis</i> (gen.), adj., <i>bold, daring</i>	<i>pār, paris</i> (gen.), <i>parī</i> (abl.), adj. with dat., <i>equal, sufficient</i>
<i>interficiō</i> , ¹ <i>interficere, interfēcī,</i> <i>interfectus, kill</i>	<i>petō, petere, petivī</i> (-ii), <i>petī-</i> <i>tus, seek</i>
<i>iūdicium, iūdicī, n., trial, judgment</i>	<i>potēns, potentis</i> (gen.), adj., <i>powerful</i>
<i>iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctus, join</i>	<i>spērō, (ī), hope</i>
<i>nōndum, adv., not yet</i>	<i>vērō</i> (never first), adv., <i>in truth, but</i>

¹ The few forms of this type of verb used before **453** present no difficulties.

374

ORGETORIX

Olim in Galliā erat princeps, nōmine Orgetorix. Ille erat vir potēns atque audāx. Potestāte Orgetorix pār erat rēgi. Multōs amicōs audācis sibi iūxerat. Rēgnū vērō in civitāte suā nōn tenēbat sed id occupāre sē posse spērābat. Itaque ex duābus (*two*) civitātibus finitimis sibi auxilium clam petivit. Ea coniūratiō Orgetorigis principibus civitātis ēnūntiāta est. Mōrēs Helvētiōrum Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. At ille magnum numerum sociōrum amicōrumque ad iūdicium dūxit. Per eōs liberārī sē posse spērābat. Sed Helvētīi in Orgetorigem commōtī sunt et bellum cum eō gerere parābant. Illō ipsō tempore Orgetorix, ut (*as*) civēs existimābant, sē interfēcit.

375 Translate these questions and your answers into Latin:

- 1 Where did that daring man, named Orgetorix (Orgetorix by name) live?
- 2 Did Orgetorix hold the supreme power for many years in his own state?
- 3 Was Orgetorix equal in power (*abl.*) to many kings?
- 4 With the aid of powerful friends, was Orgetorix able to seize the supreme power?

376

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

at, conj., <i>but</i>	ēnūntiō (ī), <i>report</i>
causa, -ae, f., <i>cause, reason</i> ; in the abl. after a gen., <i>for the sake of</i> ; causam dicere, <i>to plead one's cause</i>	Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., <i>the Helvetians</i>
clam, adv., <i>secretly</i>	mōs, mōris, m., <i>custom, habit</i>
cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, coāctus, <i>compel, force</i>	ōlim, adv., <i>once on a time, formerly</i>
coniūratiō, coniūratiōnis, f., <i>conspiracy</i>	Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, m., <i>Orgetorix, a Helvetian</i>
	vinculum, -ī, n., <i>chain</i> ; plur., <i>chains, prison</i>

377 ENGLISH WORDS FROM LATIN VERBS

The frequent recurrence of English words of Latin origin has been emphasized in preceding exercises. Most noticeable in such exercises has been the fact that very many familiar words are derived from a limited number of Latin verbs, each of which has a large family of English descendants.

Such English derivatives may be formed from a Latin verb root or stem with: (1) a suffix, (2) a prefix, (3) both prefix and suffix.

At this stage the pupil is not expected accurately to distinguish between the verb root and the different stems. This exercise is given to show the possibilities of vocabulary development from a Latin verb.

378 Verb, *scribō*, *write*

Principal parts: *scribō*, *scribere*, *scripsi*, *scriptus*

Without Prefix:

scribe, *scribble*, *scribbler*, *scriber*,
scrip, *script*, *scripture*, *scriptural*

With Prefix:

ad:	<i>ascribe</i> , <i>ascribable</i> , <i>ascription</i>
circum:	<i>circumscribe</i> , <i>circumscript</i> , <i>circumscription</i>
con:	<i>conscribe</i> , <i>conscript</i> , <i>conscription</i> , <i>conscriptive</i>
dē:	<i>describe</i> , <i>describer</i> , <i>description</i> , <i>descriptive</i>
in:	<i>inscribe</i> , <i>inscribable</i> , <i>inscription</i>
prae:	<i>prescribe</i> , <i>prescription</i> , <i>prescriptive</i>
prō:	<i>proscribe</i> , <i>proscription</i> , <i>proscriptive</i> , <i>proscriptively</i>
post:	<i>postscript</i>
re:	<i>rescript</i>
sub:	<i>subscribe</i> , <i>subscriber</i> , <i>subscript</i> , <i>subscription</i>
super:	<i>superscribe</i> , <i>superscript</i> , <i>superscription</i>
trans:	<i>transcribe</i> , <i>transcribable</i> , <i>transcription</i>

379 Write an exercise similar to the foregoing using the verb *pōnō*. Ad will be ap; con, com; in, im; sub, sup. Omit circum.

LESSON LXXIII

ONE HUNDRED WORD TEST, NO. 2

380 TIME LIMIT, 12 MINUTES—DEGREE OF
ACCURACY, 90%

Following the words with the index finger of the left hand, write on a sheet of exercise paper placed on the desk at the right the meanings of the words below in proper sequence. Turning the sheet, write the synopses and the declensions called for.

1 ācer	17 interim
2 admoneō	18 longē
3 aestās	19 lūx
4 agō	20 nōnus
5 audāx	21 nūntius
6 caput	22 ōrdō
7 celer	23 pōnō
8 circum	24 pōns
9 cīvis	25 possum
10 comes	26 quaerō
11 eques	27 relinquō
12 fortiter	28 sīc
13 genus	29 signum
14 gerō	30 sub
15 hiems	31 tandem
16 inopia	32 tēlum

381

1 Write synopses as follows:

audiō in the active and passive indicative, 3d singular;
dūcō in the active and passive indicative, 3d plural.

2 Principal parts of the verb **veniō**.

3 Declension of **tūtus pōns** throughout.

4 Declension of **cōnsul** and **iter** throughout.

Multa petentibus desunt multa (Horace) — *Much is lacking to those who much desire.*

LESSON LXXIV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

382 1 Adjectives have three degrees of comparison: positive, comparative, and superlative.

2 The comparative of an adjective is formed in the nominative singular masculine and feminine by adding **-ior** to the base of the positive; the corresponding neuter by adding **-ius**. The superlative is formed by adding **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um** to the base of the positive.

altus , -a, -um, <i>high, deep, tall</i>	altior , altius, <i>higher</i>	altissimus , -a, -um, <i>highest</i>
fortis , forte <i>brave</i>	fortior , fortius, <i>braver</i>	fortissimus , -a, -um, <i>bravest</i>

3 Compare: **audāx**, **brevis**, **longus**, **potēns**.

383 DECLENSION OF A COMPARATIVE

altior, *higher*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

384 When **quam**, *than*, is expressed, the second of the two words compared must be in the same case as the first. **Quam** may be omitted when the first of the two words compared is in the nominative or accusative. Otherwise **quam** must be expressed. When **quam** is omitted, the second of the two words compared must be in the ablative:

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 Viri nōn sunt fortiōrēs quam
fēminae. | } | <i>Men are not braver than
women.</i> |
| 2 Viri nōn sunt fortiōrēs fē-
minis. | | |
| 3 Puerum altiōrem quam pa-
trem vidī. | } | <i>I saw a boy taller than his
father.</i> |
| 4 Puerum altiōrem patre vidī. | | |
| 5 A puerō fortiōre quam hōc
mīlite servātus est. | | <i>He was saved by a boy braver
than this soldier.</i> |

385

EXERCISES

1 Haec puella est pede altior¹ quam soror. 2 Eī puerī nōn sunt pede altiōrēs sorōribus. 3 Ille mōns quem vidēs est altissimus Italiae montium. 4 Quī rēx audācior esse potest quam noster princeps? 5 Rēx nōn semper erat vir civitātis potentissimus. 6 Illī civēs dixerunt sē quam rēgem esse potentiōrēs. 7 Gladii hostium pede sunt longiōrēs quam gladii nostrī. 8 Maria multis pedibus sunt altiōra quam flūmina altissima. 9 Fortissimī atque audācissimī omnium Gallōrum erant Belgae. 10 Multō breviōre viā domum ex Galliā veniēmus. 11 Quis nōn scit maria multis pedibus altiōra esse flūminibus? 12 Proelium ā rēge potentissimō audācissimōque pugnābitur.

386 Answer these questions in complete Latin sentences:

1 Suntne hae puellae fortiōrēs quam frātrēs tuī? 2 Vidistīne altissimōs Italiae montis? 3 Estne pater tuus quam tū pede altior? 4 Eritne soror tua multō fortior quam frāter? 5 Putāsne puellam audāciōrem hōc puerō esse? 6 Quis potentior esse potest quam ille rēx? 7 Num erant milites Rōmānī audāciōrēs quam nostri? 8 Nōne est hoc mare multō altius quam flūmen altissimum? 9 Num dicis hoc flūmen altius marī esse? 10 Num es tū audācissimus omnium virōrum?

¹ *pede altior, a foot taller (taller by a foot).* The amount, or degree, of difference between objects is expressed by the ablative without a preposition: *multō breviōr est viā (by) much shorter is the road.*

Lēx plūs laudātur, quandō ratiōne probātur — *Law is more praiseworthy when approved by reason.*

LESSON LXXV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Continued*) — DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

387

The four adjectives that follow, and a few others, are regular in the comparative, but their superlatives are formed by adding **-limus** to the base of the positive.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis , -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior , ¹ -ius	facillimus , ¹ -a, -um
difficilis , -e, <i>hard</i>	difficilior , -ius	difficillimus , -a, -um
similis , -e, <i>like</i>	similior , -ius	simillimus , -a, -um
dissimilis , -e, <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior , -ius	dissimillimus , -a, -um

388

VOCABULARY

difficilis , -e, <i>difficult</i>	poena , -ae, f., <i>punishment</i>
idōneus , -a, -um, <i>suitable</i>	postulō (I), <i>demand</i>
iūdex , iūdīcis, m., <i>judge</i>	quam , conjunc., <i>than</i>
lēx , lēgis, f., <i>law</i>	similis , -e, <i>like</i>
mīlitāris , -e, <i>military</i>	dissimilis , -e, <i>unlike</i>

389

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

Certain adjectives take the dative to indicate the direction or object of the quality denoted by these adjectives:

Hic puer est similis patrī, *this boy is like (to) his father.*

Ille locus est idōneus castrīs, *that place is suitable for a camp.*

390 Rule. *The dative is used with adjectives that denote likeness, usefulness, fitness, friendliness, and their opposites, also nearness. Similis governs genitive when it means "the likeness."*

¹ Sometimes a comparative is best rendered by *too* or *rather* (**fortior**, *too brave*, *rather brave*), a superlative by *very* or *most* (**fortissimus**, *very brave*, *most brave*).

391

EXERCISES

1 Iter equitibus fuit difficillimum, peditibus facile. 2 Quae itinera difficilliora esse possunt quam ea per montis? 3. Trāns hoc flūmen iter facilius erat equitibus quam peditibus. 4 Quod difficilius exemplum virtūtis quam illud darī potest? 5 Arma militum Rōmānōrum dissimillima erant armīs hostium. 6 Nos-trae lēgēs vestrīs lēgibus sunt simillimae. 7 Lēx militāris poenam malō factō idōneam postulāvit. 8 Lēx militāris civi-bus urbis amīcae nōn est idōnea. 9 Iūdicēs putant lēgēs militāris populō liberō nōn esse idōneās. 10 Multae lēgēs Rōmānae lēgibus nostris sunt dissimillimae. 11 Lēgātī locum castris peditum equitumque idōneum dēlēgerant.

392 1 Military leaders always select places suitable for their camps. 2 This village is very like the neighboring villages. 3 The inhabitants of a village are not unlike the citizens of a great city. 4 Martial (military) laws are suitable for soldiers but not for good citizens. 5 The laws of our country are not always like the laws of Italy. 6 This route into Gaul is very easy, that very difficult. 7 Why did the commander choose the much more difficult route? 8 A good commander will lead his soldiers by the easier route. 9 The judge demanded a place suitable for the trial. 10 The punishment of bad citizens is very difficult for a judge.

393 Give two or more English words suggested by each of the following: *audāx*, *iungō*, *pār*, *potēns*, *difficilis*, *iūdex*, *lēx*, *militāris*, *similis*, *dissimilis*.

You have had at least one Latin noun associated in origin with each of the following words: *audāx*, *militāris*, *potēns*, *iūdex*, *iungō*. Try to recall the noun. Verify your work by reference to the general vocabulary.

Nōn scholae, sed vitae discimus (Seneca) — *We learn not for school, but for life.*

LESSON LXXVI

CARDINAL NUMERALS

394 The cardinal numerals from one to twenty are as follows:

ūnus, -a, -um	<i>one</i>	ūndecim	<i>eleven</i>
duo, duae, duo	<i>two</i>	duodecim	<i>twelve</i>
trēs, tria	<i>three</i>	trēdecim	<i>thirteen</i>
quattuor	<i>four</i>	quattuordecim	<i>fourteen</i>
quīnque	<i>five</i>	quīndecim	<i>fifteen</i>
sex	<i>six</i>	sēdecim	<i>sixteen</i>
septem	<i>seven</i>	septendecim	<i>seventeen</i>
octō	<i>eight</i>	duodēvigintī	<i>eighteen</i>
nōvem	<i>nine</i>	ūndēvigintī	<i>nineteen</i>
decem	<i>ten</i>	vīgintī	<i>twenty</i>

395 DECLENSION OF DUO AND TRĒS

The declension of **ūnus** has already been given (228, note). **Duo** and **trēs** are declined as follows:

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

396 VOCABULARY

centum, one hundred	quadruplum, -ī, n., fourfold
cohors, cohortis, f., cohort (the	(amount)
tenth part of a legion)	summa, -ae, f., sum total
discō, discere, didicī, learn	tripulum, -ī, n., threefold
duplum, -ī, n., double (amount)	(amount)
mille, one thousand	

397

COLLOQUIUM — DIALOGUE

MAGISTER: Hodiē, Brūte, in lectione tuā, sententiis perfectis (*complete sentences*) respondē.

BRŪTUS: Perfectis sententiis, magister bone, respondere nōn possum.

MAGISTER: Quid (*why*) nōn potes, Brūte?

BRŪTUS: Tū, magister, mē sententiis perfectis respondere nōn docuisti.

MAGISTER: Mea est culpa (*fault*), mī discipule. Tē nunc docēbō. Audi. Facile discēs. Tibi exempla pauca dabō. Ego, magister, quaerō: Quot sunt duo librī et trēs? Egō, nunc discipulus, respondeō: Duo librī et trēs sunt librī quīnque. Ego, iterum magister: Cuius numerī est numerus octō duplum? Ego, nunc iterum discipulus: Octō est duplum numerī quattuor. Intellegisne nunc, Brūte?

BRŪTUS: Ita (*yes*), bene intellegō.

MAGISTER: Quot virī sunt duo virī et sex?

Quae est summa numerōrum nōvem et quattuor?

Sī ex librīs undecim amīcīs trēs librōs dederis, quot retinēbis?

Sī sēdecim cohortīs in quattuor partīs dīviseris, quot cohortēs sunt in quāque (*each*) parte?

BRŪTUS: Hī numerī sunt facilēs. Difficiliōrēs dā.

MAGISTER: Cuius numerī est numerus duo duplum? Sex? Octō? Decem? Duodecim? Quattuordecim? Sēdecim? Duodēviginti? Viginti?

Cuius numerī est numerus trēs triplum? Nōvem? Duodecim? Quīndecim? Duodēviginti?

Cuius numerī est numerus quattuor quadruplum? Octo? Sēdecim? Viginti?

Bene, Brūte, respondisti.

The pupil as Brutus is to answer in Latin the master's questions.

LESSON LXXVII

VOCABULARY REVIEW

TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 7

398

1 ācer	26 iūdicium
2 audāx	27 iungō
3 brevis	28 lectiō
4 celer	29 mare
5 circum	30 mille
6 cīvis	31 mōns
7 cohors	32 mōs
8 coniūrātiō	33 nōndum
9 crēdō	34 omnis
10 dīcō	35 pār
11 difficilis	36 pars
12 diligenter	37 pellō
13 discipulus	38 petō
14 duo	39 pōns
15 expōnō	40 potēns
16 facilis	41 retineō
17 fīnis	42 sciō
18 fīrmus	43 spērō
19 fortis	44 sub
20 gēns	45 trēs
21 hostis	46 tum
22 idōneus	47 urbs
23 intellegō	48 vērō
24 interficiō	49 vīgintī
25 iūdex	50 vinculum

399	1 sharp, keen	26 trial, judgment
	2 bold, daring	27 join
	3 short	28 lesson
	4 swift	29 sea
	5 around	30 thousand
	6 citizen	31 mountain
	7 cohort	32 custom, habit
	8 conspiracy	33 not yet
	9 believe	34 all
10	say, speak	35 equal
11	difficult	36 part
12	with care	37 drive, defeat
13	pupil	38 seek
14	two	39 bridge
15	set forth, explain	40 powerful
16	easy	41 retain, hold back
17	end	42 know
18	strong	43 hope
19	brave	44 under
20	tribe, nation	45 three
21	enemy	46 then
22	suitable, fit	47 city
23	understand	48 in truth, but
24	kill	49 twenty
25	judge	50 chain



BOY READING FROM SCROLL

LESSON LXXVIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN -er

400 Adjectives in **-er** have regular comparative forms but their superlatives are obtained by adding **-rimus** to the nominative singular masculine of the positive.

POSITIVE			COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE		
M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
ācer,	ācris,	ācre	ācrior,	-ius	ācerrimus,	-a,	-um
miser,	misera,	miserum	miserior,	-ius	miserrimus,	-a,	-um

401 Make a table like the foregoing to include **celer**, **liber**, and **pulcher**.

402

VOCABULARY

equester, equestris, equestre,	oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., <i>attack</i>
(of) cavalry, equestrian	pedester, pedestris, pedestre,
modus, -ī, m., <i>manner</i>	infantry, pedestrian
nox, noctis, f., <i>night</i>	ruīna, -ae, f., <i>downfall</i>



VIEW OF A PART OF THE ROMAN FORUM

Photograph by Reynolds

403 Give at least one Latin word suggested by the following: acrimony, conjugate, coördinate, delectable, facile, fortitude, impotent, interurban, judicial, legislature, omnibus, parity, pontoon, similarity, submarine.

404**EXERCISES**

1 Cōpiaē equestrēs sunt celeriorēs cōpiis pedestribus. **2** Hic equus miser nōn est multō celerior illō homine. **3** Castra equestria ab ācerimīs peditibus obsidēbuntur. **4** Aestāte noctēs brevissimae sunt, hieme longissimae. **5** Hae puellae omnium puellārum sunt pulcherrimae. **6** Cōpiaē equestrēs sunt celeriorēs sed nōn audāciōrēs quam pedestrēs. **7** Per aestātem ea urbs pulcherrima ā cōpiis pedestribus obsessa erat. **8** Omnibus ex partibus cōpiaē pedestrēs eam oppugnāvērunt. **9** Acrī oppugnātiōne peditēs victōriam obtinuērunt. **10** Propter pulcherrimae urbis ruīnam miserrimī sunt oppidānī. **11** Sed ex finitimā urbe socii auxilium ad miserrimōs mittent. **12** Brevi tempore mūrī urbis pulchriōris aedificābuntur.

405 **1** Men are not often swifter than horses. **2** Winter in Italy is often more beautiful than summer. **3** But summer is a very beautiful part of the year. **4** Do you think that summer is more beautiful than winter? **5** Are infantry forces much braver than cavalry forces? **6** We think that infantry forces are braver than cavalry forces. **7** The camp (of the) infantry was besieged during the winter. **8** The townsmen were more wretched than the Roman soldiers. **9** The townsmen were very unhappy on account of the downfall of their city. **10** The downfall of great cities is always very pitiable. **11** The memory of that long night in the ruins of the great city will always be very sad. **12** But the townsmen are brave; in a very short time they will build a new city.

Homō sum; hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum putō (Terence) — *I am a man; I deem nothing common to mankind foreign to me.*

LESSON LXXIX

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

406 1 Adverbs are usually derived from adjectives. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions regularly are formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the positive; those derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed by adding **-iter** (sometimes **-ter**) to the base; stems in **-nt** drop the **t**: **diligen(t)-ter**. **Facile** is an exception.

2 The comparative forms of adverbs are the same as the nominative singular neuter of the corresponding adjectives (**fortius**, **facilius**, etc.); the superlative forms regularly end in **-ē** (**fortissimē**, **facillimē**, etc.).

407

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Adj.	altus <i>high</i>	altior <i>higher</i>	altissimus <i>highest</i>
Adv.	altē <i>high</i>	altius <i>higher</i>	altissimē <i>highest</i>
Adj.	audāx <i>bold</i>	audācior <i>bolder</i>	audācissimus <i>boldest</i>
Adv.	audācter <i>boldly</i>	audācius <i>more boldly</i>	audācissimē <i>most (very) boldly</i>
Adj.	ācer <i>sharp</i>	ācrior <i>sharper</i>	ācerrimus <i>sharpest</i>
Adv.	ācriter <i>sharply</i>	ācrius <i>more sharply</i>	ācerrimē <i>most (very) sharply</i>
Adj.	diligēns <i>careful</i>	diligentior <i>more careful</i>	diligentissimus <i>most (very) careful</i>
Adv.	diligenter <i>carefully</i>	diligentius <i>more carefully</i>	diligentissimē <i>most (very) carefully</i>
Adj.	facilis <i>easy</i>	facilior <i>easier</i>	facillimus <i>easiest</i>
Adv.	facile <i>easily</i>	facilius <i>more easily</i>	facillimē <i>most easily</i>

408

VOCABULARY

diligēns, diligēntis (gen.), <i>care-</i>	prōdūcō, prōdūcere, prōdūxī,
<i>ful, diligent</i>	prōductus, <i>lead forward</i>
mors, mortis, f., death	salūs, salūtis, f., safety
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.,	
<i>large number, multitude</i>	

409 Give two or more English words derived from each of the following: **brevis, diligēns, mors, multitūdō, prōdūcō.**

410

EXERCISES

1 Diū et ācritēr ā cōpiīs pedestribus oppugnāta est urbs.
 2 In cohortibus multi erant militēs quī fortissimē pugnābant. 3 Lēgātum, quī cohortīs audācissimē prōdūxerat. diligenter petivimus. 4 Lēgātus cohortīs audācissimās in perīcula mortis nōn frūstrā prōdūxit. 5 Paucīs cohortibus nōn facile lēgātus multitūdinem hostium vincere poterat. 6 Brevī spatiō post pugnam per proelī campum lēgātum frūstrā petēbāmus. 7 Ille militibus cīvibusque salutem, sed sibi mortem, in bellō celeriter invēnit. 8 Memōria lēgātī, quī vītam prō sociīs patriāque fortiter dedit, erit sempiterna (*everlasting*). 9 Bella ipsa nōn amāmus, sed fortia militum audācium facta semper laudābimus.

411 1 The shortest route into Italy is through these mountains. 2 Will our infantry forces fight more boldly than the cavalry? 3 Who does not believe that the infantry forces fight very boldly? 4 The leader who had been called from the city came very quickly. 5 The life of a brave Roman soldier often was very short. 6 The lieutenant with one cohort will attack the camp most fiercely. 7 Neither the lieutenant nor the bold soldier fears the danger. 8 Our very brave men will boldly seek either victory or death. 9 Is a brave death in defense of (one's) country very pitiable? 10 I think that a brave death in defense of (one's) country is not pitiable.

Amicus certus in rē incertā cernitur (Ennius) — *A friend in need is a friend indeed.*

LESSON LXXX

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Continued*) — ANDRO- CLUS ET LEO

412

SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus <i>high</i>	altior <i>higher</i>	altissimus <i>highest</i>
audāx <i>bold</i>	audācior <i>bolder</i>	audācissimus <i>boldest</i>
ācer <i>sharp</i>	ācrior <i>sharper</i>	ācerrimus <i>sharpest</i>
miser <i>wretched</i>	miserior <i>more wretched</i>	miserrimus <i>most wretched</i>
similis <i>like</i>	similior <i>more like</i>	simillimus <i>most like</i>

413 Make a table like the foregoing to include the following:
fortis, certus, pulcher, facilis, and diligēns.

Compare the adjectives in the feminine; in the neuter.

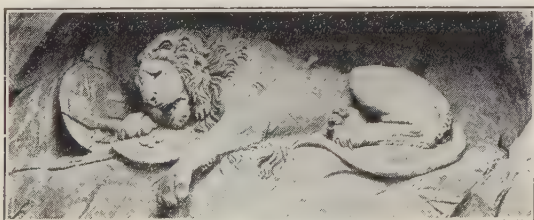
Form and compare the corresponding adverbs.

414

VOCABULARY

certus, -a, -um, certain, sure
cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōstitī,
stop, halt

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, do,
make
leō, leōnis, m., lion



LION OF LUCERNE

415

ANDROCLUS ET LEO I

Androclus, servus miserrimus, Caesarem in Circō Maximō salūtāvit; multitudinī quoque hominum, "Salvētē atque valētē" dixit. Nam leōnēs ab eō nōn longē absunt. Ex quibus magnus leō Africānus trāns Circī arēnās ad Androclum celeriter properat. Androclus mortem miserrimam in arēnīs nunc expectat. Propius atque propius ad hominem leō appropinquat. Circus Maximus subitō quiēscit. Multitūdō enim miserarū hominis mortem mox vidēbit.

En! Prope Androclum breve tempus cōnsistit leō. Nunc, mīrābile dictū (*wonderful to relate*), manum caputque hominis linguā magnā modō amīcō lambit. Iniūriam tamen nōn facit.

Suspicit tandem Androclus mōnstrum. Nōn iam timet, quod suum leōnem statim cognōscit. Sīc amīcitiā leōnis miserā ex morte servātus est Androclus.

"Leō, Androcle," inquit Caesar, "tē servāvit. Egō quoque tē cōnservābō."

416

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

Africānus, -a, -um, *African*

arēna, -ae, f., *sand*

Caesar, Caesaris, m., *Caesar*

Circus Maximus, Roman arena

ēn! interj., *lo! behold!*

lambō, lambere, lambi, lambitus, *lick*

manum (acc.), f., *hand*

propius, adv., *nearer*

quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētus, *become quiet*

"Salvēte atque valēte," *Hail and farewell*

suspiciō, suspicere, suspexī, suspectus, *look up at*



ANCORA, *anchor*

LESSON LXXXI

SOME IMPORTANT ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON

417

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i> malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i> multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> multum (neut.), <i>much</i> multi, -ae, -a, <i>many</i> parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i> iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i> maior, maius, <i>greater</i> peior, peius, <i>worse</i> plūs, <i>more</i> plūrēs, plūra, <i>more</i> minor, minus, <i>smaller</i> iunior, <i>younger</i>	optimus, ¹ <i>best</i> maximus, ¹ <i>greatest</i> pessimus, ¹ <i>worst</i> plūrimus, ¹ <i>most</i> plūrimum, <i>most</i> plūrimī, ² <i>most</i> minimus, ¹ <i>smallest</i> minimus nātū, <i>youngest</i>

418 Learn the foregoing table thoroughly and reproduce it on the blackboard. Learn the declension of **plūs** (632). In the singular, **plūs**, *more*, is always a neuter noun.

419

VOCABULARY

adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutū-	prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī,
rus, <i>be near, be present</i>	prōcessūrus, <i>go forward, ad-</i>
auctōritās, auctōritātis, f., <i>in-</i>	vance
fluence, authority	

420 Give two or more English words suggested by each of the following: ācer, audāx, bonus, cōsistō, iuvenis, miser, multus, similis.

You have had at least one Latin noun that is associated by derivation with each of the following verbs: agō, dūcō, impediō, labōrō, liberō, nāvīgō, nōminō, nūntiō, pugnō, regō, timeō, vocō, vulnerō. Try to recall a noun. Verify your work by reference to the general vocabulary.

¹ Fem., -a; neut., -um,

² Fem., -ae; neut., -a.

EXERCISES

421 1 Maxima fuit potestās ducis quī ad urbem cum cōpiīs aderat. 2 Scīvimus imperātōrem cum legiōnibus nōn longē abesse. 3 Oppida minima nōmina longissima saepe habuerunt. 4 Oppidō minimō saepe erat nōmen maximum. 5 Homīnibus pessimīs saepe fuērunt mātres optimae. 6 Militēs audācissimī nōn semper fuērunt cīvēs optimī. 7 Misera vīta iuniōris virī peior erat quam mors ipsa. 8 Plūrimī vītam miserrimam esse morte peiōrem exīstīmant. 9 Estne tua filia iunior quam meus minimus nātū filius? 10 Suntne tuī filiī iuniōres quam meī filiī parvī? 11 Quōs meliōres amīcōs quam patrem mātremque habēre possumus? 12 Plūrēs militēs quam manent in castrīs in campum prōcēdunt.

422 1 More soldiers have remained in camp than will advance into the plain. 2 I have more good friends, but you have more (of) money. 3 My servants are not very good, but they are not worse than yours. 4 I had more (of) power than you, but I did not have more (of) money. 5 Do you think your friends are much better than mine? 6 Very bad men do not often have more (of) power than good men. 7 The best foot soldiers had been present in that fierce fight. 8 The leader was younger than the youngest soldier of his legion. 9 He was always present in dangers and his influence was very great. 10 Many soldiers were very like their young lieutenant. 11 Because of his influence they went forward into the greatest dangers. 12 The best men are not away from their country in times of danger. 13 Most men are bravest in times of greatest danger. 14 The good influence of the best citizens is always an aid (*dat.*) to the state. 15 The youngest men are often the boldest soldiers.

Quod fuit dūrum patī, meminisse dulce est (Seneca) — *It is sweet to remember what was hard to bear.*

LESSON LXXXII

ANDROCLUS ET LEO II

423

VOCABULARY

cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī,

cōfectus, *exhaust*

cotīdiē, adv., daily

extrahō, extrahere, extrāxī,

extrāctus, *draw out*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus,

flee

īnspiciō, īnspicere, īnspexi, īn-

spectus, *look at, examine*

paene, adv., nearly, almost

sedeō, sedērē, sēdī, sessūrus, *sit*



THE CHARIOT RACE

ANDROCLUS ET LEO II

424 Dē leōne Androclus Caesarī sīc nārrāvit: “In Africā servus eram in villā principis Rōmānī. Falsō accūsātus sum ā cōservīs atque ab ipsō dominō. In magnō mortis periculō eram. Itaque et ex dominī villā et ex oppidō in loca longinqua celeriter fūgī. Quibus in locīs diū errābam. Neque amicum neque domum neque cibum habēbam. Tandem inopiā cibī cōfectus, magnā in cavernā sedēbam sed dormire nōn poteram. Imprōvisō ipsā in cavernae portā leōnem magnum videō. Mōnstrum cavernam iam intrat et ad mē appropinquat. Terrōre paene exanimātus, mortem celerrimam exspectō. Leō mihi iniūriam nōn facit, sed ad mē pedem magnum amīcē porrigit. In pede, quem timidē inspiciō, spīnam longam videō. Magnā cum cūrā ex pede spīnam extrahō. Cuius beneficī memor (*mindful*), postea leō mihi semper fuit amīcus.

Sine periculō cum leōne longum tempus mānēbam. Socius meus, leō, ad mē cōpiam cibī cotidiē portābat. Hodiē ab hōc leōne vīta mea iterum est servāta.”

425

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

accūsō (ī), *accuse*

amīcē, *adv., in a friendly manner*

caverna, -ae, *f., cave, cavern*

cōfectus, -a, -um, *weakened*

cōservus, -ī, *m., fellow slave*

cūra, -ae, *f., care*

errō (ī), *wander, roam*

exanimātus, -a, -um, *lifeless, overcome*

falsō, *adv., falsely*

imprōvisō, *adv., unexpectedly*

porrigō, porrigere, porrēxī, porrētus, *stretch out, put forth*

spīna, -ae, *f., thorn*

timidē, *adv., timidly, fearfully*



QUADRIGAE, *four-horse team*

Rēx eris, sī rēctē faciēs (Terence) — *If your conduct be kingly, you will be a king.*

LESSON LXXXIII

NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

426 The nine adjectives in the vocabulary of this lesson have -īus in the genitive and -ī in the dative singular of all genders — endings borrowed from pronouns. The plurals are regular (**94**).

SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
alius	alius	alius	altērius	altērius	altērius
aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

Alius has the ending -ud borrowed from pronouns (*id, quod, illud*). The genitive *alius* is rare. *Altērius* sometimes takes its place.

427

VOCABULARY

alius, alia, aliud, <i>another</i>	ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, <i>any</i>
alter, altera, alterum, <i>the other</i> (of two)	ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>one</i>
neuter, neutra, neutrum, <i>nei-</i> <i>ther</i> (of two)	uter, utra, utrum, <i>which</i> (of (two)?)
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, <i>not any,</i> <i>no one, none</i>	alius . . . alius, <i>one . . . another</i>
sōlus, sōla, sōlum, <i>alone, only</i>	aliī . . . aliī, <i>some . . . others</i>
tōtus, tōta, tōtum, <i>(the) whole,</i> <i>entire</i>	alter . . . alter, <i>the one . . . the</i> <i>other</i> (of two)
	alterī . . . alterī, <i>the one party</i> <i>. . . the other</i>



ANSER, goose

428

EXERCISES

1 Bīnae¹ cōpiae adsunt; alterae sunt pedestrēs, alterae equestrēs. 2 Alii per portās properant, aliī iam adsunt in urbe. 3 Num ūllum auxilium sociī ad urbem mīserunt? Nūllum missum est. 4 Alii in hostīs fortissimē prōcēdunt, aliī salūtem sibi petunt. 5 Duo mīlitēs in periculō erant; quōrum alter erat pedes, alter eques. 6 Neuter ūllum tēlum sēcum habēbat sed alter alterum dēfendit. 7 Poteruntne ūnūs legiōnis mīlitēs tōtīus urbis cīvīs vincere? 8 Alii² cīvēs aliud clāmant; liberī sōlī nōn timent. 9 Alii cīvī gladium, aliī pīlum dedit dux. 10 Fēminīs liberisque sōlīs nūlla tēla ā duce data sunt.

429 The entire authority of the Roman consuls came from (dē) the will of the people. The people did not often give all power to one man. But in a time of great danger the power of the entire state was often given to one citizen.

In America there is no king. The people alone have the whole power. The citizens of America select one man to whom they give great authority. Britain has a king; America has a president.³ Which has the greater power?

¹ Bīnī, -ae, -a, *two*. This adjective is used instead of *duo* with words that have a special meaning in the plural: *castra bina*; *litterae binae*.

² Translate: "Some citizens shout one thing, others another." The Latin is: "Other citizens shout another thing." Similarly: "*Alius aliud dixit*," "Another said another thing," should be rendered in English: "One said one thing, another another (thing)."

³ *praeses, praesidis, m., president.*



MŪRUS ET PORTA, *wall and gate*

LESSON LXXXIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW

TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 8

430

1 adsum	26 nūllus
2 alius	27 obsideō
3 alter	28 oppugnō
4 auctōritās	29 pedester
5 cōficiō	30 pēs
6 cōsistō	31 poena
7 cotīdiē	32 postulō
8 diligēns	33 potestās
9 dissimilis	34 prōcēdō
10 dormiō	35 prōdūcō
11 duodecim	36 quam
12 duodēvigintī	37 quattuordecim
13 equester	38 quīndecim
14 extrahō	39 ruīna
15 faciō	40 saepe
16 fugiō	41 sēdecim
17 īspiciō	42 sedeō
18 leō	43 septendecim
19 lēx	44 similis
20 mīlitāris	45 sōlus
21 modus	46 subitō
22 mors	47 suspiciō
23 multitūdō	48 trēdecim
24 neuter	49 ūndecim
25 nox	50 ūndēvigintī

431	1	be near, be present	26	not any
	2	another	27	besiege
	3	the other	28	attack
	4	influence, authority	29	infantry, pedestrian
	5	exhaust	30	foot
	6	stop, halt	31	punishment
	7	daily	32	demand
	8	careful, diligent	33	power
	9	unlike	34	go forward, advance
10	sleep		35	lead forward
11	twelve		36	than
12	eighteen		37	fourteen
13	cavalry, equestrian		38	fifteen
14	draw out		39	downfall
15	do, make		40	often
16	flee		41	sixteen
17	look at, examine		42	sit
18	lion		43	seventeen
19	law		44	like
20	military		45	alone, only
21	manner		46	suddenly
22	death		47	look up at
23	throng, multitude		48	thirteen
24	neither		49	eleven
25	night		50	nineteen



CURRUS, chariot

. . . *Infirmi est animi exiguique voluptas ultio* (Juvenal) — *Revenge is the desire of a weak and mean spirit.*

LESSON LXXXV

ORDINAL NUMERALS — IRREGULAR VERB, *Eō*

432 The first twenty ordinals are as follows:

<i>primus</i>	<i>first</i>	<i>undecimus</i>	<i>eleventh</i>
<i>secundus</i>	<i>second</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>	<i>twelfth</i>
<i>tertius</i>	<i>third</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>	<i>thirteenth</i>
<i>quartus</i>	<i>fourth</i>	<i>quartus decimus</i>	<i>fourteenth</i>
<i>quintus</i>	<i>fifth</i>	<i>quintus decimus</i>	<i>fifteenth</i>
<i>sextus</i>	<i>sixth</i>	<i>sextus decimus</i>	<i>sixteenth</i>
<i>septimus</i>	<i>seventh</i>	<i>septimus decimus</i>	<i>seventeenth</i>
<i>octavus</i>	<i>eighth</i>	<i>duodevicesimus</i>	<i>eighteenth</i>
<i>nonus</i>	<i>ninth</i>	<i>undevicesimus</i>	<i>nineteenth</i>
<i>decimus</i>	<i>tenth</i>	<i>vicesimus</i>	<i>twentieth</i>

All numerals of this class are declined like **bonus**.

433 For complete mastery of these words, assuring their quick recall, various interesting devices may be used:

1 For several successive days following the study of this lesson, the class may be asked to number in the order of their seating. In such numbering, boys will use the masculine singular form of the numeral and girls the feminine form.

2 In assigning exercises for blackboard work, the teacher may say: "Count by twos," or "Count by threes." Then each pupil, on going to the board, will write his ordinal above the space for his exercise.

3 Numbered sentences in the book, both English and Latin, may be designated regularly by teacher and pupils by their appropriate Latin ordinals.



A ROMAN YOKE

434

VOCABULARY

eō, ire, ivi or ii, itūrus, <i>go</i>	redeō, redire, redīvī (-ii), redi-
exeō, exire, exīvī (-ii), exitūrus, <i>go out</i>	tūrus, <i>go back, return</i>
ineō, inire, inīvī (-ii), initūrus, <i>enter upon, begin</i>	trānseō, trānsire, trānsivī (-ii), trānsitūrus, <i>cross</i>

435

IRREGULAR VERB, Eō, Go

Principal parts: eō, ire. ivī, or ii, itūrus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT SYSTEM

PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
eō	imus	ibam	ibāmus	ibō	ibimus
īs	itis	ibās	ibātis	ibis	ibitis
it	eunt	ibat	ibant	ibit	ibunt

PERFECT SYSTEM

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
ivī ¹	ivimus	iveram ¹	iverāmus	iverō ¹	iverimus
ivisti	ivistis	iverās	iverātis	iveris	iveritis
ivit	ivērunt	iverat	iverant	iverit	iverint

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2nd sing.: ī

2nd plur.: īte

436

EXERCISES

1 Is, ibunt, iit, ivērunt, ī, īte. 2 Exeunt, inibunt, redīvērunt, exhibō. 3 Trānsierat, trānsiit, existiī, redīverit. 4 Prīmā cōpiarum pars montem trānsire nōn potuit. 5 Secundā noctis hōrā cohors quārta pontem trānsiit. 6 Imperātor cum legiōne decimā Rōmam redībit. 7 Rōmam redīte, comitēs; populō nūntiāte victōriam.

¹ The shorter forms, ii, etc., *ieram*, etc., *ierō*, etc., were in common use.

Nox erat et caelō fulgēbat lūna serēnō (Horace) — *It was night and the moon was shining in the clear sky.*

LESSON LXXXVI

ULYSSES VISITS THE LOTUS EATERS I

437

VOCABULARY

arbor, arboris, f., *tree*

nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship*

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep*

438

ULYSSES VISITS THE LOTUS EATERS I

Ad terram novam Ulixēs nāvī suā cum sociīs tandem dēvēnit. Pulchra Ulixī sociīsque, quī tempestātibus saepe pulsī erant, vidēbātur illa terra. Nam clārus per diem longum sōl semper rīdēbat. Nocte etiam, serēnō in caelō, lūna stellaeque lūcēbant. Quiētis somnīque patriam terram illam bene nōmināvimus. Neque vērō labōrābant in agrīs ipsī incolae, neque inter sē in campō lūdēbant, neque cum finitimīs bella gerēbant. At grātā sub umbrā arborum fēlicium diū cōnsidēbant; pulcherri-mōs inter flōrēs etiam hōrās longās dormiēbant.

439

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

cōnsidō, cōnsidere, cōnsēdī,

lūna, -ae, f., *moon*

cōnsessūrus, *sit together*

quiēs, quiētis, f., *rest, quiet*

dēveniō, dēvenīre, dēvenī, dē-

rīdeō, rīdere, rīsī, rīsus, *smile,*

ventūrus, *come down, arrive*

laugh, shine

diem, m. (acc.), *day*

serēnus, -a, -um, *clear, tranquil*

fēlix, fēlicis, adj., *fruitful*

tempestās, tempestātis, f.,

lūceō, lūcere, lūxī, —, *shine*

storm

lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsus, *play*

umbra, -ae, f., *shade*

(games)



ELEPHANTĪ, *elephants*



READING FROM HOMER

Aliudque cupidō mēns aliud suādet (Ovid) — *Desire urges one thing, reason another.*

LESSON LXXXVII

ULYSSES VISITS THE LOTUS EATERS II

440 For the notebook:

Copy carefully in your notebook paragraph 438. Underline in red the Latin words for which you are able to suggest related English words.

Below your Latin paragraph make a list of the underlined words and place after each the related English word or words that you have selected. Your list should show not less than fifteen Latin words with not less than one related English word for each and a total of at least thirty English words.



SCYLLA

Photograph by Reynolds

Ulysses, in his wanderings, is said to have sailed past this rock which lies between Italy and Sicily. A fabled monster, girded with barking dogs, dwelt here.

441 ULYSSES VISITS THE LOTUS EATERS II

Cibus incolārum lōtus nōmine erat. Cuius cibī cōpia in arboribus semper crēscēbat. Socii autem Ulixīs, quibus incolae illum cibum dederant, neque uxōrēs neque liberōs nē patriam quidem memoriā tenēre poterant. Cupiēbant autem cōpiam eius cibī sēcum semper habēre, fēlicibus sub arboribus diū cōnsidere, pulchrīs in flōribus hōrās serēnās dormīre.

Sed Ulixēs periculō comitum commōtus est. Sē suōsque ē periculīs liberāre cupiēbat. Itaque sine auxiliō, eōs quōs ad ōram ēgit in nāvem portāvit. Quō modō et ad sē glōriam et ad sociōs salūtem reportāvit. Ad Ithicam tandem, patriam suam, laetus nāvigāvit Ulixēs.

442

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus, <i>grow</i>	laetus, -a, -um, <i>happy, joyful</i>
cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupītus, <i>desire, wish</i>	lōtus, -ī, f., <i>fruit of the lotus tree</i>
Ithaca, -ae, f., island home of Ulysses	nē . . . quidem, adv., <i>not . . . even</i>
	ōra, -ae, f., <i>shore, beach</i>

CLAVDIVS.
AURUM.



GOLD COINS OF CLAUDIUS

LESSON LXXXVIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS, REVIEWED — ADVERBS OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON — REGULUS I

443 Review 382, 387, 400. Compare the adjectives given below. Derive an adverb from each adjective (406, I, 2; 407). Compare the adverb thus derived from: *certus*, *timidus*, *pulcher*, *acer*, *facilis*, *inimicus*, *superbus*, *celer*, *liber*, *similis*, *diligēns*, *audāx*.

Before memorizing the adverbs in the following table, review 417.

<i>bene</i> (adj., <i>bonus</i>), <i>well</i> <i>diū</i> , <i>long</i> (time)	<i>melius</i> , <i>better</i> <i>diūtius</i> , <i>longer</i>	<i>optimē</i> , <i>best</i> , <i>very well</i> <i>diūtissimē</i> , <i>for the long- est time, very long</i>
<i>magnopere</i> , <i>greatly</i> <i>male</i> , <i>badly, ill</i> <i>multum</i> , <i>much</i> <i>parum</i> (adj., <i>parvus</i>), <i>little</i> <i>saepe</i> , <i>often</i>	<i>magis</i> , <i>more</i> <i>peius</i> , <i>worse</i> <i>plūs</i> , <i>more</i> <i>minus</i> , <i>less</i>	<i>maximē</i> , <i>most, very much</i> <i>pessimē</i> , <i>worst</i> <i>plūrimum</i> , <i>most</i> <i>minimē</i> , <i>least</i>
	<i>saepius</i> , <i>more often</i> , <i>oftener</i>	<i>saeppissimē</i> , <i>very (most) often</i>

444

VOCABULARY

ante, prep. with acc., *before*
captivus, -i, m., *prisoner*
dubitō (I), *doubt, question*

nōbilis, -e, adj., *noble*
recipiō, *recipere*, *recēpī*, *recep-*
tus, *take back, recover*

COMMODUS



COINS OF COMMODUS

445

REGULUS I

In primō bellō Carthāginiēnsī M.¹ Atilius Regulus, cōsul Rōmānus, in Africā magnō cum numerō militum victus est ā duce Xanthippō. Regulus quīque annōs captīvus erat Carthāgine. Rōmānī autem multītūdinem captivōrum nōbilium, quōs recipere magnopere cupiēbant Carthāginiēnsēs, in Italiā retinēbant.

Carthāginiēnsēs tandem, longō bellō dēfessī, Regulum lēgātum in Italiam mīsērunt ad senātum Rōmānum. Regulus ante profectiōnem sīc iūrāvit: "Aut Rōmānī vestrōs cīvēs domum mittent aut ego ipse Carthāginem redibō captīvus vester." Carthāginiēnsēs, quod dē fidē hostis audācis nōn dubitābant, Regulum Rōmam mīsērunt ad senātum.

446

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

Carthāgine, f., *at Carthage*

(compare **Rōmae**, *at Rome*)

Carthāginem, acc., *to Carthage*

(compare **Rōmam**, *to Rome*)

domum, f., acc. (*to*) *home*

fidē, f., abl., *sincerity*

iūrō (I), *take oath*

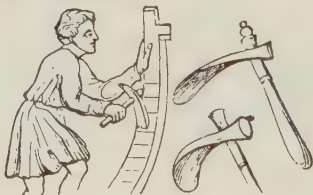
profectiō, **profectiōnis**, f., *de-*

parture

senātum, m., acc., *senate*

Xanthippus, -ī, m., *a Greek general*

¹ Romans of the old, patrician families regularly had three names. The first (**praenōmen**) was the "given," individual name, the second (**nōmen**) was the name of the great group or clan, the **gēns**, to which the man belonged, the third (**cognōmen**) indicated the particular branch of the clan. The first name (**praenōmen**) was regularly abbreviated: **M.** for **Mārcus**; **C.** for **Gaius**; **Q.** for **Quīntus**; **Ti.** for **Tiberius**, etc. This abbreviation was a mark of free birth and high rank. Girls had only one name, the name of the **gēns** or clan. The daughter of **C. Iūlius Caesar** was **Iūlia**; of **M. Tullius Cicerō**, **Tullia**. A second daughter would have been called **Iūlia Secunda**, **Tullia Secunda**.



A SHIP CARPENTER

LESSON LXXXIX

ENGLISH WORDS DIRECT FROM LATIN — REGULUS II

447 For the notebook:

It is interesting to observe that certain Latin plurals have found their way into English without any change in form. Look up these words in an unabridged dictionary.

Put the following words in your notebook, write their meanings, and add to the list from time to time as you meet with new words of like character.

	Latin and English Word	Meaning in English		Latin and English Word	Meaning in English
1	alumnae		9	insignia	
2	alumni		10	loci	
3	antennae		11	minutiae	
4	axes		12	radii	
5	bases		13	regalia	
6	genera		14	stimuli	
7	impedimenta		15	tenebrae	
8	indices		16	vertices	



REGULUS BIDS HIS FRIENDS FAREWELL

448

REGULUS II

Regulus trāns mare ad urbem properāvit; in senātum vēnit; mandāta Carthāginiēnsium exposuit.

Dixit remitti captīvōs nōn esse ūtile: "Agrī hostium," inquit, "vāstātī sunt, nāvēs submersae, oppida aedificiaque incēnsa. Plūrimōs adulēscētēs nōbilēs, quī sunt optimī hostiū ducēs, Rōmae tenētis captīvōs. Pugnāte, patrēs; cōpiās magnās in Africam mittite; retinēte vōbiscum captīvōs. Victōria mox erit vestra. Senex sum. In Africam redibō atque hostibus mē trādā. Neque supplicia timeō neque prō patriā mortem."

Neque uxor neque amīcī senem fortissimum retinēre potuērunt. Ille in Africam reversus ā Carthāginiēnsibus suppliciis crudēlissimīs interfectus est. Bellum tamen, quod vīginti trēs annōs ācerimē gestum erat, ūnūs fortitūdine senis tandem finītum est.

449

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, -tis, m., *young man*
crudēlis, -e, *cruel, severe*

finiō, finīre, finivī, finītus,
end, bring to an end

fortitūdō, -inis, f., *courage*

incendō, incendere, incendi,
incēnsus, *burn*

inquit, *he said* (usually inserted
in a direct quotation)

reversus, *on his return (having
returned)*

senex, senis, m. (629), *old man*
submergō, submergere, sub-
mersi, submersus, *sink*

supplicium, -ī, n., *torture*
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trādi-
tus, *hand over, surrender*

ūtilis, -e, *useful, helpful*

vāstō (I), *lay waste, devastate*



ACTUĀRIOLUM, *a rowboat, barge*

LESSON XC

ADVERBS — CONJUNCTIONS — CORNELIA

450 The words in the following list are of great importance. Some of them occur in every Latin paragraph and in almost every Latin sentence. Most of them have been used in the preceding lessons. The entire list should now be thoroughly memorized.

I

ADVERBS OF TIME

<i>anteā, before</i>	<i>posteā, afterwards</i>
<i>crās, tomorrow</i>	<i>postrīdiē, on the day after</i>
<i>diū, for a long time</i>	<i>prīdiē, on the day before</i>
<i>herī, yesterday</i>	<i>prīmō, at first, in the beginning</i>
<i>hodiē, today</i>	<i>prīmum, first in order, for the first time</i>
<i>interim, meanwhile</i>	<i>saepe, often</i>
<i>iterum, a second time, again</i>	<i>semper, always</i>
<i>meridiē, midday, noon</i>	<i>statim, at once, immediately</i>
<i>mox, soon, presently</i>	<i>tandem, finally</i>
<i>nunc, now, at this time</i>	<i>tum, then, at that time</i>
<i>olim, formerly, once on a time</i>	

2

ADVERBS OF PLACE

<i>hīc, here, in this place</i>	<i>inde, from that place (thereafter)</i>
<i>hūc, hither, to this place</i>	<i>quō, whither, to what place</i>
<i>ibi, there, in that place</i>	<i>ubi, in what place, where</i>

3

OTHER ADVERBS

<i>ferē, almost</i>	<i>subitō, suddenly</i>
<i>frūstrā, in vain</i>	<i>tamen, nevertheless, however</i>
<i>ita, so, in such a manner</i>	<i>vērō (never first), in truth,</i>
<i>item, likewise, also</i>	<i>truly, but, however</i>
<i>sīc, so, in the following manner</i>	

4

CONJUNCTIONS

atque (ac may be used before consonants), <i>and, also</i>	etiam , <i>even, also</i>
aut , <i>or</i>	itaque , <i>and so, therefore</i>
aut . . . aut , <i>either . . . or</i>	nam , <i>because, for</i>
autem (never first), <i>on the other hand, moreover</i>	neque , <i>and not</i>
enim (never first), <i>for, because</i>	neque . . . neque , <i>neither . . . nor</i>
	quod , <i>because</i>

451

CORNELIA

Cornēlia erat clārissima mātṛōna Rōmāna. Erat fīlia Scīpiōnis (nom., **Scīpiō**) illius quī Hannibalem (nom., **Hannibal**), magnum Carthāginiēnsium ducem vicit. Marītus (*husband*) Cornēliae erat Tī. Semprōnius Gracchus.

Semprōniō¹ et Cornēliae¹ erant filiī, Tiberius et Gaius, quōrum Gaius erat iunior. Primīs ab annīs eōrum Cornēlia puerōs litterās Rōmānās atque Graecās diligenter docēbat. Cornēlia filiōs quōs propter eōrum diligentiam saepe laudābat maximē amābat. Olim domina Rōmāna pulchra ōrnāmenta sua Cornēliae ostendēbat. Statim Cornēlia filiōs ad sē vocāvit, et dominae superbē: “Hī,” inquit, “sunt ōrnāmenta mea.”

Cornēlia aut Rōmae aut Tarentī per vītā longā habitāvit. Illa ā populō Rōmānō multum amābātur et post mortem semper memoriā populī tenēbātur. In sepulchrō erat haec īnscriptiō: “Cornēlia mātēr Gracchōrum.”

452

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

īnscriptiō, -ōnis, f., <i>epitaph</i>	ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., <i>jewel</i>
littera, -ae, f., <i>a letter (of the alphabet)</i>	ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus, <i>display</i>
litterae, -ārum, f., plur., <i>letters, literature</i>	sepulchrum, -ī, n., <i>tomb</i>
mātṛōna, -ae, f., <i>matron, wife</i>	Tarentī (284), <i>at Tarentum, a town in Italy</i>

¹ Dative of Possessor (168, 169).

LESSON XCI

THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN -iō

453

Capiō, I take

Principal parts: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

Present stem **cape-**; perfect stem **cēp-**; part. stem **capt-**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis	capimini
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

IMPERFECT

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris	capiēbāmini
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

FUTURE

capiam	capiemus	capiar	capiemur
capies	capietis	capieris	capiemini
capiet	capient	capietur	capientur

PERFECT

cēpī	cēpimus	captus, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{-a, -um} \end{array} \right. \text{est}$	capti, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{-ae, -a} \end{array} \right. \text{sunt}$
cēpisti	cēpistis		
cēpit	cēpērunt		

PLUPERFECT

cēperam	cēperāmus	captus, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{-a, -um} \end{array} \right. \text{erat}$	capti, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{-ae, -a} \end{array} \right. \text{erant}$
cēperās	cēperātis		
cēperat	cēperant		

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō	cēperimus	captus, { -a, -um	{ erō eris erit	capti, { -ae, -a	{ erimus eritis erunt
cēperis	cēperitis				
cēperit	cēperint				

454 Note 1. Like all third conjugation verbs, the present active infinitives have short *e* in the next to the last syllable: *capere*, *dūcere*. Give the present active and the present passive infinitives of *pugnō*, *doceō*, *audiō*. The present passive infinitive of *capiō* is *capi*. See **316**.

Note 2. Third conjugation verbs in *-iō* are like the fourth conjugation verbs in some forms: *capiō* (*audiō*), *capior* (*audior*), *capiunt* (*audiunt*), *capiuntur* (*audiuntur*), *capiēbam*, etc. (*audiēbam*, etc.), *capiam*, *capiēs*, etc. (*audiam*, *audiēs*, etc.).

Note 3. The second person singular passive is *caperis*, like *regeris*, not like *audiris*. What are the corresponding forms of *laudō*, *teneō*, *mūniō*, *excipiō*?

455

DRILL

1 Capit, capitur, capiēbant, capiēbantur, capiam, capiar.
2 Cupis,¹ cupiēs, cupiēbat, cupivērunt, cupiēmus, cupiverit.
3 Fugiant,¹ fūgērunt, fugient, fūgerant, fūgerint. 4 Iacimur, iēcimus, iactī sunt, iactī erātis, iaciēris. 5 Intercipitis, intercēpistis, intercēperitis, intercipi. 6 Praecipiantur, praeceptus est, praeceptus erit, praeceptus erat. 7 Suscipere, suscēpistī, suscēperint, susceptī erunt. 8 Capī, cēpī, iēcī, iaci, praecēpī, praecipī.

456

VOCABULARY

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, <i>take, capture</i>	intercipiō, intercipere, inter- cēpī, interceptus, <i>intercept,</i>
excipiō, excipere, excēpī, ex- ceptus, <i>take, accept</i>	cut off
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, <i>throw,</i> <i>hurl</i>	praecipiō, praecipere, praecēpī, praeceptus, <i>order, advise, in-</i> <i>struct</i>
suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus, <i>undertake</i>	

¹ Review *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation, beginning with paragraph **373**.

Leve fit quod bene fertur onus (Ovid) — *Light the burden which is borne contentedly.*

LESSON XCII

REVIEW OF *Dūcō*, *Capiō* AND *Audiō*

457 In the tenses already learned, compare, form with form, *dūcō* (646), *audiō* (648), *capiō* (647).

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

PRESENT

<i>capiō</i>	<i>audiō</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>audis</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>audit</i>
<i>capimus</i>	<i>audimus</i>
<i>capitis</i>	<i>auditis</i>
<i>capiunt</i>	<i>audiunt</i>

PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT

<i>capior</i>	<i>audior</i>
<i>caperis</i>	<i>audiris</i>
<i>capitur</i>	<i>auditur</i>
<i>capimur</i>	<i>audimur</i>
<i>capiminī</i>	<i>audiminī</i>
<i>capiuntur</i>	<i>audiuntur</i>

IMPERFECT

<i>capiēbam</i>	<i>audiēbam</i>
<i>capiēbās</i>	<i>audiēbās</i>
<i>capiēbat</i>	<i>audiēbat</i>
<i>capiēbāmus</i>	<i>audiēbāmus</i>
<i>capiēbātis</i>	<i>audiēbātis</i>
<i>capiēbant</i>	<i>audiēbant</i>

IMPERFECT

<i>capiēbar</i>	<i>audiēbar</i>
<i>capiēbāris</i>	<i>audiēbāris</i>
<i>capiēbātur</i>	<i>audiēbātur</i>
<i>capiēbāmur</i>	<i>audiēbāmur</i>
<i>capiēbāminī</i>	<i>audiēbāminī</i>
<i>capiēbantur</i>	<i>audiēbantur</i>

FUTURE

<i>capiam</i>	<i>audiam</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>audies</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>audiet</i>
<i>capiemus</i>	<i>audiemus</i>
<i>capietis</i>	<i>audietis</i>
<i>capient</i>	<i>audient</i>

FUTURE

<i>capiar</i>	<i>audiar</i>
<i>capieris</i>	<i>audieris</i>
<i>capietur</i>	<i>audietur</i>
<i>capiemur</i>	<i>audiemur</i>
<i>capiemini</i>	<i>audiemini</i>
<i>capientur</i>	<i>audientur</i>

PERFECT		PERFECT	
cēpī, etc.	audīvī	captus sum, etc.	audītus sum
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
cēperam, etc.	audīveram	captus eram, etc.	audītus eram
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
cēperō, etc.	audīverō	captus erō, etc.	audītus erō

458

EXERCISES

1 Capiunt, mūniuntur, excipitur, audītur. 2 Fugit, fūgit, venit, vēnit, vincit, vīcit. 3 Iacit, iēcit, facit, fēcit, capit, cēpit. 4 Iacis, iaceris, iaciēris, cēpērunt, gessit. 5 Iaciēbātur, iactum est, vincuntur, vincentur. 6 Bellum gestum erat; hostis victus erit; pīlum iactum est. 7 Quem vīcistis? Hostem nōn interfēcimus. 8 Caperis, cēperis, capiēris, capiēminī, capiminī. 9 Pīlum iacitur, iaciētur; labōrēs suscipiuntur. 10 Venītis, vēnistis, intellegēris, audiēris. 11 Hostēs Rōmam vīcī scīvērunt; dux oppida capī intellēxit. 12 Urbem mūnīrī audīvērunt; equitēs fugere dīxit.

459 1 To know, to be thrown, to be fortified, to conquer. 2 I shall make, you will know, I shall praise, they will be. 3 They will carry on wars; they undertake the task. 4 Many cities are being taken; war had been carried on. 5 Wars will be carried on; cities have been taken. 6 Weapons were being hurled; soldiers will have been killed. 7 Can you catch the weapons? The weapon will be caught. 8 You, Marcus, are being exhausted by the war, will be exhausted. 9 They cannot conquer our men; our men will defend themselves. 10 They say that the messenger is being taken near the gate. 11 We knew that the soldiers were being killed by the enemy. 12 Who said that javelins were being hurled against the wall?

NOTE. Teachers who desire to include in their first year work some or all of the topics treated in the Supplementary Lessons may now pass directly to page 219.

Mōribus antiquis rēs stat Rōmānā virisque (Ennius) — *Rome stands by her ancient customs and great men.*

LESSON XCIII

ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM *faciō* — PREDICATE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES REVIEWED

(16, 17, 24)

460 Give five English words derived from *faciō*.

Put the following table in your notebook, filling in the blank spaces as indicated with English words derived from *faciō* and the prefixes given. In the English derivative the **fac-** of *faciō* will appear as *fec* or *fic*.

Verb, *faciō*, *do*, *make*

Principal parts: *faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factus*

Prefix	Related English Words
ad (af)	(3 words)
de	(3 ")
ex (ef)	(3 ")
in	(3 ")
per	(4 ")
prae (pre)	(2 ")
re	(2 ")
sub (suf)	(3 ")

461

VOCABULARY

callidus, -a, -um, *wary, shrewd, clever*

cōnscribō, **cōnscribere**, **cōnscripsi**, **cōnscriptus**, *enroll*

dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum**, *right*
(in fem., often *right hand*)

gravis, -e, *heavy, severe, serious*

incolumis, -e, *unharmcd, safe*
prūdētia, -ae, f., *carefulness,*

foresight

sapiēns, **sapientis**, *wise, prudent*

sinister, **sinistra**, **sinistrum**,
left (in fem., often *left hand*)

462 a

EXERCISES

1 Ego sum cīvis Rōmānus sed Rōmae nōn habitō. 2 Vir cīvītātis sapientissimus rēx nōn dēlēctus est. 3 Cīvēs illius urbis ā populō Rōmānō appellātī erant sociī. 4 Cicerō, clārissimus ōrātōrum Rōmānōrum, cōsul dēlēctus erat. 5 Eī quī in urbibus finitimīs habitābant cīvēs Rōmānī saepe cōscribēbantur. 6 Haec loca in sinistrā nōn erunt castrīs idōnea. 7 Filiae rēgīnae nōn habēbantur puellae pulcherrimae. 8 Is, quī vulnus grave in proeliō accēpit, ab imperātōre habitus est mīlitum fortissimus. 9 In dextrā proelī parte equitēs fuerant incolumēs. 10 Post illud proelium paucī pedestrēs in sinistrā proelī parte erant incolumēs. 11 Dux pedestrium cōpiārum, maximam propter virtūtem, dēlēctus est lēgātus. 12 Magnā prūdentiā Fabius ā cīvibus saepe appellātus est callidus.

462 b 1 The Roman consul's power was very great. 2 A consul's power was often greater than his wisdom. 3 A shrewd man is often more powerful than a good king. 4 That wise Cato was called "Censor" by the Roman people. 5 The wounds of those cavalrymen were considered (held) very severe. 6 Those villages are considered the most beautiful of all Italy. 7 This building on the left is considered the highest in our city. 8 Caesar was called an enemy by the friends of Pompeius. 9 The fields on the left, at the base of (sub) the mountain, are suitable for a camp.



A ROMAN AQUEDUCT IN FRANCE

The Latin play, Horatius, that follows is from a little volume entitled "Decem Fabulae," published by the Clarendon Press, London, England. The material that it contains offers an excellent range of choice in plays suitable for the use of classes in high schools and academies.

"Decem Fabulae" may be purchased through the Clarendon Press, New York. Teachers are advised to secure a copy.

In the introduction to this book, Dr. Rouse makes the following pertinent remarks regarding the use of Latin plays:

These plays may be read, or they may be learnt for acting, or both, and they help to supply reading material for a stage where Latin authors are of little use. The principle once learnt, any teacher may make his own plays: and this is the best thing educationally. He may read or tell a story from Roman history or legend, and call upon certain persons to take its parts: then and there he and his class together may make up the parts, which may be improved or added to in the study. In the end he will have a home-made play, which will need no learning, for it will have been evolved from his class; and with care and judgment he may teach a great deal in this way. Thus also we get from the beginning that which is the supreme end of language teaching, an opportunity for self-expression.

Before referring to the special vocabulary for the English equivalents of Latin words, the pupil should, so far as he can, obtain their meanings from: (1) the context (their thought relation with other words); (2) their relation with other Latin words already known; (3) related English words. Finally, the pupil should consult the vocabulary to check the correctness of his results.



VITULUS, calf

LESSON XCIV

HORATIUS — A LATIN PLAY

464 Horatius presents material for several lessons. Words that have occurred in previous lessons are in the general vocabulary; new words are in the special vocabulary at the end of the play.

PERSONAE

Porsenna: <i>rēx Etruscōrum</i>	SCAENA II
Sextus Tarquinius: <i>filius Tarquinī Superbī</i>	Valerius } <i>cōsulēs Rōmānī</i> Pulvillus }
Mamilius: <i>rēx Tusculī (of Tusculum), socius Porsennae</i>	Horātius Cocles } <i>senātōrēs Rōmānī</i> Spurius Lartius } Titus Herminius }
SCAENA I	
Tarquinius Superbus: <i>rēx Rōmānōrum, exsul</i>	Vigil Prīmus } <i>Rōmānī</i> Vigil Secundus }
Vigilēs: <i>Etruscī</i>	Cīvēs: <i>Rōmānī</i>
Ducēs Militum: <i>Etruscī</i>	Militēs: <i>Etruscī</i>

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN CASTRIS ETRUSCŌRUM

Vesperī. Porsenna ante tabernāculum suum stat; ā dextrā¹ Mamilius; ā sinistrā² Tarquinius Superbus; ā tergō Sextus Tarquinius. Ante eōs ducēs militum imperāta manent. Longē ā dextrā stant vigilēs, hī Rōmam prōspectant.

POR. Bene pugnāvistis hodiē, O ducēs, vōs et militēs Etruscī.

DUC. Grātiās tibi agimus, rēx maxime; prō patriā et prō tē pugnāvimus.

POR. Quōmodo, Mamilī, hunc montem cēpistī, ubi iam castra posuimus?

SEX. Iāniculum vocātur hic mōns.

SUP. Iāniculum habēmus; facile erit Rōmam capere.

POR. Quōmodo Iāniculum cēpistī, Mamilī? Nārrā nōbīs!

DUC. Bene nōs dūxit Mamilius, O rēx maxime!

POR. Hoc sciō; attendite animum et audīte!

¹ At his right hand.

² At his left hand.

MAM. O rēx maxime, Iāniculum tenēbat Pulvillus cōsul cum centum militibus; iuvenis est et malus dux; male imperat neque Rōmānī illi pārere volunt. At diū nōbīs resistēbant; neque facile erat illud parvum agmen dē monte pellere. Tandem centum militēs circum montem mīsī; hī ā tergō Rōmānōs subitō oppugnant. Pulvillus pavidus tergum vertit; cum quīnquāgintā hominibus effugere potest; cēterōs occīdimus. Ille, tertius in ōrdine ducum [*Ducem quendam indicat*], prīmus in summum montem pervēnit. Hostēs illum vulnerāverant et signiferum occīderant. Statim ille signum ē dextrā mortuī trāxit et in summō monte posuit.

POR. Bene fēcistī, Mamilī; bene fēcērunt tuī militēs. Tū, dux vulnerāte, hūc venī! [*Dux tertius appropinquat.*] Accipe¹ hoc praemium! [*Armilla brachiō circumdat. Tum dux sē in ordinem recēpit.*] Crās Rōmam oppugnābimus.

DUC. [*laetis clāmōribus.*] Crās Rōmam capiēmus.

SUP. Crās rēx iterum erō Rōmānōrum.

SEX. Crās omnēs inimicōs occīdam.

SUP. Crās omnēs nōbilēs in vincula cōniciam.

SEX. Vae victīs! nōs enim Rōmā expulērunt.

SUP. Ignāvī hominēs rēgem habēre nōlēbant; poenās crās dabunt.

DUC. [*murmurant.*] Fortēs, nōn ignāvī, sunt Rōmānī. Fortēs hostēs amāmus; ignāvōs ōdimus amīcōs.

POR. Quandō et quōmodo Rōmam oppugnābimus?

SEX. Statim hoc faciēmus; sī enim Rōmānī pontem Sublicium frangent, neque Tiberim trānsire neque urbem intrāre poterimus.

DUC. Nōs quidem hodiē diū pugnāvimus; sine somnō militēs nōn bene pugnābunt.

SUP. Vigil! Vigil!

VIG. Quid vīs, rēx?

SUP. Quid nunc Rōmānī faciunt?

¹ Imperative, third conjugation. Review 184.

VIG. Omnēs intrā moenia sē recēpērunt. Vigilēs tamen ē moenibus prōspectant.

POR. Frēgēruntne pontem?

VIG. Minimē, rēx maxime! Stat pōns.

POR. Quālis erit nox?

VIG. Obscūra; nūbilāre enim coepit, neque lūna fulgēbit. Etiam nunc vigilēs Rōmānōs vidēre nōn possumus; nōn iam pōns in cōspectū est; hāc nocte caecī erunt vigilēs.

POR. Bene dīxistis, vigilēs. Hoc igitur cōsiliū omnēs audīte! Quārtā vigiliā, dum Rōmānī adhūc dormiunt, ad pontem silentiō appropinquābimus. Antequam illūc pervēnerimus, nōs neque vidēre neque audire vigilēs poterunt. Nullā morā pontem trānsībimus et portam facile rumpēmus, dum Rōmānī arma petunt et tōtā urbe trepidant.

duc. Bonum cōsiliū cēpistī, O rēx maxime! Vincēmus.

POR. Hoc cōsiliū, ducēs, militibus nūntiāte! Deinde ūsque ad quārtam vigiliam dormīte!

duc. Audīmus et pārēbimus.

POR. Vigilēs, cum quārtā vigilia erit, ē somnō nōs omnēs excitāte!

VIG. Audīmus et pārēbimus.

SCAENA SECUNDA. RŌMAE

A sinistrā appārent moenia urbis; Tiberis praeter moenia fluit; rīpam ulteriōrem ad portam urbis iungit pōns Sublicius. Vigilēs ē summīs moenibus prōspectant. In rīpā ulteriōre agmen Etruscōrum ad Pontem Sublicium silentiō appropinquat, sed adhūc procul abest, cum sōl surgere incipit. Primā lūce vigilēs hostēs vident.

VIG. I. Audīsne aliquid?

VIG. II. Quam timidus es! Ventus aquam agitat.

VIG. I. Pedēs hominum audiō.

VIG. II. Nōlī hoc crēdere. Sōl mox surget; tum vidēre poterimus.

VIG. I. Aliquid videō. Aliquid sē movet.

VIG. II. Agmen est. Hostēs sunt.

VIG. I. Surgite, Rōmānī. Hostēs adsunt.

VIGILES. Surgite, Rōmānī. Hostēs adsunt.

[*Civēs armātī portam aperiunt et prōspectant. Valerius et Pulvillus in pontem currunt.*]

VAL. Frangite pontem, cīvēs.

PUL. Tempus nōn dabunt hostēs. Eheu, nōs primōs occīdent.

Quid faciam? Quō fugiam?

VAL. Silē, ignāve! Cūr herī frangere pontem nōn iussistī?

Tū enim imperātor erās. Hodiē ego Rōmānis imperō. [*Pulvillus in urbem redit. Multī cīvēs in portā appārent.*] Audīte, cīvēs! Sī duo vel trēs hostibus breve temporis spatium resistere poterunt, cēterī pontem frangent. Ita urbem servāre poterimus.

HOR. [*inter cīvēs appāret.*] Quid dicēbat cōsul?

CIV. Sī quis hostibus resistet, nōs pontem frangere poterimus.

HOR. Ego, O cōsul, pontem dēfendam. Quis mēcum hoc prō patriā faciet?

SPU. [*ex cīvibus prōdit.*] Ego tibi socius erō, fortis Horātī.

HOR. Tū bonus eris socius. Tēcum bene pugnābō. Tamen sī trēs erimus, tōtum hostium agmen facile repellēmus.

TIT. [*ex cīvibus prōdit.*] Ecce tertium! Prō Rōmā et Rōmānis cum hīs comitibus pugnābō.

VAL. Vōbīs agō grātiās.

CIV. Vōbīs grātiās agimus.

[*Etruscī appropinquant.*]

POR. Currite, militēs! Pontem occupāte!

VAL. Properāte vōs! currunt enim hostēs.

[*Trēs pontem trānseunt.*]

HOR. Ego medius stābō; tū, Spurī, ā dextrā stā; Herminī, tū ā sinistrā!

[*Etruscī ad pontem adveniunt.*]

POR. Oppugnāte, militēs! Istōs trēs occidite et urbem intrāte!

VAL. Secūrēs sūmite, cīvēs! sūmite gladiōs! frangite pontem!

POR. Mamili, mēcum manē! Herī satis pugnābās.

Sextus contrā suam urbem hominēs dūcet.

VAL. Dā mihi secūrem, tū! Ita, ita, lignum frangite.

[*Ipse pontem ferit, dum militēs Etruscī pontem oppugnant.*]

SPU. Cavē, Herminī! ā sinistrā oppugnābunt.

TIT. Parātus sum; ecce, undique veniunt.

HOR. Dūra verbera date! Nōn multī eōdem tempore nōs oppugnāre possunt.

PUL. [*in moenibus appāret.*] Venīte, vōs, ad moenia! [*Multī cīvēs in moenia veniunt.*] Sagittās mittite! Iacula cōnicite!

SEX. Mēcum venīte, militēs! Ego Horātium occīdam. Mihi quidem nōn resistet.

CIV. Cuius vōcem audīmus?

VIG. I. Sextus Tarquinius hostēs dūcit.

CIV. Apage, perfide Sexte! Num audēs Rōmam revenīre?

SEX. Mox alia clāmābitis, cum vōs in vīcula cōniciam et in crucem mittam.

CIV. I in malam crucem tū! Occīde Sextum, O Horātī! Etiam si hostēs nōs vīcerint, gaudēbimus quod perfidus Sextus mortuus erit.

[*Sextus Horātium oppugnat; Spurius et Titus contrā aliōs pugnant.*]

PUL. Cavēte, sagittārii! Nōlite nostrōs occīdere! Cavēte, iaculātōrēs! Suprā capita nostrōrum iacula cōnicite!

VIG. II. Uter vincet? Ecce, noster illum ferit!

CIV. Iō triumphe! Mortuus est Sextus.

PUL. Minimē, surgit. Horātī, iterum ferī!

[*Alter Horātium oppugnat, dum Mamilius Sextum ē periculō trahit.*]

CIV. Quis auxilium fert?

PUL. Mamilius.

CIV. Ecce, Sextum ē periculō trahit.

VIG. I. Nunc redit; ipse Horātium oppugnābit.

CIV. Eheu, nōn mortuus est Sextus.

VAL. Operam date, cīvēs; ecce, paene frāctus est pōns.

CIV. Iō, Spurius hostem occīdit; nunc alterum ferit.

VIG. II. Eheu! Horātium vulnerāvit Mamilius.

CIV. Eheu! Spurī, auxilium dā!

VIG. I. Ecce! Mamilium repellunt.

VAL. [*māgnā vōce.*] Redīte, Rōmānī! paene frāctus est pōns.
Iam, iam redī, Horātī!

CIV. Redīte, Rōmānī! paene frāctus est pōns! Nō^s servā-
vistis; iam vōs servāte!

HOR. Redīte, comitēs! dum tempus manet, redīte!

SPU. }
TIT. } Tū etiam nōbiscum redī! Sine tē nōn redībimus.

CIV. Redīte, fortēs virī! Iam iam cadit pōns.

HOR. Redīte, comitēs! Vōbīs hoc imperō. Cōnsilium habeo
bonum; mē hostēs nōn occīdent.

SPU. }
TIT. } Pārēmus. Valē! [*Ad portam redeunt.*]

CIV. Nōlīte Horātium relinquere!

SPU. Ipse imperāvit. Pārēmus. [*Spurius et Titus urbem
intran.*]

CIV. Sērō redībīs, Horātī. Cadit pōns.

HOR. [*Scūtum ad cīvēs cōnicit.*] Excipite, cīvēs, scūtum!
Nōn honestum est scūtum relinquere. [*Gladium in mediōs
hostēs cōnicit.*] Vōs, hostēs, gladium excipite! Tibi mē com-
mittō, Tiberis. [*Dum pōns cadit, Horatius in flūmen dēsilit.*]

PUL. Quid facit? Vulnerātus est; nōn potest natāre.

CIV. Ita; flūmen trānsit; ad portam natat.

VAL. Dēmīttite fūnes! [*Cīvēs fūnem dēmīttunt.*]

CIV. Fūnemprehendit. Trahite! trahite!

OMNES. Trahite! trahite! [*Cīvēs Horātium ex aquā in portam
trahunt.*]

VAL. }	Senātus	} Rōmānus tibi grātiās agit.
PUL. }		
CIV. Populusque		
OMNES.	Rōmam servāvistī.	

FINIS FABULAE

HORATIUS

465

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

(All words marked with an asterisk should be memorized.)

*accipiō, accipere, accēpī, ac- ceptus, <i>accept, receive</i>	cadō, cadere, cecidī, casū- rus, <i>fall</i>
adhūc, adv., <i>still, yet, up to this time</i>	caecus, -a, -um, <i>blind</i>
agitō (I), <i>stir, ruffle.</i>	caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautū- rus, <i>beware</i>
agmen, agminis, n., <i>marching column of soldiers</i>	cēteri, -ae, -a, adj., <i>the others, the rest of</i>
aliquid, indef. pron., <i>some- thing, anything</i>	circumdō, circumdare, cir- cumedī, circumdatus, <i>place around</i>
antequam, conj., <i>before</i>	*coepit, (it) <i>has begun</i>
apage, interj., <i>away with thee! begone!</i>	*coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectus, <i>hurl, cast</i>
aperiō, aperire, aperuī, aper- tus, <i>open</i>	(in) cōspectū, (in) <i>sight</i>
appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, <i>appear, come into view</i>	crux, crucis, f., <i>cross, torture</i>
armilla, -ae, f., <i>armlet, brace- let</i>	dēmittō, dēmittere, dēmisi, dēmissus, <i>lower, let down</i>
armātus, -a, -um, <i>armed</i>	dēsiliō, dēsilire, dēsiluī, —, <i>leap down</i>
attendite animum, <i>attention!</i> (<i>pay attention!</i>)	*dum, conj., <i>while</i>
audeō, audēre, ausus sum, <i>dare</i>	dūrus, -a, -um, <i>hard, rough</i>
bracchium, -ī, n., <i>forearm</i>	ecce, interj., <i>look! behold!</i>
	effugiō, effugere, effūgī, ef- fugitūrus, <i>flee away, escape</i>

ēheu, interj., *alas!*

Etruscī, -ōrum, m., an ancient people of Italy

excitō (1), *wake up, arouse*

exsul, exsulis, m., *exile*

feriō, ferire, *strike*

fert (irr.), *brings, carries*

fluō, fluere, fluxī, —, *flow*

frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractus, *break down*

fūnis, fūnis, m., *rope*

gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum, *rejoice*

grātia, -ae, f., *favor; plur., thanks*

grātiās agere, *to extend thanks*

honestus, -a, -um, *honorable*

I in malam crucem, tū! *go to Hades, yourself!*

iaculum, -ī, n., *javelin*

iaculātor, iaculātōris, m., *javelin thrower*

igitur, adv., *therefore*

ignāvus, -a, -um, *cowardly*

illūc, adv., *thither, to that place*

imperātum, -ī, n., *command, order*

imperō (1), *command, order (with dat.)*

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus, *begin*

indicō (1), *point out, show to a place*

intrā, prep. with acc., *within*

iō, interj., *Hurrah!*

iste, ista, istud, pron., *that (near the person addressed)*

lignum, -ī, n., *wood, timber*

lūna, -ae, f., *moon*

minimē (superl. of parum), *least, not at all*

moenia, moenium, n., *fortifications*

mora, -ae, f., *delay*

mortuus, -a, -um, *dead*

murmurō (1), *mutter*

natō (1), *swim*

nōlī (imper. 2d sing.), *be unwilling, do not*

nōlite (imper. 2d plur.), *be unwilling, do not*

nōlō (irr.), *be unwilling*

nūbilō (1), *be cloudy*

obscurus, -a, -um, *dark*

occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus, *cut down, kill*

ōdimus, *we despise*

opera, -ae, f., *aid, work*

parātus, -a, -um, *ready, prepared*

pāreō, pārēre, pārui, pāritūrus (with dat.), *obey*

pavidus, -a, -um, *terrified*

perfidus, -a, -um, *traitorous*

persōna, -ae, f., *person*

*poenās dare, *to pay the penalty*

praeter, prep. with acc., *beyond, past*

- prehendō, prehendere, prehendi, prehēnsus, *seize*
 procul, adv., *at a distance*
 prōdeō (irr.), *step forward*
 prospectō (1), *look out upon, view*
 quālis, -e, adj., *of what sort?*
 quando, adv., *when*
 quendam, *certain, agrees with*
 Ducem
 *quidem, adv. (post-positive), *certainly, at least*
 quis (following sī), *anyone*
 quōmodo, adv., *how? in what manner?*
 *recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *take back, receive*
 redī (imper. sing.), *return!*
 redīte (imper. plur.), *return!*
 *repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repulse*
 *resistō, resistere, restiti, —, (with dat.), *resist*
 reveniō, revenīre, revēnī, —, *come back*
 rīpa, -ae, f., *bank of a river*
 rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus, *break down*
 sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*
 sagittārii, -ōrum, m., *archers*
 *satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently*
 scaena, -ae, f., *scene*
 scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*
 secūris, secūris, f., *ax*
 sēro, adv., *late, too late*
 *sī, conj., *if*
 signifer, signiferī, m., *standard-bearer*
 silentium, -ī, n., *silence*
 sileō, silēre, siluī, —, *be silent*
 somnus, -ī, m., *sleep*
 stō, stāre, steti, statūrus, *stand*
 sublicius, -a, -um, *made of piles*
 summus, -a, -um, *highest, top of*
 *sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmp-tus, *take, assume*
 suprā, prep. with acc., *over, above*
 surgō, surgere, surrēxī, sur-rēctus, *rise*
 tabernāculum, -ī, n., *tent*
 tergum, -ī, n., *back, rear, ā*
 tergō, *behind, in the rear*
 *trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, *pull, drag*
 trepidō (1), *hurry with fright*
 triumphē! interj., *Victory!*
 ulterior, ulterius, adj., *farther*
 undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides*
 ūsque, adv., *even, till*
 vae, interj., *woe!*
 vel, conj., *or*
 ventus, -ī, m., *wind*

verber, verberis, n. (sing.
rare), *blow, stroke*

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus,
turn

vesperī, adv., *in the evening*

victus, -a, -um, *conquered*

vulnerātus, -a, -um, *wounded*

vigil, vigilis, m., *watchman,*
sentinel

vis (irr.), *you wish*

volunt (irr.), *they wish,*
they are willing

*vox, vocis, f., *voice*



A DISH OF FRUIT

mālum, -ī, n., *apple*

persicum, -ī, n., *peach*

pīrum, -ī, n., *pear*

racēmus, -ī, m., *bunch of*
grapes

ūva, -ae, f., *grape*



Courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art

JULIUS CAESAR AS DICTATOR

LESSON XCV

CAESAR I

466 Annō ante Christum quīnquāgēsīmō octāvō, C. Iūlius Caesar prōvinciae ¹ Galliae ā senātū praefectus est prōcōsul. Eō quidem tempore illa prōvincia, quae ā flūmine Padō per Alpēs Maritimās clārās ōramque maritimam ad Pŷrēnaeos montēs pertinēbat, iam erat magna. Caesar nōvem per annōs bella gerēbat; quibus bellīs plūrima oppida expugnāta sunt, fortissimae gentēs cōfectae victaeque, audācissimī ducēs Gal-lōrum aut captī sunt aut interfectī.

Caesar legiōnēs in Britanniam bis trānsportāvit atque nōminis Rōmānī terrōrem animīs² incolārum illius insulae iniēcīt. In flūmine Rhēnō duōs pontēs, quibus cōpiās in Germā-niam trādūxit, aedificāvit. Germānī quī et Galliae et Italiae saepe fuerant terrōrī, tum primum militēs Rōmānōs suā in terrā vidērunt. Per Germāniae silvās palūdēsque immēnsās in barbarōs legiōnēs dūcere timēbat Caesar; tamen paucōs interfēcīt, paucōs captīvōs fēcīt, cēterōs quī longius fūgerant capere nōn potuit.

467

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

bis, adv., *twice*

Christus, -ī, m., *Christ*

immēnsus, -a, -um, *vast*

iniciō, inicere, iniēcī, iniectus, *throw into, inspire*

maritimus, -a, -um, *maritime*

Padus, -ī, m., *the Po river*

palūs, palūdis, f., *swamp*

praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, *place in command of*

prōcōsul, prōcōsulis, m., *pro-consul, governor of a province*

quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um, *fiftieth*

ā senātū, *by the senate*

¹ Dative. Some verbs compounded with the preposition *prae* govern a noun or pronoun in the dative case: Prōvinciae praefectus est, *was placed in command of the province.*

² Dative, indirect object of iniēcīt.

LESSON XCVI

CAESAR II

468

VOCABULARY

adiungō, adiungere, adiūnxī, impōnō, impōnere, imposuī,
 adiūnctus, *add to, annex* impositus, *put upon, impose*
 dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, incipiō, incipere, incēpī, in-
 dēpositus, *lay down* ceptus, *begin*

CAESAR II

469 Tandem virtūte prūdentiāque Caesaris, tōta Gallia longō bellō dēfessa, in potestātem Populī Rōmānī vēnit. Multīs victōriīs Caesar ad imperium Rōmānum magnās terrās et nātiōnēs potentissimās adiūnxit. Tantus erat labor liberis Galliae gentibus ¹ iugum Rōmānum impōnere.

Sed Rōmae Pompēius, quī Caesaris potestātem diū timēbat, huius rūinam atque mortem cupiēbat. Quae tamen efficere ille quidem nōn potuit quod Caesar, quem senātus imperium prōcōnsulāre dēpōnere et legiōnēs trādere iusserat, negāvit. Quī tempore comitibus quī aderant sic dixit Caesar: "Iacta est alea." Tum, sine ūllā morā legiōnem trāns flūmen Rubicōnem in Italiam dūxit. Quō modō inceptum est Bellum Cīvile, quō in bellō Pompēius interfectus est et clārissimus potentissimusque Rōmānōrum omnium factus est Caesar.

470

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

alea, -ae, f., *die, dice*
 Bellum Cīvile, *the Civil War*
 efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effec-
 tus, *bring about*
 nātiō, -ōnis, f., *nation, tribe*
 negō (ī), *deny, refuse*

Pompēius, Pompēi, m., *Pom-
 pey*, a famous Roman
 prōcōnsulāris, -e, *proconsular*
 Rubicō, Rubicōnis, m., *the
 Rubicon (river)*
 tantus, -a, -um, *so great*

¹ Dative. Besides the direct object, iugum, impōnere takes an indirect object, gentibus, because of the added meaning that im (in) gives to pōnō.

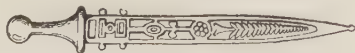
LESSON XCVII

VOCABULARY REVIEW

471

TIME-LIMITED TEST, NO. 9

1 accipiō	26 nōbilis
2 altitūdō	27 nōminō
3 ante	28 ōrō
4 arbor	29 pertineō
5 callidus	30 perveniō
6 capiō	31 praescribō
7 captīvus	32 prūdentia
8 cōgō	33 pūniō
9 coniciō	34 quidem
10 cōscribō	35 recipiō
11 contineō	36 removeō
12 cum	37 repellō
13 cupiō	38 resistō
14 deinde	39 sapiēns
15 dexter	40 satis
16 dubitō	41 sī
17 dum	42 sinister
18 excipiō	43 somnus
19 gravis	44 sūmō
20 iaciō	45 suspiciō
21 imperātor	46 tōtus
22 incolumis	47 trahō
23 intercipiō	48 ūllus
24 legiō	49 uter
25 nāvis	50 vōx



SWORD IN SHEATH

472

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 accept, receive | 26 noble, famous |
| 2 height, depth | 27 name |
| 3 before | 28 beg, ask |
| 4 tree | 29 reach, extend |
| 5 clever, shrewd | 30 come through, arrive |
| 6 take | 31 prescribe, direct |
| 7 captive | 32 foresight, carefulness |
| 8 drive together, collect | 33 punish |
| 9 hurl | 34 indeed, certainly |
| 10 enroll | 35 take back, receive |
| 11 hold together, contain | 36 move back, remove |
| 12 with | 37 drive back, repulse |
| 13 desire | 38 resist |
| 14 then, next | 39 wise, prudent |
| 15 right (hand) | 40 enough, quite |
| 16 doubt, hesitate | 41 if |
| 17 while | 42 left (hand) |
| 18 take, accept | 43 sleep |
| 19 heavy, serious | 44 take, assume |
| 20 throw, hurl | 45 undertake |
| 21 commander | 46 all, whole of |
| 22 unharmed, safe | 47 drag |
| 23 interrupt, cut off | 48 any |
| 24 legion | 49 which (of two)? |
| 25 ship | 50 voice |



PRŌRA, ship's prow

Prō patriā nōn timidus mori (Horace) — *Not afraid to die for his country.*

LESSON XCVIII

CURTIUS — ROMAN MONEY

473

VOCABULARY

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, <i>close</i>	iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i> ; as noun, <i>young man</i>
complēō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, <i>fill</i>	perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī, perterritus, <i>alarm, frighten</i>
suprā, prep. with acc., <i>above</i>	

CURTIUS

474 Olim mediā nocte in Forō Rōmānō terra subitō rupta lacūnam dehīscētem aperuit. Augurēs dīligentēs ab deīs Rōmānīs auxilium frūstrā petēbant. Cīvēs lacūnam maximō omnium labōre complēre nōn poterant. Haruspīcēs tandem sic respondērunt: “Nūllō modō nisi (*if not*) sacrificiō eius quod Rōmae est cārissimum lacūna complēri potest. Hōc sacrificiō lacūna claudētur et urbs cōservābitur.”

Tum iuvenis nōbilis, nōmine Curtius, deōs invocāns clāmāvit: “Nihil melius quam fortis virī vītā habet Rōma.” Quod dīcēns (*while saying*), equō vėlōcī vectus (*borne*) fulgentibus in armīs in lacūnam sē praecipitāvit. Punctō temporis suprā virum equumque clausa est terra. Rōma cōservāta est.

Omnium gentium hominēs hanc dē Curtiō fābulam ad nostrum tempus liberīs nārrant.

475

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

aperuit, <i>revealed</i>	invocāns, <i>while invoking</i>
augurēs, <i>soothsayers</i>	lacūna, -ae, f., <i>chasm</i>
Curtius, <i>Curtius</i>	praecipitō (I), <i>throw headlong</i>
dehīscētem, <i>yawning</i>	punctō temporis, <i>in a moment</i>
fulgentibus, <i>shining, resplendent</i>	ruptus, -a, -um, <i>burst asunder</i>
haruspīcēs, <i>diviners</i>	sacrificium, -ī, n., <i>sacrifice</i>

ROMAN MONEY

477 For nearly five hundred years after the foundation of the city, the Romans coined no metal except copper. Their copper coins were six in number, each being distinguished by a particular device, which is used with almost perfect uniformity. These coins bore the following names:

- 1 **As** — having a head of Janus = (268–217, B.C.) \$.02
- 2 **Sēmis**, $\frac{1}{2}$ As — having a head of Jove
- 3 **Triēns**, $\frac{1}{3}$ As — having a head of Minerva
- 4 **Quādrāns**, $\frac{1}{4}$ As — having a head of Hercules
- 5 **Sextāns**, $\frac{1}{6}$ As — having a head of Mercury
- 6 **Uncia**, $\frac{1}{12}$ As — having a head of Roma

On the reverse side of each coin was the prow of a ship. On the **As** appears the numeral **1**; on the **Sēmis** the letter **S**; on each of the others round dots indicate the number of **Unciae**, — thus the **Uncia** has one ●, the **Sextāns** two ●●, the **Quādrāns** three ●●●, the **Triēns** four ●●●●. The relative value and size varied with the weight of the coin.



As
(originally twelve ounces of copper)



SĒMIS



TRIĒNS



QUĀDRĀNS



SEXTĀNS



UNCIA

NOTE. The genitives are: *assis*, *sēmissis*, *trientis*, *quādrantis*, *sextantis*, *ūnciae*. All are masculine except *ūncia*, which is feminine.

LESSON XCIX

ONE HUNDRED WORD TEST, NO. 3

478 TIME LIMIT, 12 MINUTES — DEGREE OF
ACCURACY 90%

1 aequus	19 mors
2 ante	20 mūniō
3 celeriter	21 nam
4 dēpōnō	22 nūllus
5 doceō	23 octō
6 ēgregius	24 paucī
7 exemplum	25 pellō
8 exspectō	26 post
9 forum	27 posteā
10 gladius	28 procēdō
11 grātus	29 quīntus
12 iaciō	30 sextus
13 idōneus	31 sinister
14 iter	32 soror
15 lēgātus	33 tardus
16 liberō	34 teneō
17 miser	35 uxor
18 moneō	36 vīgintī

479

- 1 Write the principal parts of **doceō**, **faciō**, **mūniō**, and **vincō**.
- 2 Write synopses as follows:
 - (a) **regō**, in the active indicative third person singular;
 - (b) **capīō**, in the active and passive indicative, third person plural.
- 3 Decline **vir** and **corpus** throughout; **ōrdō** and **cīvis** in the plural.



CORONATION OF JUPITER. Appiani.

Courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art

LESSON C

REVIEW OF THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN -iō — *Iaciō* AND ITS COMPOUNDS

480

VOCABULARY

difficultās, difficultātis, f., <i>difficulty</i>	praedicō, praedicere, praedixi, praedictus, <i>foretell</i>
ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, <i>cast out</i>	praesidium, -ī, n., <i>guard, garrison, defense</i>
impellō, impellere, impulī, impulsus, <i>incite, impel</i>	prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēcī, prōiectus, <i>throw or fling away</i>
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f., <i>greatness</i>	prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, <i>place before, propose</i>
ob, prep. with acc., <i>on account of, because of</i>	trāiciō, trāicere, triēcī, trāiectus, <i>throw across, pierce</i>

481 Review (647).

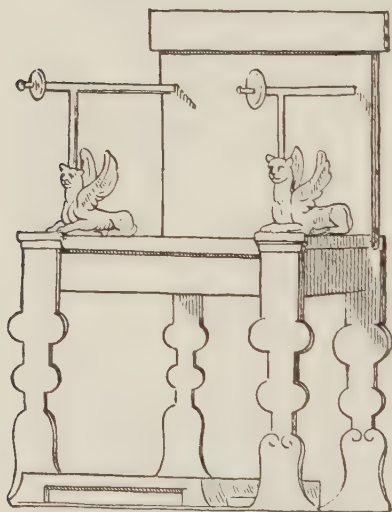
482 Write, with the English translation for every verb form, synopses in the indicative, as follows:

- 1 impellō in the first person singular active
- 2 iaciō in the third person singular active
- 3 praedicō in the second person singular active
- 4 obiciō in the third person singular passive
- 5 trāiciō in the third person plural passive
- 6 prōiciō in the second person singular passive
- 7 prōponō in the third person plural active
- 8 ēiciō in the second person plural passive

483 Write, with English translations, the active and passive infinitives of all verbs in 480.

484 Translate:

- 1 Difficultātis periculūque tempore, cīvēs bonī saepe sunt meliōrī praesidiō cīvitatī quam militēs multī et nāvēs magnae.
- 2 For (ob) many reasons, a brave man is incited to war by the greatness of the danger.
- 3 For (ob) this reason, he will often fling away both fortune and life in defense of his country.



PICTURE OF DRAWING FOUND IN POMPEII

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

RITCHIE'S *PERSEUS*

AND

SELECTIONS FROM RITCHIE'S *ARGONAUTS*

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

485

EASY STORIES IN LATIN

The selections that follow are from *Fabulae Faciles*, a volume of hero myths retold in Latin by an Englishman. The author, Mr. Ritchie, undertook the task of writing a series of tales drawn from Greek mythology that might serve to bridge the gap between the easy selections read in the first year and the more difficult selections usually taken up in the second year.

486

PERSEUS

Tragedy, adventure, and romance are mingled in Ritchie's story of the mythical Greek hero, Perseus. Acrisius, the heartless old king, does not hesitate to shut up his infant grandson, together with the child's mother, in a chest and to cast it with its helpless occupants into the raging sea. But in those marvelous times the gods themselves, we are told, often interposed to aid or punish mortals. The story is that Jupiter calmed the waves and steered the frail chest to the island realm of king Polydectes. The king welcomed the castaways, and gave them a home in his palace.

But no sooner had Perseus arrived at manhood than Polydectes, who had grown selfish and cruel with the passing years, commanded the young man to bring to him the head of Medusa. The king knew that if Perseus so much as glanced at the snaky-haired monster he would be instantly turned into stone. In different parts of the world, two kings thought that they were forever rid of Perseus; for Acrisius believed that his grandson had been drowned as a baby, and Polydectes did not doubt that in a short time the young man would be as lifeless as any stone or boulder in the forest where Medusa dwelt. But both kings were mistaken.

Perseus, very much alive, after hairbreadth escapes and incredible feats of valor, returned not only with Medusa's head but with Andromeda, a beautiful princess, as his bride. Into the palace strode the dauntless youth; the horrified Polydectes gave one look at the gory head of Medusa, and his stony heart never beat again.

Not long after, in a great athletic contest, the same power that years before brought to land that frail chest with its precious freight, may have affected Perseus' aim as he played at quoits, for the iron ring flew straight toward Acrisius and laid him low — slain by the grandson whom he had so grievously wronged.



BLUE GROTTO, ISLAND OF CAPRI, ITALY

LESSON I

THE IRREGULAR VERB *Volō* — STORY OF PERSEUS I

487 Principal parts: *volō, velle, voluī, be willing, wish* (653)

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

<i>volō</i>	<i>volumus</i>
<i>vīs</i>	<i>vultis</i>
<i>vult</i>	<i>volunt</i>

PERFECT

<i>voluī</i>	<i>voluimus</i>
<i>voluistī</i>	<i>voluistis</i>
<i>voluit</i>	<i>voluērunt</i>

IMPERFECT

<i>volēbam</i>	<i>volēbāmus</i>
<i>volēbās</i>	<i>volēbātis</i>
<i>volēbat</i>	<i>volēbant</i>

PLUPERFECT

<i>volueram</i>	<i>voluerāmus</i>
<i>voluerās</i>	<i>voluerātis</i>
<i>voluerat</i>	<i>voluerant</i>

FUTURE

<i>volam</i>	<i>volēmus</i>
<i>volēs</i>	<i>volētis</i>
<i>volet</i>	<i>volent</i>

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>voluerō</i>	<i>voluerimus</i>
<i>volueris</i>	<i>volueritis</i>
<i>voluerit</i>	<i>voluerint</i>

488

EXERCISES

1 *Vīs, volunt, volam, volēbant, volent.* 2 *Volueram, vultis, voluerās, volēmus.* 3 *Voluērunt, volumus, vult, volētis, volēs.* 4 *Voluerant, volet, volō, volēbat, voluerint.* 5 *Volēbātis, voluit, voluerāmus, volēbāmus.* 6 *Voluerit, volēbās, voluistī, voluerātis, velle.* 7 *Voluistis, volēbam, voluimus, volueritis.* 8 *Voluī, voluerō, volueris, voluerimus.*

489

VOCABULARY

<i>comprehendō, comprehendere,</i> <i>comprehendī, comprehē-</i> <i>sus, seize, arrest</i>	<i>coniciō, conicere, coniciēcī, con-</i> <i>iectus, hurl</i> <i>volō, velle, voluī, be willing,</i> <i>wish</i>
--	---

490

PERSEUS I — ADRIFT ON THE SEA

Haec narrantur ā poētīs dē Perseō. Perseus filius erat Iovis, maximī deōrum; avus eius Acrisius appellābatur. Acrisius volēbat Perseum nepōtem suum necāre; nam propter ōrāculum puerum timēbat. Comprehendit igitur Perseum adhūc infāntem, et cum mātē in arcā lignēā inclūsit. Tum arcam ipsam in mare coniēcit. Danaē, Perseī mātē, magnopere territa est; tempestās enim magna mare turbābat. Perseus autem in sinū mātē dormiēbat.

491

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

adhūc, adv., *thus far, as yet*

arca, -ae, f., *chest, box*

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*

igitur, conj., *therefore*

inclūdō, inclūdēre, inclūsī, inclūsus, *shut in*

infāns, infāntis, m. and f., *infant, babe*

lignēus, -a, -um, *wooden*

necō (ī), *put to death, slay*

nepōs, nepōtis, m., *grandson*

ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle*

in sinū, *on (her) bosom*

terreō, terrēre, terrui, territus,

frighten, scare

turbō (ī), *disturb, trouble*

492

EXERCISES

1 Does Acrisius wish to slay his grandson? 2 The grandfather had wished to seize Perseus. 3 The servants wished to save the babe but could not. 4 Acrisius will wish to shut the boy in a box. 5 Will he wish to cast the box into the sea? 6 Will the slaves be willing to seize the boy? 7 Why did the king wish to seize the babe with the mother? 8 He wishes to save himself; he is willing to kill his grandson. 9 Do you not wish to shut Acrisius himself in a box? 10 You wish, I wish, we all wish to save Perseus.

LESSON II

INDEFINITE PRONOUN (AND ADJECTIVE) *Quīdam* — PERSEUS II

493 *Quīdam, a certain one, certain*

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quiddam</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quendam</i>	<i>quandam</i>	<i>quiddam</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quōdam</i>	<i>quādam</i>	<i>quōdam</i>
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>quōrundam</i>	<i>quārundam</i>	<i>quōrundam</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quōsdam</i>	<i>quāsdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>

(The adjective has *quoddam* for *quiddam*.)

Note that this pronoun is formed from *quī* + *dam*, but in the declension of *quī* final *m* is changed to *n* before the *d* of *-dam* (*quendam, quandam, quōrundam, etc.*).

494 VOCABULARY

<i>addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, ad-</i>	<i>perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī,</i>
<i>ductus, lead to, influence</i>	<i>perductus, lead through, guide</i>
<i>cōstituō, cōstituere, cōn-</i>	<i>postquam, conj., after</i>
<i>stituī, cōstitutus, decide,</i>	<i>reperiō, reperire, repperī, re-</i>
<i>station</i>	<i>pertus, find, discover</i>

495 PERSEUS II — JUPITER TO THE RESCUE

Iuppiter tamen haec omnia vīdit, et filium suum servāre cōstituit. Tranquillum igitur fēcit mare, et arcam ad īnsulam Serīphum perdūxit. Huius īnsulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam arca ad lītus appulsa est, Danaē in harēnā quiētem capiēbat. Post breve tempus ā piscātōre quōdam reperta est et ad domum rēgis Polydectis adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum benignē excēpit, et iīs sēdem tūtā in finibus suis dedit. Hoc dōnum Danaē libenter accēpit, et prō tantō beneficiō rēgī grātiās ēgit.

496

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

appellō, appellere, appulī, appulsus, <i>bring (a ship) to land</i>	libenter, adv., <i>gladly, freely</i>
benignē, adv., <i>kindly</i>	lītus, lītoris, n., <i>shore, beach</i>
harēna (arēna), -ae, f., <i>sand, beach</i>	piscātor, piscātōris, m., <i>fisherman</i>
	sēdēs, sēdis, f., <i>home, abode</i>
	tranquillus, -a, -um, <i>calm</i>

497

EXERCISES

1 This story about Perseus is told by certain poets. 2 A certain Acrisius had wished to slay his grandson. 3 He wished to shut up the boy with his mother in a certain chest. 4 The grandfather wished his servants¹ to find a certain chest. 5 Acrisius wished a certain servant¹ to cast the chest into the sea. 6 Jupiter guided the chest to the beach of a certain island. 7 Both mother and son were found on the beach by certain fishermen. 8 By the kindness of certain fishermen both mother and son were saved. 9 The fishermen wished to lead the boy to a certain king. 10 Polydectes wished to give a certain abode to Perseus' mother.

¹ Accusative case.

LESSON III

THE IRREGULAR VERB *Ferō* — PERSEUS III

498 Verb, *ferō*, *bear, endure, carry* (654)

Principal parts: *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
	<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
	<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>
<i>Impf.</i>	<i>ferēbam, etc.</i>		<i>ferēbar, etc.</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>feram, ferēs, etc.</i>		<i>ferar, ferēris, etc.</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>tulī, etc.</i>		<i>lātus sum, etc.</i>	
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>tuleram, etc.</i>		<i>lātus eram, etc.</i>	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>tulerō, etc.</i>		<i>lātus erō, etc.</i>	

499

DRILL

1 *Ferunt, fers, feror, fert, ferimus, fertur, fertis, ferris.*
 2 *Ferēbat, ferēbantur, feret, ferent, ferētur, ferēris.* 3 *Tulit, lātī sunt, tulistī, tulērunt, lātus est, tulerat.* 4 *Lātī erant, tulerō, lātus erit, tulerit, lātī erunt, tulerint.*

500 1 They are borne, you (plur.) are being borne, they had been borne. 2 We are being borne, he was being borne, I shall bear, I shall be borne. 3 He bears, was bearing, will bear, bore, had borne, will have borne. 4 They are borne, were borne, will be borne, have been borne, had been borne, will have been borne.

501

VOCABULARY

<i>annus, -ī, m., year</i> <i>ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear,</i> <i>endure, carry</i> <i>mātrimōnium, -ī, n., marriage</i>	<i>praestō, praestāre, praestiti,</i> <i>praestātus, excel, exhibit,</i> <i>show</i> <i>turpis, -e, adj., disgraceful</i>
--	--

502

PERSEUS III — A DANGEROUS QUEST

Perseus igitur multōs annōs ibi habitābat, et cum mātrea vītā beātā agēbat. At Polydectēs Danaēn magnopere amābat, atque eam in mātīmōnium dūcere volēbat. Hoc tamen cōsiliū Perseō minimē grātum erat. Polydectēs igitur Perseum dīmittere cōstituit. Tum iuvenem ad sē vocāvit et haec dīxit: "Turpe est hanc ignāvam agere vītā;¹ iam dūdum tū adulēscēns es. Quoūsq̄e hīc manēbis? Tempus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre. Hinc abī, et caput Medūsae mihi refer."²

503

EXERCISES

1 Perseus and his mother endured great hardships. 2 On the sea great hardship was borne by the mother of Perseus. 3 A certain chest in which the boy was had been borne across the sea. 4 That chest had borne the mother and son to a certain island. 5 Certain men bear the boy to the king himself. 6 The boy is being borne to the king by certain men. 7 Perseus, at last a young man, bears new hardships. 8 New hardships will be borne by the young man, Perseus. 9 He will bear arms bravely. 10 The king himself did not bear arms. 11 Arms were not borne by the king himself. 12 Perseus will have brought back Medusa's head.

504

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

beātus, -a, -um, *happy, blessed*

hinc, adv., *from this place,*
hence

iam dūdum, *this long time*

ignāvus, -a, -um, *lazy, cowardly*

quoūsq̄e, adv., *how long*

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus,

bring back, report

¹ agere vītā, *to pass (spend) one's life.*

² refer, present imperative, 2nd sing. act.

LESSON IV

THE FOURTH DECLENSION — PERSEUS IV

505 A noun the genitive singular of which ends in **-ūs** belongs to the fourth declension. Most nouns of this declension are masculine, but **domus**, *home*, **manus**, *hand*, and a few others, are feminine. **Cornū** is neuter.

506

passus , m., <i>pace</i>	CASE	cornū , n., <i>horn</i>	CASE	domus , f., <i>home</i>
base, pass-	ENDINGS	base, corn-	ENDINGS	base, dom-

SINGULAR

passus	-us	cornū	-ū	domus
passūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs	domūs (ī)
passuī	-uī	cornū	-ū	domuī (ō)
passum	-um	cornū	-ū	domum
passū	-ū	cornū	-ū	domō (ū)

PLURAL

passūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua	domūs
passuum	-uum	cornuum	-uum	domōrum (uum)
passibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus	domibus
passūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua	domōs (ūs)
passibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus	domibus

507

VOCABULARY

aes , aeris , n., <i>bronze</i>	domus , -ūs , f., <i>home, house</i>
ascendō , ascendere , ascendī , ascēsus , <i>climb up, mount</i>	exercitus , -ūs , m., <i>army</i>
cornū , -ūs , n., <i>horn, wing of an army</i>	galea , -ae , f., <i>helmet</i>
dēmōnstrō (ī), <i>point out, show</i>	ignōrō (ī), <i>be ignorant of</i>
discēdō , discēdere , discessī , discessūrus , <i>depart, with- draw</i>	impetus , -ūs , m., <i>attack</i>
	manus , -ūs , f., <i>hand, band</i> (of men)
	nātūra , -ae , f., <i>nature</i>
	omnīnō , adv., <i>wholly, entirely</i>
passus , -ūs , m., <i>pace</i> (two steps)	

508 PERSEUS IV — PERSEUS IS WONDERFULLY EQUIPPED

Perseus ubi haec audīvit, ex insulā discessit, et postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesīvit. Diū frūstrā quaerēbat; namque nātūrā locī ignōrābat. Tandem Apollō et Minerva viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Primum ad Graeās, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab hīs tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Apollō autem et Minerva falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum postquam tālāria pedibus induit, in āera ascendit. Diū per āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum cēteris Gorgonibus habitābat. Gorgonēs autem mōnstra erant speciē horribilī;¹ capita enim eārum anguibus omnīnō contēcta sunt. Manūs etiam ex aere factae sunt.

509

EXERCISES

1 Illa domina manūs pulchrās habēbat. 2 Manūs puerōrum nōn saepe pulchrae sunt. 3 Mille passūs,² duo milia passuum, tria milia passuum. 4 Haec castra exercitiis magnīs non erunt idōnea. 5 Nullōs hostium impetūs timēbimus.

510 1 Heavy work is not suitable for a woman's hands. 2 We often work with our hands. 3 These places are not suitable for homes. 4 Can you see the right wing of our army? 5 The left wing of two armies can now be seen.

511

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

āēr, āeris (āera acc.), m., <i>air</i>	induō, induere, induī, indūtus,
anguis, anguis, m. and f., <i>snake</i>	<i>put on</i>
contegō, contegere, contēxī,	magicus, -a, -um, <i>magic</i>
contēctus, <i>cover, conceal</i>	speciē (abl.), <i>aspect, appearance</i>
falx, falcis, f., <i>sickle, falchion</i>	
Gorgō, Gorgonis, f., <i>Gorgon</i>	speculum, -ī, n., <i>mirror</i>
horribilis, -e, <i>dreadful, fearful</i>	tālāria, -ium, n., <i>winged shoes</i>

¹ of dread aspect (ablative of description).

² a thousand paces, a mile (Review 351). The plurē requires the genitive, *decem milia militum*, *ten thousand (s of) soldiers*.

LESSON V

PERSEUS V AND VI — ABLATIVE OF MANNER — ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

512 PERSEUS V — HE SLAYS MEDUSA

Difficillima rēs erat caput Gorgonis abscidere; eius enim cōspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva speculum Perseō dederat. Ille igitur tergum vertit, et in speculum inspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum vēnit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput eius ūnō ictū abs-cīdit. Cēterae Gorgonēs statim ē somnō excitātae sunt, et ubi rem vidērunt, irā commōtae sunt. Arma rapuerunt, et Per-seum occidere volēbant. Ille autem dum fugit, galeam magicam induit; et ubi hoc fecit, statim ē cōspectū eārum ēvāsīt.

513 PERSEUS VI — A SEA-MONSTER'S FAIR VICTIM

Post haec Perseus in finīs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus quīdam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, ōlim offenderat; Neptūnus autem mōnstrum saevissimum mī-serat. Hoc cotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Ob hanc causam pavor animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōsultuit, atque ā deō iūssus est filiā mōnstrō trādere. Eius autem filia, nōmine Andromeda, virgō fōrmōsissima erat. Cēpheus ubi haec audīvit, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Volēbat tamen cīvīs suōs ē tantō periculō extrahere, atque ob eam causam facere cōstituit imperāta Hammōnis.

514 VOCABULARY

cōspectus, -ūs, m., *sight*

dolor, dolōris, m., *grief*

excitō (ī), *call out, arouse*

ictus, -ūs, m., *blow*

imperātum, -ī, n., *command*

percipiō, percipere, percēpī,

perceptus, *feel, perceive*

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus,
turn

virgō, virginis, f., *maiden*



Courtesy of Gramstorff Bros., Inc., Malden, Mass.

PERSEUS. Canova.

The beautiful full-length white marble statue from which this head is taken
is in the Vatican, Rome.

515

ABLATIVE OF MANNER

Translate and note the different ways of expressing manner:

- 1 Miles cum audaciā pugnat.
- 2 Militēs magnā cum audaciā pugnābunt.
- 3 Eques magnā audaciā pugnāvit.
- 4 Leō hōc modō hominem servāverat.

516 Rule. *The manner in which an action is performed is expressed by the ablative with the preposition cum. Cum may be omitted when there is an adjective. (But cum is not used to express manner with modō.)*

517

DRILL

1 The man works with zeal, with great zeal. 2 They will defend the town with valor, with great valor. 3 The army went with speed, with great speed. 4 The lion came toward the man in a friendly manner.

518

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

abscidō, abscidere, abscidī,	offendō, offendere, offendī, of-
abscisus, cut away, cut off	fēnsus, offend
cōsulō, cōsulere, cōsului,	pavor, pavōris, m., terror, panic
cōsultus, consult	rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptus,
dēvorō (1), swallow, gulp down	seize, snatch
ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsū-	rēgnō (1), rule, reign
rus, go forth, escape	rem, f., acc., thing, act
fōrmōsus, -a, -um, beautiful	saevus, -a, -um, savage
ira, -ae, f., anger, wrath	saxum, -ī, n., stone, large rock
	tergum, -ī, n., back

519 ABLATIVE OF RESPECT (SPECIFICATION)

Phidippus nōmine, *Phiddipus* by (in respect to his) name;
nōmine Andromeda, by (in respect to) name *Andromeda*.

520 Rule. *The ablative without a preposition is used to show in what respect or particular a thing is true.*

LESSON VI

THE FIFTH DECLENSION — PERSEUS VII AND VIII

521 Nouns, the genitive singular of which ends in *ĕi*, are of the fifth declension. Most nouns of this declension are feminine. *Diēs*, *day*, is usually masculine.

					CASE ENDINGS
522 <i>diēs</i> (base <i>di-</i>), m., <i>day</i> <i>rēs</i> (base <i>r-</i>), f., <i>thing</i>					
<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>res</i>	<i>rēs</i>	- <i>ēs</i>	- <i>ēs</i>
<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>	- <i>ĕi</i>	- <i>ērum</i>
<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	- <i>ĕi</i> ¹	- <i>ēbus</i>
<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>	- <i>em</i>	- <i>ēs</i>
<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	- <i>ē</i>	- <i>ēbus</i>

523 EXERCISES (REVIEW 203, 227)

1 We remained one day, many days, a long time. 2 How many hours has a day? 3 Our friend was with us a part of one day. 4 The end of the day was clear. 5 We shall make a journey of many days. 6 Did you catch sight of the fearful thing? 7 These facts do not frighten me. 8 The appearance of many things is terrible. 9 But the things themselves are often good. 10 The weather (*tempus*) is suitable for the event.

524

VOCABULARY

<i>cōnspiciō</i> , <i>cōnspicere</i> , <i>cōn-</i>	<i>diēs</i> , - <i>ĕi</i> , m., <i>day</i>
<i>spexi</i> , <i>cōnspectus</i> , <i>catch sight of</i> , <i>see</i>	<i>fātum</i> , - <i>i</i> , n., <i>fate</i> , <i>destiny</i>
<i>contendō</i> , <i>contendere</i> , <i>con-</i>	<i>rēs</i> , - <i>ĕi</i> , f., <i>thing</i> , <i>circumstance</i> , <i>event</i> ; <i>rē vērā</i> , <i>truly</i>
<i>tendi</i> , <i>contentūrus</i> , <i>struggle</i> , <i>hasten</i>	<i>speciēs</i> , ² - <i>ĕi</i> , f., <i>sight</i> , <i>appear-</i> <i>ance</i>
<i>dēdūcō</i> , <i>dēdūcere</i> , <i>dēdūxi</i> , <i>dē-</i>	<i>stō</i> , <i>stāre</i> , <i>steti</i> , <i>stātūrus</i> , <i>stand</i>
<i>ductus</i> , <i>lead down</i> , <i>bring</i>	

¹ ĕ after a consonant (*rei*).

² Except *diēs* and *rēs*, most nouns of this declension lack the gen., dat., and abl. plur.

525 PERSEUS VII — CAN NO ONE SAVE THE GIRL?

Tum rēx diem certum dīxit et omnia parāvit. Ubi is diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad lītus dēducta est, et in cōspectū omnium ad rūpem adligāta est. Omnēs fātum eius dēplōrābant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum expectant, Perseus accurrit; et ubi lacrimās vidit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illi rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis auditur; simul mōnstrum horribili speciē procul cōspicitur. Eius cōspectus timōrem maximum omnibus iniēcit. Mōnstrum magnā celeritāte ad lītus contendit, iamque ad locum appropinquābat ubi puella stābat.

526 SPECIAL VOCABULARY

accurrō, accurrere, accurrī, run	fremitus, -ūs, m., roaring, roar
<i>to, run up</i>	lacrima, -ae, f., tear
adligō (I), bind to, bind	procul, adv., at a distance
dēplōrō (I), lament, bemoan	rūpēs, -is, f., cliff, crag
terribilis, -e, dreadful, terrible	

527 For the notebook:

Check in the foregoing paragraph each of the Latin words for which you are able to give one or more related English words. Put in your notebook an alphabetical list of these words, and after each write its related English word or words.

528 PERSEUS VIII — THE RESCUE (see 531)

At Perseus ubi haec vīdit, gladium suum ēdūxit, et postquam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est. Tum dēsUPER in mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit, et gladiō suō collum eius graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit, et sine morā tōtum corpus in aquam mersit. Perseus dum circum litus volat, reditum eius expectābat. Mare autem intereā undique sanguine īficitur. Post breve tempus bēlua rūrsus caput sustulit; mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē sub undās mersit, neque postea vīsa est.



NAPLES AND MT. VESUVIUS

LESSON VII

PERSEUS IX — LINEAL MEASURE — ROMAN WRITING

529

VOCABULARY

adeō, adire, adī (-īvī), aditus, <i>go to, visit</i>	reddō, reddere, reddidī, reddi- <i>tus, give back, restore</i>
dēscendō, dēscendere, dē- scendī, dēscēnsūrus, <i>descend</i>	regiō, regiōnis, f., <i>region,</i> <i>country</i>
ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēduc- <i>tus, lead out, draw (sword)</i>	rūrsus, adv., <i>again</i>
graviter, adv., <i>severely</i>	sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus, <i>perceive, feel</i>
honor, honoris, m., <i>honor</i>	spēs, -eī, f., <i>hope</i>
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, <i>lift, raise</i>	

530 PERSEUS IX — A LIFE SAVED — A WIFE WON

Perseus postquam in litus dēscendit, primum tālāria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vincta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, et ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene erat exanimāta. Ille vincula statim solvit, et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō adfectus est. Meritam grātiā prō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in māttrimōnium dedit uxōrem. Ille libenter hoc dōnum accēpit et puellam dūxit. Paucōs annōs cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitābat, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnīs Aethiopēs. Magnopere tamen mātrem suam rūrsus vidēre cupiēbat. Tandem igitur cum uxōre ē rēgnō Cēpheī discessit.

531 SPECIAL VOCABULARY (for § 528, § 530)

adficiō, adficere, adfēcī, ad- <i>fectus, move, affect</i>	dēsuper, adv., <i>down from</i> <i>above</i>
bēlua, -ae, f., <i>beast, monster</i>	ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus, <i>give</i> <i>forth, utter</i>
collum, -ī, n., <i>neck</i>	

exuō, exuere, exuī, exūtus, <i>take off, put off</i>	sanguis, sanguinis, m., <i>blood</i>
gaudium, -ī, n., <i>joy, gladness</i>	solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, <i>loose, release (with nāvem,</i>
inficiō, inficere, infēcī, infec- tus, <i>stain, dye</i>	<i>set sail)</i>
mergō, mergere, mersī, mer- sus, <i>plunge</i>	unda, -ae, f., <i>billow, sea</i>
meritus, -a, -um, <i>deserved</i>	undique, adv., <i>on (from) all</i> <i>sides</i>
reditus, -ūs, m., <i>return</i>	vinciō, vincire, vīnxī, vinctus, <i>bind</i>

532 HOW THE ROMANS MEASURED LENGTH

The unit of Lineal Measure was the **Pēs** or *Foot*, the **Pēs** being supposed to represent the length of the foot of a well-proportioned man. Various divisions and multiples of the **Pēs** were named after standards derived from the human frame.

Pēs = 16 Digiti¹ (*finger-breadths*)

Pēs = 4 Palmi² (*handbreadths*)

Sesquipēs³ = **1 Cubitum** (*length from the elbow to the extremity of the middle finger*)

5 Pedēs = 1 Passus.

5000 Pedēs = 1000 Passūs = Mille Passuum

1 Roman Mile = 4850 English feet

533 ROMAN WRITING

Ordinary writing was done on waxen tablets (**tabulae cērātae**), which were thin pieces of wood covered over with wax (**cēra**), by means of a **stilus**, usually made of iron, in the shape of a pencil. Ink (**ātrāmentum**), made of soot and burned resin, was also used by means of a sharpened reed.

¹ From **digitus, -ī, m.,** *finger.*

² From **palmus, -ī, m.,** *palm of the hand.*

³ *a foot and a half.*

LESSON VIII

REVIEW SENTENCES — PERSEUS X

534

- 1 Acrisius was a king in fact (*rē*), but not in nature.
- 2 He ordered certain servants to carry Perseus to the sea.
- 3 The evil king wished to kill the little boy and his mother.
- 4 The king was able to hurl the chest, in which Perseus was, into the sea.
- 5 But he could not kill the boy because chance bore the chest across the sea.
- 6 In a few days the inhabitants of a certain island found the chest.
- 7 With great care they bore mother and son to a certain king.
- 8 The little Perseus went into the palace with great courage.
- 9 This act (which thing) was very pleasing to the king.
- 10 The mother, Danae by name, and Perseus lived in the palace many years.
- 11 On a certain day, Perseus, now a young man, betook himself to the palace of Acrisius.
- 12 The king fled many miles but could not escape death.

535

VOCABULARY

<i>cāsus</i> , -ūs, m., <i>chance, accident</i>	<i>inrumpō</i> , <i>inrumpere</i> , <i>inrūpī</i> ,
<i>cōnferō</i> , <i>cōnferre</i> , <i>contulī</i> , <i>col-</i>	<i>inruptus</i> , <i>burst into</i>
<i>lātus</i> , <i>bring together</i> , (with	<i>occidō</i> , <i>occidere</i> , <i>occidī</i> , <i>oc-</i>
<i>sē</i>) <i>betake one's self</i>	<i>cīsus</i> , <i>cut down, kill</i>
<i>discus</i> , -ī, m., <i>quoit</i>	<i>refugiō</i> , <i>refugere</i> , <i>refūgī</i> , <i>flee</i>
<i>ēdicō</i> , <i>ēdicere</i> , <i>ēdixī</i> , <i>ēdictus</i> ,	<i>back, retreat</i>
<i>speak out, appoint</i>	<i>vītō</i> (1), <i>shun, escape</i>

536 PERSEUS X — POLYDECTES AND ACRISIUS MEET THEIR DOOM

Postquam Perseus ad insulam nāvem appulit, sē ad locum contulit ubi māter ōlim habitāverat; sed domum invēnit vacuam et omnīnō dēsertam. Trīs diēs per tōtam insulam mātrem quaerēbat; tandem quārtō diē ad templum Diānae pervēnit. Hūc Danaē refūgerat, quod Polydectem timēbat. Perseus ubi haec cognōvit, irā magnā commōtus est; ad rēgiā Polydectis sine morā contendit, et ubi eō vēnit, statim in ātrium inrūpit. Polydectēs magnō timōre adfectus est et fugere volēbat. Dum tamen ille fugit, Perseus caput Medūsae mōnstrāvit; ille autem simul atque hoc vīdit, in saxum versus est.

Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Acrisī rediit. Ille autem ubi Perseum vīdit, magnō terrōre adfectus est; nam propter ōrāculum illud nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat. In Thessaliā igitur ad urbem Lārīsam statim refūgit, frūstrā tamen; neque enim fātum suum vītāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārīsae lūdōs magnōs fēcit; nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dīmiserat et diem ēdixerat. Multī ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae ad lūdōs convēnērunt. Ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At dum discum conicit, avum suum cāsū occīdit; Acrisius enim inter spectātōrēs eius certāminis forte stābat.

537

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

ātrium, -ī, n., <i>hall of a Roman house</i>	forte, <i>by chance</i>
certāmen, certāminis, n., <i>struggle, contest</i>	mōnstrō (ī), <i>point out, show</i>
dēsertus, -a, -um, <i>deserted</i>	rēgia, -ae, f., <i>palace</i>
eō, adv., <i>thither, there</i>	spectātor, spectātōris, m., <i>spectator, onlooker</i>
	vacuus, -a, -um, <i>empty, vacant</i>

NOTE. Hereafter Special Vocabularies will not be given. Consult the general Latin-English vocabulary for new words.

LESSON IX

PARTICIPLES — THE ARGONAUTS I

538 A regular, transitive verb has four participles. Like other adjectives, participles agree in gender, number, and case, with the words to which they relate (93).

539 Participles of **Portō**

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i> portāns , <i>carrying</i>	————
<i>Fut.</i> portātūrus , <i>about (going) to carry</i>	portandus , <i>about (going) to be carried</i>
<i>Perf.</i> ———	portātus (<i>having been</i>) <i>carried</i>

540 The present participle may be formed by adding **-ns** to the present stem: **portā + ns**, **monē + ns**, **dūce + ns**. But verbs of the fourth conjugation and verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-iō** have **-iē** before the **-ns**: **audiēns**, **capiēns**.

Form the present participles of: **laudō**, **nūntiō**, **doceō**, **regō**, **mittō**, **iaciō**, **mūniō**, **ferō**. For the declension, see 631.

541 The past (perfect passive) participle is regularly the fourth principal part of a regular transitive verb. You learn this participle when you memorize the principal parts.

Write the past participle of **laudō**, **nūntiō**, **doceō**, **iubeō**, **mittō**, **iaciō**, **mūniō**, **reperiō**, **ferō**.

542 The future active participle may be formed by changing the **-us**¹ of the past participle to **-ūrus**: **portāt(us) + ūrus = portātūrus**.

Form the future active participle of: **laudō**, **nūntiō**, **dō**, **doceō**, **iubeō**, **regō**, **mittō**, **iaciō**, **mūniō**, **ferō**.

¹ The future active participle is sometimes given as the fourth principal part of a verb (especially of an intransitive) which has no past participle.

543 The gerundive (future passive participle) may be formed by changing the **-ns** of the present participle to **-ndus: portā(ns) + ndus = portandus**.

544 Write the four participles, with English equivalents, of **appellō, terreō, iubeō, mittō, capiō, pūniō, ferō**.

545

THE ARGONAUTS

For more than two thousand years young and old have been thrilled by the story of Jason's high adventures on his bold quest of the Golden Fleece.

A wicked uncle, Pelias, had driven Aeson, Jason's father, from the throne of Thessaly. Jason was to be his next victim; but certain good friends spirited the boy out of the country, and reported to the tyrant, Pelias, that the lad was dead. Even then Pelias was not happy, for the dread of retribution tortured the guilty king. To allay his fears, he sent trusted men to Delphi to consult the god Apollo. The oracle warned Pelias to be on guard against anyone who should come into his presence with one foot bare.

Some years later, Jason, who had lost one shoe on his journey, entered the palace unrecognized by his uncle. The terror-stricken king commanded the young man speedily to set out upon a long and perilous expedition in search of the Golden Fleece. Although he well knew the difficulty and risk, Jason with his adventurous band soon set sail upon their staunch ship, the Argo. When the ship had disappeared below the horizon, Pelias breathed a sigh of relief, for he knew that there was not one chance in a thousand that Jason would ever return.

But fortune favored the brave, for Jason by the aid of Medea's magic defied death, obtained the Golden Fleece, and returned triumphant.

546

ARGONAUTS I — THE WICKED UNCLE

Erant ōlim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aesōn, Peliās alter appellātus est. Ex hīs Aesōn rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās rēgnī cupiditāte adductus nōn modo frātre suum expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat Iāsonem, Aesonis filium, interficere. Quīdam tamen ex amicīs Aesonis, ubi sententiam Peliae cognōvērunt, puerum ē tantō periculō ēripere cōstituērunt. Noctū igitur Iāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt, et cum posterō diē ad rēgem rediissent,¹ eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Quae cum Peliās audīvisset,² etsī rē vērā magnum gaudium percipiēbat, speciem tamen dolōris prae-buit et quae causa esset³ mortis quae-sivit. Illi autem cum bene intellegerent⁴ dolōrem eius falsum esse, nesciō quam fābulam dē morte puerī finxērunt.

547 A participle agrees in gender, number, and case with its substantive. Active participles of transitive verbs may take both direct and indirect objects. In Latin, participles may express cause, concession, time, etc., which, in English, often are best expressed by subordinate clauses:

- 1 **Peliās, speciem dolōris praebēns, magnum gaudium percēpit.**
Although presenting an appearance of sorrow, Pelias felt a great joy.
- 2 **Aesonis amīcī, ad rēgiam reditūrī, fābulam dē puerī morte finxērunt.**
When they were about to return to the palace, Aeson's friends made up a story about the boy's death.
- 3 **Peliās, ōrāculō territus, Iāsonem necārī volēbat.**
Because Pelias was frightened by the oracle, he wished Jason to be slain.

¹ cum . . . rediissent (pluperfect subjunctive), *when . . . they had returned.*

² cum . . . audīvisset, *when . . . he had heard.*

³ quae causa esset (imperfect subjunctive), *what the reason was.*

⁴ cum . . . intellegerent (imperfect subjunctive), *since they understood.*

547a

EXERCISES

1 Two brothers, the one called Aeson, the other Pelias, once lived in Thessaly. 2 Pelias wished to slay Aeson (who had been) driven out of his kingdom. 3 Aeson feared his brother (because he was) led on (*addūcō*) by a desire for (of) the supreme power. 4 Aeson, (when) driven from his kingdom, wished to save the boy. 5 Pelias did not see Aeson's friends (as they were) bearing the boy out of the city. 6 Pelias heard the story of the friends (as they were) reporting Jason's death. 7 The joy (*gaudium*) of the men (as they were) about to bear the boy out of the city was great. 8 The joy of the evil king (as he was) about to send Jason to his death was great.



Photograph by Reynolds

RUINS OF THE TEMPLE OF APOLLO AT POMPEII

LESSON X

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES — THE ARGONAUTS II

548 The subjunctive mood has four tenses. The future and future perfect are lacking. Name the tenses of the subjunctive.

The forms of the subjunctive are regular.

In the present subjunctive of the first conjugation, instead of the stem vowel **a** of the indicative, we have the vowel **e**. This vowel is an old acquaintance. You met it in the future of the third and fourth conjugations (all persons except the first singular). Review the future of **dūcō** (289).

549 HOW PURPOSE IS EXPRESSED

AFFIRMATIVE ACTIVE

Veniō ut tē servem, *I come to* (in order that I may) *save you*.

Veniēs ut mē servēs, *You will come to* (that you may) *save me*.

Venit ut mē servet, *He comes to* (that he may) *save me*.

Venīmus ut vōs servēmus, *We come* (in order) *to save you*.

Veniētis ut nōs servētis, *You will come* (in order) *to save us*.

Veniunt ut nōs servant, *They come* (in order) *to save us*.

AFFIRMATIVE PASSIVE

Fugiō ut server, *I flee* (in order) *that I may be saved*.

Fugis ut servēris, *You flee* (in order) *that you may be saved*.

Fugiet ut servētur, *He will flee* (in order) *that he may be saved*.

Fūgerimus ut servēmur, *We shall have fled* *that we may be saved*.

Fugitis ut servēmini, *You flee* (in order) *that you may be saved*.

Fugiunt ut servantur, *They flee* (in order) *that they may be saved*.

550 A clause that denotes the purpose of the action of a verb is adverbial. Purpose may be expressed by an adjective (relative) clause: **Peliās amīcōs mittet quī puerum necent**, *Pelias will send friends to slay the boy*.

551 Conjugate **portō**, **liberō**, **nūntiō**, **dō**, in the present subjunctive, active and passive.

552

VOCABULARY

accidō, accidere, accidi, hap-

sī, conj., if

pen, befall

vīs, vīs (629), f., force, violence

nē, conj., that . . . not, lest

553

ARGONAUTS II — THE LOST SHOE

Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus nē¹ rēgnū suū tantā vī et fraude occupātū amitteret, amicum quendam Delphōs mīsīt, quī ōrāculū cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quā celerrimē² Delphōs sē contulit et quā ob causā vēnisset dēmōstrāvit. Respondit ōrāculū nullū esse in praesentiā pericūlū; monuit tamen Peliam ut sī quis ūnū calceū gerēs venīret, eū cavēret.³ Post paucīs annīs accidit ut Peliās magnum sacrificiū factūrus esset;⁴ nūntiōs in omnis partis dīmiserat et certū diē conveniendī⁵ dixerat. Diē cōstitūtō magnus hominū numerus undique ex agrīs convēnit; inter quōs autem vēnit etiā Iāsōn, quī ā puerō apud centaurū quendam habitāverat. Dum tamen iter facit alterū ē calcēis in trāseundō nesciō quō flūmine⁶ amīsīt.

554

EXERCISES

1 Aeson's friends will betake themselves into the city to tell the story of (about) the boy's death. 2 Certain of (ex) his friends will tell this story to Aeson's brother in order to render (give) aid to Jason. 3 (Because) frightened by his brother, Aeson will hasten from the city to save his own life. 4 His friends, influenced (addūcō) by Aeson's grief, bear Jason out of the city to save the boy. 5 Will Aeson send a certain friend into the palace to slay his (own) brother? 6 Does Pelias wish to slay his brother in order to seize the supreme power? 7 Aeson's friends are willing (wish) to tell the brother a story in order to save Jason's life.

¹ The teacher will give the help necessary for the translation of the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives. See 587, 588, 596. After verbs of fearing, the subjunctive mood is required; nē is translated *that*.

³ *that he should beware.*

⁴ *was about to make.*

² *as quickly as possible.*

⁶ *of the assembling.*

⁶ *in crossing some river.*

LESSON XI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES (*Continued*) — THE ARGONAUTS III

555 PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

ACTIVE

moneam	dūcam	capiam	audiam
moneās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
moneat	dūcat	capiat	audiat
moneāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
moneātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
moneant	dūcant	capiant	audiant

PASSIVE

monear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
moneāris	dūcāris	capiāris	audiāris
moneātur	dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur
moneāmur	dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
moneāminī	dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
moneantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

556 All regular conjugations, except the first, have the suffix **a** in all forms of the present subjunctive. Why does the first conjugation not have the same suffix? The suffix **a** is an old acquaintance. You met it in the forms **dūcam**, **dūcar**, **audiam**, **audiar**, of the future indicative. Review these tenses (646, 648).

557 The vowel **e** or **i** before the final **ō**, as given in such verbs as **moneō**, **eō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, is retained before the subjunctive suffix (**moneam**, **eam**, **capiam**, **audiam**).

1 Puer venit ut amicum videat.

The boy comes to see his friend.

2 Hostēs fugiunt nē capiantur.

The enemies flee in order that they may not be taken.

In **1** purpose is expressed *affirmatively* by the subjunctive with **ut**; in **2** *negatively* by the subjunctive with **nē**.

558

EXERCISES

1 The soldiers are hastening in order to give aid. 2 Who will come to save the city? 3 The leaders come to make peace. 4 Men will be sent that peace may be made. 5 The enemy is hastening to seize the town. 6 A legion is being sent in order that the city may not be taken.

559

ARGONAUTS III — THE GOLDEN FLEECE

Iāson igitur cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, alterō pede nūdō in rēgiam pervēnit. Quem cum Peliās vīdisset, subitō timōre adfectus est; intellēxit enim hunc esse hominem quem ōrāculum dēmōnstrāvisset. Hoc igitur cōnsilium iniit. Rēx erat quīdam Aeētēs, quī rēgnum Colchidis illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum quod Phrixus ōlim ibi reliquerat. Cōstituit igitur Peliās Iāsonī negōtium dare ut hōc vellere potirētur;¹ cum enim rēs esset magnī periculī, eum in itinere peritūrum esse spērābat. Iāsonem igitur ad sē arcessīvit, et eum cohortātus² quid fieri vellet exposuit. Ille etsī intellegēbat rem esse difficillimam, negōtium libentur suscēpit.

560

EXERCISES

1 Pelias will send friends to a certain city to seize Jason. 2 Is Aeson sending a messenger to the same city that his grandson may not be taken? 3 Both the friends and the messenger will hasten swiftly, in order that they may find the boy. 4 By the order of the king, the messengers will go to the city to slay Jason. 5 Aeson's messenger hastens very swiftly to the city in which Jason is living that the boy's life may be saved.

¹ Ut hōc vellere potirētur, *that he might get possession of this fleece.* Potirētur requires the ablative instead of the accusative.

² cohortātus, *having encouraged.*

LESSON XII

THE PRESENT AND THE PAST PARTICIPLE—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE—THE ARGONAUTS IV

561

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

The past participle, the present participle, and sometimes another noun, in agreement with a noun or pronoun in the ablative, may be used in a construction called ablative absolute. The ablative absolute, though grammatically independent, may express time, means, manner, cause, condition, or concession.

562

- 1 Scleā āmissā, Iāsōn alterō pede nūdō in rēgiam vēnit.

Because he had lost a shoe (a shoe having been lost) Jason came into the palace with one foot bare.

- 2 Amīcīs fābulam nārrantibus, Peliās erat laetus.

While his friends were telling the story, Pelias was happy.

- 3 Iāsone puerō, Peliās timōre adfectus est.

Although Jason was a boy, Pelias was moved by fear.

563

EXERCISES

1 Patre rēge puer Iāsōn sine periculō in patriā habitāre poterat. 2 Aesone suō ex rēgnō fugiente fili vīta erat in periculō. 3 Patre suō nōn iam rēge, Iāsōn in patriā manēre nōn potuit. 4 Peliās, Aesonis rēgnō occupātō, erat ipse magnō in timōre. 5 Amīcīs expositō timōre, rēx cōnsilium malum nārrāvit. 6 Verbīs rēgis auditīs, Aesonis amīcī vītam puerī cōservāre cōstituērunt. 7 Hōc cōsiliō cōstitutō, quīdam ex Aesonis amīcīs rēgi nūntiāvērunt puerum esse mortuum. 8 Auditīs rēgis imperātīs magnus hominum numerus omnibus ex rēgnī partibus convēnit. 9 Imperātō auditō, Iāsōn, nē rēgem quidem ipsum timēns, multis cum aliīs ad rēgiam properāvit.

564

VOCABULARY

adhibeō, adhibēre, adhibuī,	nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (learn 653),
adhibitus, show, exhibit	be unwilling
intermittō, intermittere, inter-	perferō, perferre, pertulī, per-
mīsī, intermissus, omit, let	lātus, endure, withstand (re-
pass	view 654)

trānsportō (I), *carry across, transport*

565 ARGONAUTS IV — THE BUILDING OF THE ARGO

Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Iāsōn nāvigāre sōlus. Dīmīsīt igitur nūntiōs in omnīs partīs, quī causam itineris docērent et diem certam conveniendī dicerent. Intereā, postquam omnia quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās¹ nāvis comportārī iussit, negōtium dedit Argō cuidam, quī summam nauticārum rērum scientiam habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. In hīs rēbus circiter decem diēs cōnsūptī sunt Argus enim, quī operī praeerat, tantam dīligentiam adhibēbat ut nē nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multitudinem hominum trānsportandam² nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quibus³ in nostrō marī ūtī cōsuēvimus, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam² tōta ē rōbore facta est.

566

EXERCISES

1 While Argus was building the ship, Jason ordered a large number of men who had a knowledge of sailing (**nāvigandī**) to assemble (**conveniō**) near the sea. 2 After the ship had been built by a certain Argus, Jason set (**dīcō**) the day for sailing. 3 Because so great diligence had been shown by Argus, a large ship was built in about ten days. 4 Since the whole ship had been made of oak (**ē rōbore**), Jason was able to cross the wide sea with a large number of men. 5 When everything (all things) had been placed on the ship, Jason decided to sail at once.

¹ For equipping (about to be equipped) the ships; **armandās** (540) agrees in gender, number, and case with **nāvis**. ² See note 1.

³ **ūtī**, to employ, governs the ablative.

LESSON XIII

INFINITIVES — THE ARGONAUTS V

567 Review the present infinitive active and passive (316).

A regular transitive verb has six infinitives (but the future passive infinitive is rarely used).

568

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

<i>Pres.</i> portāre, to carry	portārī, to be carried
<i>Fut.</i> portātūrus esse, to be about to carry	[portātum irī, to be about to be carried]
<i>Perf.</i> portāvisse, to have carried	portātus esse, to have been carried

569 1 The future active infinitive is formed by adding *esse* to the future active participle (542).

2 The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding *-isse* to the perfect stem (156; 194; 213; 295).

3 The perfect passive infinitive is formed by adding *esse* to the past participle (541).

4 Portātūrus and portātus agree with the subject of the infinitive in gender, number, and case.

Learn the infinitives of *sum* (650), and the infinitives below. Give English for every infinitive.

570

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

<i>Pres.</i> monēre	monērī	dūcere	dūcī
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus esse	[monitum irī]	ductūrus esse	[ductum irī]
<i>Perf.</i> monuisse	monitus esse	dūxisse	ductus esse
<i>Pres.</i> capere	capī	audire	audīrī
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus esse	[captum irī]	audītūrus esse	[audītum irī]
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse	captus esse	audīvisse	audītus esse

571

VOCABULARY

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, <i>judge, consider</i>	parātus, -a, -um, <i>prepared, ready</i>
commoror, commorārī, com- morātus sum, <i>delay</i>	subeō, subīre, subīi, subitū- rus, <i>undergo, go under, suf- fer, endure</i>

572 Write, with English translations, and then give orally, the infinitives of: *aedificō, nūntiō, doceō, iubeō, mittō, expellō, iaciō, pūniō*. Imitate the model on previous page (568).

573

ARGONAUTS V — OFF AT LAST

Intereā is diēs aderat quem Iāsōn per nūntiōs ēdixerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī, quōs aut rei novitās aut spēs glōriae movēbat, undique conveniēbant. Trāditum est autem in hōc numerō fuisse Herculem, Orpheum, citharoedum praeclārissimum, Thēseum, Castorem, multōsque aliōs quōrum nōmina sunt nōtissima. Ex hīs Iāsōn, quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā dēlēgit et sociōs sibi adiūnxit; tum paucōs diēs commorātus, ut ad omnīs cāsus subsidia comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem ad nāvigandum¹ idōneam nactus magnō cum plausū omnium solvit.

574

INFINITIVES AS IN ENGLISH

1 Will many (men) wish to assemble (*conveniō*) from all (*tōtus*) Greece? 2 Was Jason prepared to sail over (*in*) the wide sea? 3 Will a large number of men from all parts of the kingdom be willing to undergo great dangers? 4 Jason wished everything (*omnia*) to be prepared for (*ad*) the long journey. 5 He had ordered messengers to be sent into all parts (of the country). 6 Brave men always can be moved by the hope of glory.

¹ *ad nāvigandum, for sailing.*

LESSON XIV

INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT — THE ARGONAUTS VI

INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT (339-341)

575

- 1 Iāsōn dīcit Argum nāvem aedificāre.

Jason says that Argus is building the ship.

- 2 Iāsōn dīcit Argum nāvem aedificātūrum esse.

Jason says that Argus will build the ship.

- 3 Iāsōn dīcit Argum nāvem aedificāvisse.

Jason says that Argus has built the ship.

- 4 Iāsōn dīcit nāvem aedificārī.

Jason says that the ship is being built.

- 5 Iāsōn dīcit nāvem ab Argō aedificātam esse.

Jason says that the ship has been built by Argus.

576 In indirect statement note that the verb must be in the infinitive with its subject in the accusative. The future active infinitive, and the perfect passive must agree in gender, number, and case with its subject. In example 2 (575) **aedificātūrum** agrees with **Argum**, and in example 5 **aedificātam** agrees with **nāvem**.

Aedificāre indicates that Argus was building the ship when Jason made the statement; **aedificātūrum esse**, that he was going to build the ship later; **aedificāvisse** that he already had built the ship.

577

VOCABULARY

attingō, attingere, attigī, at-	idem, eadem, idem, demons.
tactus, touch, reach	pron., the same (see 643)
dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiec-	proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus
tus, cast down, drive	sum, start, set out
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum,	prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgres-
go out (ex nāvī in terram,	sus sum, advance
go ashore)	

578

EXERCISES

1 I know that the king does not love his brother. 2 We know that the king is driving out his brother. 3 You know that the king will drive out his brother. 4 They know that the king has driven out his brother. 5 I know that his brother is not loved by the king.

579

ARGONAUTS VI — A FATAL MISTAKE

Haud multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellātī sunt quī in istā ¹ nāvī vehēbantur) īnsulam quandam, nōmine Cyzicum, attigērunt; et ē nāvi ēgressī ā rēge illius regiōnis hospitio exceptī sunt. Paucās hōrās ibi commorātī ad sōlis occāsum rūsus solvērunt; sed postquam pauca mīlia passuum prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut cursum tenēre nōn possent, et in eandem² partem īnsulae unde nūper profectī erant magnō cum periculō dēicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum nox esset obscūra, Argonautās nōn āgnōscēbant, et nāvem inimicam vēnisse arbitrātī arma rapuērunt et eōs ēgredi prohibēbant. Acriter in litore pugnātum est, et rēx ipse, quī cum aliīs dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs occīsus est. Mox tamen, cum iam dilūcēsceret,² sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre et arma abiēcērunt; Argonautae autem cum rēgem occīsum esse vidērent, ipsī dolēbant.

580

EXERCISES

1 We understand that the king's friends are telling the story of (about) the boy's death. 2 They understand that the king is not grieving. 3 (His) friends report to the king that there will be no danger. 4 They know that the king has wished the boy to be slain. 5 They say that they will slay the boy in a few days. 6 The king does not believe that Aeson's friends will see the boy again. 7 The king thinks that Jason already has been slain. 8 We understand that all men are moved by the fear of death.

¹ *Iste* is declined like *ille* (643).

² Learn the declension of *idem* (643).

³ *when now it was beginning to grow light.*

LESSON XV

INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT (*Continued*)— THE ARGONAUTS VII

581 INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT AFTER A PAST TENSE

1 Iāsōn dixit sociōs nāvem aedificāre.

Jason said that his comrades were building the ship.

2 Iāsōn dixit sociōs nāvem aedificātūrōs esse.

Jason said that his comrades would build the ship.

3 Iāsōn dixit sociōs nāvem aedificāvisse.

Jason said that his comrades had built the ship.

4 Iāsōn dixit nāvem aedificārī.

Jason said that the ship was being built.

5 Iāsōn dixit nāvem aedificātam esse.

Jason said that the ship had been built.

582 Rule. *In indirect statement, the action expressed by the present tense of an infinitive is represented as taking place at the same time as the saying (thinking, knowing, etc.), the action of the future tense as about to take place after the saying, the action of the perfect as already having taken place before the saying.*

583 In **578**, re-write the English sentences, changing the first verb in each sentence to a past tense and making the necessary changes in the tenses of the other verbs, for example:

1 I knew that the king did not love his brother.

584

VOCABULARY

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum,	noceō, nocēre, nocuī, injure
try, attempt	persuādeō, persuādēre, per-
cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnse-	suāsī, persuāsus, induce,
cūtus sum, follow (closely)	persuade
dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dē-	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,
fectus, fail, revolt	follow, accompany

585 ARGONAUTS VII — THE LOSS OF HYLAS

Postrīdiē eius diēi Iāson, tempestātem satis idōneam esse arbitrātus (summa enim tranquillitās iam cōsecūta erat), ancorās sustulit, et pauca milia passuum prōgressus ante noctem Mysiam attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in ancorīs expectāvit; ā nautīs enim cognōverat aquae cōpiam quam sēcum habērent iam dēficere; quam ob causam quīdam ex Argonautīs in terram ēgressī aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quīdam, puer fōrmā praestantissimā;¹ quī, dum fontem quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem quae fontem colēbant, cum iuvenem vīdissent, eī persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret; et cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum esse, puerum vī abstulērunt.

Comitēs eius postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre adfectī diū frūstrā quaerēbant. Herculēs autem et Polyphēmus, quī vēstīgia puerī longius secūtī erant, ubi tandem ad lītus rediērunt, Iāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

586

EXERCISES

1 Because the king of a certain island was a friend, Jason said that he would stay there a short time. 2 Certain inhabitants of the same island thought that the Argonauts were enemies. 3 Jason saw that presently there would be a battle on the beach. 4 After peace had been made, the Argonauts saw that many inhabitants of the island had been slain. 5 After weighing anchor (the anchor having been lifted), the Argonauts were prepared to sail, but they saw that they did not have enough (of) water. 6 Certain sailors said that they would seek water in another part of the island. 7 The sailors said that they had found the water but that they had not been able to find Hylas (Hylam). 8 Jason knew that certain nymphs (Nympha) had carried off (auferō) the boy.

¹ See 508, note 1.

LESSON XVI

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE — PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE *Sum, Possum, Volō* — PURPOSE CLAUSES (*Continued*) — RESULT CLAUSES — THE ARGONAUTS VIII

587 THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive is formed by adding the personal endings (2, 22) to the present active infinitive.

Learn the imperfect subjunctive of verbs in 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 650, 651, 653, 654, 656.

Give the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of *exspectō, persuādeō, cognōscō, sentiō*.

588 THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*)

Review 555, 556. Learn the present subjunctives of *sum* (650) and *possum* (651); also of *volō, nōlō, and mālō* (653).

589 PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES

Review 557.

1 *Puer domī manet ut sit tēcum.*

The boy stays at home to be (that he may be) with you.

2 *Puer domī manēbat ut esset tēcum.*

The boy stayed at home to be (that he might be) with you.

3 *Dux veniet nē urbs capiātur.*

The leader will come that the city may not be taken.

4 *Dux vēnit nē urbs caperētur.*

The leader came that the city might not be taken.

590 Rule. *Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive, affirmatively with ut, negatively with ne. The present subjunctive is used in dependence upon a present, future, or future perfect indicative; the imperfect subjunctive in dependence upon the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.*

591 THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RESULT CLAUSES

1 *Tanta est Argī diligentia ut nāvem celeriter aedificet.*

So great is Argus' industry that he builds the ship quickly.

2 **Tanta erat tempestās ut cursum tenēre nōn possent.**

So great was the storm that they could not hold their course.

592 Rule. *Result is expressed by the subjunctive, affirmatively with ut, negatively with ut nōn. In tense, the subjunctives commonly follow the rule for purpose (590).*

593 Change the verb in each independent clause in **558** to a past tense and then translate each sentence into Latin.

594 ARGONAUTS VIII — STARVATION THREATENS

Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et postquam ad oppidum Salmydēssum nāvem appulērunt, in terram ēgressi sunt. Ibi cum ab incolis quaesissent quis rēgnum eius regiōnis obtinēret, certiōrēs facti sunt Phīneum quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt etiam hunc caecum esse et dīrō quōdam suppliciō adfici, quod ōlim sē crūdēlissimum in filiōs suōs prae buisset. Cuius supplicī hoc erat genus. Missa erant ā Iove mōnstra quaedam speciē horribili, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant. Hae volucrēs, quae Harpȳiae appellābantur, Phīneō summam molestiam adferēbant; quotiēns enim ille accubuerat, veniēbant et cibum appositum statim auferēbant. Quae cum ita essent, Phīneus famē moritūrus erat.

595

EXERCISES

1 Pelias has so great a desire for (of) supreme power that he wishes to slay Jason. 2 Aeson was in so great danger that he could not remain in his kingdom. 3 When Jason's death had been reported, Pelias showed so great joy (**gaudium**) that even his friends feared him. 4 Aeson's friends bore Jason out of the city to save the boy's life. 5 Jason lived far away from the city that he might not be seen by the king. 6 But after a few years Jason was so brave that he no longer feared the king.

LESSON XVII

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE — *Cum* CIRCUMSTANTIAL — THE ARGONAUTS IX

596 THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ductus essem	ductī essēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis	ductus essēs	ductī essētis
dūxisset	dūxissent	ductus esset	ductī essent

The pluperfect subjunctive active is formed by adding the active personal endings to the perfect active infinitive (*portāvisse* + **m**, etc.).

The pluperfect subjunctive passive is formed by adding the imperfect subjunctive of **sum** to the past participle. The past participle here, as always, must agree with its subject.

Conjugate the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active and passive of **portō**, **moneō**, **audiō**, **ferō**; the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of **sum**, **possum**, **eō**, **volō**.

597 *Cum* CIRCUMSTANTIAL

Rule. *Cum*, when, *requires the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive to denote the circumstances under which an action or event occurred in past time.*

598 Note. Use the imperfect subjunctive to represent incomplete action in past time with **cum** circumstantial.

599 EXERCISES

(These sentences have already occurred in "The Argonauts.")

- 1 Quem cum vīdisset Peliās subitō timōre affectus est.
- 2 Argonautae cum vīdissent rēgem occīsum esse magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.
- 3 Peliās cum haec audīvisset speciem doloris praebuit.
- 4 Cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum esse puerum

abstulērunt. 5 Cum iam dilūcēsceret, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre. 6 Nymphae cum iuvenem vidissent eī persuādere cōnātae sunt. 7 Cum ad rēgem rediissent eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse.

600

ARGONAUTS IX — PHINEUS IS SAVED

Rēs igitur hōc in locō erant cum Argonautae nāvem appulērunt. Phīneus autem simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs finis ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvīsus est. Sciēbat enim quantam opīniōnem virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābant quī sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit, quī Iāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiā vocāret. Eō cum vēnissent, Phīneus dēmōstrāvit quantō in periculō suae rēs essent, et prōmīsit sē magna praemia datūrum esse, sī illi remedium repperissent. Argonautae negōtium libentur suscepērunt, et ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt; at simul ac cēna apposita est, Harpȳiae cēnāculum intrāvērunt et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae prīmum gladiīs volucrēs petiērunt; cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil prōdesse, Zētēs et Calais, quī ālis instrūctī erant, in āera sē sublevāvērunt, ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent Harpȳiae, rēi novitāte perterritae statim aufūgērunt, neque postea umquam rediērunt.

601

EXERCISES

1 When Jason was crossing a river, he lost (*āmittō*) one sandal. 2 When Jason had come to the city, he decided to go to the king with one foot bare (*nūdus*). 3 When Pelias had seen Jason's bare foot he was frightened. 4 When Pelias had called together his friends, he entered (*ineō*) into a certain plan. 5 When Argus was building the ship, many (men) came (together) from all parts of Greece. 6 So great was the hope of glory, that the Argonauts did not fear the dangers of the journey. 7 When the Argonauts had driven their ship to a certain town, they learned that Phineus was king there.

LESSON XVIII

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE — INDIRECT QUESTIONS — THE ARGONAUTS X

602

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE
dūxerim	dūxerīmus	ductus sim	ductī sīmus
dūxerīs	dūxerītis	ductus sīs	ductī sītis
dūxerit	dūxerint	ductus sit	ductī sint

Compare the active voice with the future perfect indicative active, and the passive with the perfect indicative passive.

Conjugate **portō**, **moneō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, in the four tenses of the subjunctive, active and passive, and **sum** in the active.

603

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

In a direct question the exact words of the questioner are quoted and should be enclosed in quotation marks:

You ask me: "What have you?"

An indirect question expresses the thought of the questioner, but not his exact words:

You ask what I have.

In writing Latin, failure to recognize an indirect question is disastrous, for in Latin the verb of every indirect question must be in the subjunctive.

A pupil must watch as sharply for the signs of an indirect question as an engineer on an express train looks for his signals. The signs in English that mean "Danger! Indirect Question ahead" are: a word of asking, questioning, showing, teaching, etc., followed by an object clause that begins with an interrogative word or phrase (who? what? why? how? where? when? for what reason? on what account? etc.).

604

VOCABULARY

concurrō, concurrere, con-	intervāllum, -ī, n., <i>interval</i> ,
curri, concursurus, <i>run to-</i>	<i>distance apart</i>
<i>gether, rush up</i>	ratio, ratiōnis, f., <i>manner</i> ,
	<i>method</i>

605

EXERCISES

1 Quaerit quae causa sit, fuerit. 2 Quaesivit quae causa esset, fuisset. 3 Scit enim quantam opiniōnem virtūtis habeant, habuerint. 4 Sciēbat quantam opiniōnem virtūtis habērent, habuissent. 5 Quam ob causam veniat dēmōnstrant. 6 Quam ob causam veniret dēmōnstrābant. 7 Phīneus dēmōnstrat quantō in periculō rēs fuerint.

606

ARGONAUTS X — THE SYMPLEGADES

Hōc factō Phīneus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritam grā-tiam referret, Iāsoni dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vitāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitudīne, quae ā Iove positae erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis¹ ad Colchida perveniret. Hae parvō intervāllō in marī natābant, et sī quid¹ in medium spatium vēnerat, incēdibilī celeritātē concurrēbant. Postquam igitur ā Phīneō doctus est quid faciendum esset, Iāsōn sublātis ancoris nāvem solvit, et lēnī ventō prōvectus mox ad Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit.

607

EXERCISES

(Either the present or the perfect subjunctive is required in translating the indirect questions in these exercises.)

1 The Argonauts ask who the king of this island is. 2 Does the king know why the Argonauts are coming to his island? 3 Jason will ask what Phineus has done and what (*quod*) danger he fears. 4 Phineus asks what hope of safety the Argonauts have brought to him (*sē*). 5 The Argonauts ask how (*quem ad modum*) they themselves can free the king from danger.

¹ Quis, after sī, nisi, nē, should be translated *any (one)*, *quid*, *anything*.

LESSON XIX

INDIRECT QUESTIONS (*Continued*) — SEQUENCE OF TENSES — THE ARGONAUTS XI

608 INDIRECT QUESTIONS AND SEQUENCE OF TENSES

The following exercise illustrates three important principles in Latin usage: (1) The subjunctive is required in indirect questions. (2) Only the present and perfect subjunctive may be used in a clause dependent upon a verb in the present, future or future perfect indicative. (3) Only the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive may be used in a clause dependent upon an imperfect, perfect or pluperfect indicative.

- 1 **Rogō quid dicās, dixeris.**
I ask what you are saying, have said.
- 2 **Rogābō quid dicās, dixeris.**
I shall ask what you are saying, have said.
- 3 **Rogāverō quid dicās, dixeris.**
I shall have asked what you are saying, have said.
- 4 **Rogābam quid dicerēs, dixissēs.**
I was asking what you were saying, had said.
- 5 **Rogāvī quid dicerēs, dixissēs.**
I asked what you were saying, had said.
- 6 **Rogāveram quid dicerēs, dixissēs.**
I had asked what you were saying, had said.

The present subjunctive denotes incomplete (unfinished) action after the present, future, and future perfect indicative; the perfect subjunctive complete (finished) action.

The imperfect subjunctive denotes incomplete (unfinished) action after the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative, the pluperfect complete (finished) action.

The present, future, and future perfect are called the primary tenses of the indicative, the present and perfect, the primary tenses of the subjunctive.

609

VOCABULARY

antequam, conj., *before*priusquam, conj., *before*

ēveniō, ēvenīre, ēvēnī, ēven-

rogō (1), *ask, request*tūrus, *happen, turn out*

610 The imperfect, perfect (usually), and pluperfect are called the secondary tenses of the indicative; the imperfect and pluperfect, the secondary tenses of the subjunctive.

611 Rule. *Primary tenses of the indicative in an independent clause must be followed by primary tenses of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and secondary tenses of the indicative must be followed by secondary tenses of the subjunctive.*

612 ARGONAUTS XI — THE SYMPLEGADES (*Continued*)

Tum in prōrā stāns columbam quam in manū tenēbat ēmīsīt. Illa rēctā viā per medium spatium volāvit, et priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, incolumis ēvāsīt caudā tantum āmissā. Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rūrsus concurrerent, Argonautae, bene intellegentēs omnem spem salūtis in celeritāte positam esse, summā vī rēmīs contendērunt et nāvem incolumen perdūxērunt. Hōc factō dīs¹ grātiās meritās ēgērunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō periculō ēreptī essent; omnēs enim sciēbant nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem tam fēlīciter ēvēnisse.

613

EXERCISES

1 After hearing the story of his friends, Pelias asked what had been the cause of the boy's death. 2 The friends did not tell the king to what place they had borne the small boy. 3 The king does not ask in what manner his friends have slain the boy. 4 We shall not ask for how long a time (*quam diū*) Jason lived at the home of a certain centaur (*centaurus*). 5 When Jason had heard the king's command, he asked in what city the palace was.

¹ dīs, dat. plur. from *deus*, *god*.

LESSON XX

DEPONENT VERBS — THE ARGONAUTS XII — PARTICIPLES (*Continued*)

614

DEPONENT VERBS

In "The Argonauts," thus far, the following are some of the verbs of passive form that have been translated as though they were active: **arbitrātus est**, *he thought*; **ut hōc vellere potirētur**, *in order that he might get possession of this fleece*; **noluit Iāson sōlus proficisci**, *Jason did not wish to set out alone*; **veritus nē rēgnum āmitteret**, *fearing (having feared) that he might lose his throne*.

Verbs like the above, which are conjugated in the passive voice but have an active meaning, are called deponents.

Deponent verbs have "laid aside" their active forms and their passive meanings.

615

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF DEPONENTS

arbitror, *I think*

arbitrārī, *to think*

arbitrātus sum, *I thought*

vereor, *I fear*

verērī, *to fear*

veritus sum, *I feared*

ēgredior, *I step out*

ēgredī, *to step out*

ēgressus sum, *I stepped out*

potior, *I get possession of*

potirī, *to get possession of*

potitus sum, *I got possession of*

Learn the models (649). Give synopses of the verbs given above.

Remember that a deponent verb has a future active infinitive, and also a present and a future active participle.



COINS OF COMMODUS

616

EXERCISES

1 Egredi, potiri, proficisci, vereri, sequi. 2 Egressus, profecturus, potiēns, arbitrātus, veritus. 3 Proficiscuntur, potiuntur, verentur, sequentur. 4 Nacti sunt, commorati erant, potiti erunt. 5 Rogat quis ē navi egrediatur ut aqua potiatur. 6 Rogabat ad quas insulas Argonautae proficiscerentur.

617

ARGONAUTS XII — A HEAVY TASK

Brevi intermissō spatiō Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsīm vēnerunt, quod in finibus Colchōrum erat. Ibi cum nāvem appulissent et in terram ēgressi essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētem sē contulērunt et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderēt. Ille cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, irā commōtus est et diū negābat sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Iāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscepisse, mūtātā sententiā prōmisit sē vellus trāditūrum, si Iāsōn labōrēs duos difficillimōs prius perfēcisset; et cum Iāsōn dixisset sē ad omnia pericula subeunda parātum esse, quid fieri vellet ostendit. Primum iungendī erant duo tauri speciē horribili, quī flammās ex ore edēbant; tum hīs iūctis ager quīdam arandus erat et dentēs draconis serendī. Hīs auditis Iāsōn etsi rem esse summī periculī intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occāsiōnem rei bene gerendae amitteret, negōtium suscepit.

618

EXERCISES

1 Iāsōn sublātis ancoris nāvem solvit.

Weighing anchors (the anchors having been raised), Jason set sail.

2 Quīdam ex Argonautis in terram ēgressi aquam quaerēbant. *Certain of the Argonauts going ashore (having stepped out upon the land) were searching for water.*

3 Iāsōn taurōs iūctūrus erat et agrum arātūrus.

Jason was going (was about) to yoke the oxen and plow the field.

4 **Taurī Iāsonī iungendī erant et agrī arandī.**

Jason had to yoke the oxen and plow the fields, or For Jason there were oxen to be yoked and fields to be plowed.

The past participle of a deponent verb, being regularly active in meaning, in a measure takes the place of the lacking perfect active participle.

In sentence 1 we use the ablative absolute, **sublātis ancorīs**, because the past participle of **tollō** is passive in meaning.

In sentence 2 **ēgressī** is active and agrees in gender, number, and case with **quidam**. The ablative absolute may not be used when its substantive denotes the same person or thing as either the subject or the object of the verb of the principal clause.

Sentence 3 illustrates a common use of the future active participle: **Iāsōn agrum arābit**, *Jason will plow the field*; **Iāsōn agrum arātūrus est**, *Jason is about, intends, or is going to plow the field*.

Sentence 4 illustrates a common use of the gerundive (future passive participle): **Agri Iāsonī arandī sunt**, *Jason must plow the fields*, or, *For Jason there are fields to be plowed*, or, *Jason has to plow the fields*. The gerundive may denote duty, obligation, or necessity. The dative (**Iāsonī**) denotes the person who has the duty to perform. This dative, really a dative of possessor (169), when used with the gerundive, is sometimes called the dative of agent.

619

EXERCISES

1 Jason was about to sail but judged that the weather (**tempestās**) was not suitable. 2 Jason, judging (having judged) that the weather was not suitable, decided to delay a few hours. 3 Jason, who intends (is about) to select very brave (men) as comrades, will delay a few days. 4 Argus must build a good ship and the Argonauts must undergo all dangers bravely. 5 When the Argonauts had gone forward (for) a few days, they

came to a certain island. 6 Going ashore (**ēgressus in terram**) and advancing a short distance, Jason delayed there a few hours. 7 He tried (**cōnor**) to find out who the inhabitants of the island were. 8 On seeing certain of the inhabitants Jason, fearing to delay for a longer time, was about to flee. 9 But the inhabitants, judging (having judged) that the Argonauts were unfriendly, suddenly made an attack. 10 Nevertheless, when their king had been killed, the inhabitants had to beg for peace.

I	SOME COMMON AND FAMILIAR LATIN EXPRESSIONS,	620
II	SUMMARY OF LATIN MOTTOES,	621
III	LATIN NAMES FOR SOME COMMON BIRDS AND ANIMALS,	622
IV	RULES,	623
V	SUMMARY OF INFLECTIONS,	624
VI	LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY,	658
VII	ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY,	659
VIII	INDEX,	660

620 SOME COMMON AND FAMILIAR LATIN EXPRESSIONS

Ad finem — *to the end.*

Ad referendum — *to be further considered.*

Ad rem — *to the point.*

Ad valōrem — *according to the value.*

Alter ego — *another self.*

Amor patriae — *love of country.*

Bonā fidē — *in good faith.*

Cāsus bellī — *the occasion of war.*

Cavē canem — *beware the dog.*

Cui bonō? — *to whose advantage?*

Cum grānō salis — *with a grain of salt.*

Dē factō — *from the fact, in fact.*

Deō volente (D.V.) — *God-willing.*

E plūribus ūnum (motto U. S.) — *one from many.*

Et cētera — *and so forth, likewise the others.*

Exemplī grātiā (e.g.) — *for example.*

Ex officiō — *by virtue of office.*

Ex post factō — *after the deed.*

Ex tempore — *on the spur of the moment.*

Habeās corpus — *You may have the body* (legal term).

Id est (i.e.) — *that is.*

In rē — *in the matter of.*

In statū quō ante — *in its former state, or, in the state in which it was.*

Larēs et penātēs — *the household gods of the ancient Romans.*

Lēx nōn scripta — *unwritten law.*

Mirābile dictū — *wonderful to relate.*

Modus operandī — *the manner of doing.*

Nōn compos mentis — *not sound of mind.*

Notā bene (N. B.) — *mark well.*

Per diem — *by the day, daily.*

Per sē — *by itself.*

Post mortem — *after death.*

Post scriptum (P. S.) — *postscript.*

Primā faciē — *at the first view, convincing.*

Quid prō quō — *what for what, one thing for another.*

Quod erat dēmōnstrandum (Q.E.D.) — *which was to be proved.*

Quod erat faciendum (Q.E.F.) — *which was to be done.*

Rāra avis — *rare bird, prodigy.*

Requiescat in pāce — *May he rest in peace.*

Rūs in urbe — *country in town.*

Sanctum sanctōrum — *holy of holies.*

Sic trānsit glōria mundī — *Thus earthly glory passes away.*

Sine diē — *without a day appointed.*

Sine quā nōn — *indispensable condition (without which not).*

S. P. Q. R. — **Senātus populusque Rōmānus** — *the Senate and the Roman people.*

Stet (st) — *let it stand.*

Summum bonum — *chief good.*

Tempus fugit — *time flies.*

Ultimō (ult.) — *of last month.*

Verbātim — *word for word.*

Versus (vs.) — *against.*

Vice versā — *the terms being exchanged, conversely.*

Vidēlicet (viz.) — *it is easy to see, to wit, namely.*

Vivā voce — *by living voice, orally.*

621 SUMMARY OF LATIN MOTTOES

Facta, nōn verba — *Deeds not words.*

Vīs est vīta — *Power is life* **Lucilius**

Labor ipse voluptās — *Work itself is a pleasure.*

Ars longa, vīta brevis — *Art is long, life short* . . . **Seneca**

- Festīnā lentē — *Make haste slowly* . . . Augustus in Suetonius
- Nīl dēspērāndum — *Never despair* Horace
- Rōma aeterna! — *Rome the Eternal!* Tibullus
- Errāre hūmānum est — *To err is human* Seneca
- Ut amēris, amābilis estō — *To be loved, be lovable.* . . . Ovid
- Lūx et vērītās — *Light and truth* Cicero
- Nē cēde malis — *Yield not to misfortune* Virgil
- Nōn est ad astra mollis ē terrīs via — *There is no easy*
path from earth to heaven Seneca
- Audentēs fortūna iuvat — *Fortune favors the bold* . . . Virgil
- Fīdus Achātes — *A true friend, or, faithful Achates* . . . Virgil
- Carpe diem — *Grasp the opportunity* Horace
- Labor omnia vincit — *Work conquers everything* . . . Horace
- Perīculum in morā — *There is danger in delay* Livy
- Littera scrīpta manet — *The written word lives.*
- Iniūria nōn excūsāt iniūriam — *A wrong does not excuse a*
wrong.
- Nīl mortālibus arduum est — *Nothing is too hard for man to dare*
Horace
- Poēta nāscitur, nōn fit — *A poet is born, not made* . . . Horace
- Cui saepe mille imposuī plāgārum in diem — *I have*
often given him a thousand stripes a day Lucilius
- Nōn omnia possumus omnēs — *We cannot all do all things*
Virgil
- Dā dextram miserō — *To one in need lend a hand* . . . Virgil
- Permitte dīvīs cētera — *Trust heaven for the rest* . . . Horace
- Virtūs praemium est optimum — *Virtue is the best prize* Plautus
- Ex ūnō disce omnēs — *From one know them all* Virgil
- Nihil sine magnō labōre — *Nothing without great*
labor Horace
- Quot hominēs, tot sententiae — *Opinions are as numer-*
ous as men Terence
- Mēns sibi cōnschia rēctī — *A mind conscious of its own*
rectitude Virgil

Disce, puer, virtutem ex mē vērūque labōrem — *Learn,*
my boy, from me the true worth of toil Virgil

Hoc opus, hic labor est — *This is the task, this the struggle*
Virgil

Sapiēns et bonum ferre potest modicē, et malum fortiter
— A wise man can bear good fortune with modera-
tion, ill fortune with courage. Varro

Nōn est vīvere sed valēre vīta — *Life is accomplishment,*
not mere existence Martial

Semper fidēlis — *Always faithful.*

Aequam mementō rēbus in arduīs servāre mentem —
When things go wrong, remember to keep a calm
mind Horace

Mentem mortālia tangunt — *Mortal woes touch the heart*
Virgil

Frātrēs Helenae, lūcida sīdera — *Shining constellations,*
brothers of Helen (Castor and Pollux) Virgil

Fortūna opēs auferre, nōn animum potest — *Fortune*
can rob us of treasures, not of courage Seneca

Diēs adimit aegritūdinem hominibus — *Time cures*
mortal ills Terence

Virtūs hominem iungit Deō — *Virtue links man with God*
Cicero

Forsan et haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit — *Some day*
perhaps the memory of even these hardships will be
sweet Virgil

Prō āris atque focīs! — *For your altars and your fires!*
Sallust

Cui prōdest, is facit — *He who profits by an act is a party*
to it Seneca

Dōs est magna parentium virtūs — *The virtue of one's*
forbears is a noble dowry Horace

Possunt, quia posse videntur — *As a man thinketh, so he is*
Virgil

- Alium silēre quod volēs, prīmus silē — *If you wish your secret kept, be the first to keep it* Seneca
- Nihil est vērītātis lūce dulcius — *Nothing is sweeter than the light of truth* Cicero
- Rēbus angustis animōsus atque fortis appārē — *Face your troubles with a high courage* Horace
- Historia est testis temporum, lūx vērītātis — *History is the witness of time, the light of truth* Cicero
- Nōn paucis malle ā sapientibus esse probātum — *Better the praise of a few wise men than of many fools* . . . Lucilius
- Mēns sāna in corpore sānō — *A sound mind in a sound body* Juvenal
- Dum anima est, spēs est — *While there is life there is hope* Cicero
- Omnia bona bonīs — *To the pure, all things are pure.*
- Ubi libertās, ibi patria — *Where freedom is, there shall my country be.* Juvenal
- Maxima dēbētur puerō reverentia — *The greatest respect is a child's due.*
- Et propter vītā vīvendī perdere causās — *And for the sake of mere existence, to lose all that makes life worth living* Juvenal
- Rēgia, crēde mihi, rēs est succurrere lapsīs — *Believe me, it is a kingly act to lift up the fallen* Ovid
- Dum loquimur fūgerit invida Aetās — *While we talk, envious time has fled* Horace
- Repetitiō est māter studiōrum — *Repetition is the mother of learning.*
- Ardua per praeceps glōria vādit iter — *Towering ambition travels a rough road* Ovid
- Multa petentibus dēsunt multa — *Much is lacking to those who much desire* Horace
- Lēx plūs laudātur, quando ratiōne probātur — *Law is more praiseworthy when approved by reason.*

- Nōn scholae, sed vītae discimus — *We learn not for school, but for life* Seneca
- Trūdītur diēs diē — *Day treads on the heel of day* Horace
- Homō sum; hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum putō — *I am a man; I deem nothing common to mankind foreign to me* Terence
- Amīcus certus in rē incertā cernitur — *A friend in need is a friend indeed* Ennius
- Vox populī vox deī — *The voice of the people is the voice of God.*
- Quod fuit dūrum patī, meminisse dulce est — *It is sweet to remember what was hard to bear* Seneca
- Rēx eris, sī rēctē faciēs — *If your conduct be kingly, you will be a king* Terence
- Infīrmī est animī exigūīque voluptās ul̄tiō — *Revenge is the desire of a weak and mean spirit* Juvenal
- Nox erat et caelō fulgēbat lūna serēnō — *It was night and the moon was shining in a clear sky* Horace
- Aliudque cupīdō, mēns aliud suādet — *Desire urges one thing, reason another.* Ovid
- Nōbile lētum — *A glorious death* Horace
- Dux fēmina — *A woman was leader* Virgil
- Est deus in nōbīs — *There is a god within us* Virgil
- Leve fit, quod bene fertur, onus — *Light the burden which is borne contentedly* Ovid
- Mōribus antīquīs rēs stat Rōmānā virisque — *Rome stands by her ancient customs and great men* Ennius
- Vēnī, vīdī, vicī — *I came, I saw, I conquered* Caesar
- Prō patriā nōn timīdus morī — *Not afraid to die for his country* Horace
- Aut vincere aut morī — *Either to conquer or to die.*

622 LATIN NAMES FOR SOME COMMON BIRDS AND ANIMALS

<i>bear</i> , <i>ursus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>horse</i> , <i>equus</i> , -ī, m.
<i>blackbird</i> , <i>merula</i> , -ae, f.	<i>lamb</i> , <i>agnus</i> , -ī, m.
<i>bull</i> , <i>taurus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>leopard</i> , <i>leopardus</i> , -ī, m.
<i>calf</i> , <i>vitulus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>lion</i> , <i>leō</i> , <i>leōnis</i> , m.
<i>cat</i> , <i>fēles</i> , <i>fēlis</i> , f.	<i>lioness</i> , <i>lea</i> , -ae, f.
<i>cattle (oxen)</i> , <i>bovēs</i> (plur. of <i>bōs</i>), <i>boum</i>	<i>mouse</i> , <i>rat</i> , <i>mūs</i> , <i>mūris</i> , m. and f.
<i>chicken</i> , <i>gallinula</i> , -ae, f.	<i>mule</i> , <i>mūlus</i> , -ī, m.
<i>cow</i> , <i>vacca</i> , -ae, f.	<i>nightingale</i> , <i>lusciniā</i> , -ae, f.
<i>crow</i> , <i>corvus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>ostrich</i> , <i>passer marīnus</i> , m.
<i>dog</i> , <i>canis</i> , <i>canis</i> , m. and f.	<i>ox</i> , <i>bōs</i> , <i>bovis</i> , m.
<i>donkey</i> , <i>asinus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>panther</i> , <i>panthēra</i> , -ae, f.
<i>dove</i> , <i>pigeon</i> , <i>columba</i> , -ae, f.	<i>peacock</i> , <i>pāvō</i> , <i>pāvōnis</i> , m.
<i>duck</i> , <i>anas</i> , <i>anatis</i> , f.	<i>pheasant</i> , <i>phāsiāna</i> , -ae, f.
<i>eagle</i> , <i>aquila</i> , -ae, f.	<i>pig</i> , <i>sūs</i> , <i>suis</i> , m. and f.
<i>elephant</i> , <i>elephantus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>ram</i> , <i>ariēs</i> , <i>arietis</i> , m.
<i>fish</i> , <i>piscis</i> , -is, m.	<i>rooster</i> , <i>gallus</i> , -ī, m.
<i>fox</i> , <i>vulpes</i> , <i>vulpis</i> , m.	<i>sheep</i> , <i>ovis</i> , <i>ovis</i> , f.
<i>goat</i> , <i>caper</i> , <i>capri</i> , m.	<i>skylark</i> , <i>alauda</i> , -ae, f.
<i>goose</i> , <i>anser</i> , <i>anseris</i> , m.	<i>sparrow</i> , <i>passer</i> , <i>passeris</i> , m.
<i>gull</i> , <i>diver</i> , <i>mergus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>swallow</i> , <i>hirundō</i> , <i>hirundinis</i> , f.
<i>hare</i> , <i>lepus</i> , <i>leporis</i> , m.	<i>swan</i> , <i>cycnus</i> (<i>cygnus</i>), -ī, m.
<i>hawk</i> , <i>accipiter</i> , <i>accipitris</i> , m.	<i>tiger</i> , <i>tigris</i> , <i>tigris</i> , m.
<i>hen</i> , <i>gallina</i> , -ae, f.	<i>wolf</i> , <i>lupus</i> , -ī, m.

RULES

623 (The asterisk refers to a footnote belonging to paragraph to which reference is made.)

- 8** The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.
- 9** A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.
- 16** A predicate noun has the same case as the subject of the verb.
- 17** A predicate adjective has the same gender, number, and case as the subject of the verb.
- 24** Predicate nouns and predicate adjectives, with verbs in the passive voice, agree with their subjects in accordance with paragraphs **16** and **17**.
- 30** The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.
- 33*** Place *in which* is regularly expressed by the ablative, with the Latin preposition **in**.
- 44** The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ab** or **ā**. **Ab** must be used before words beginning with a vowel or **h**.
- 56** An appositive agrees in case with the noun or pronoun that it explains.
- 64** The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.
- 93** An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.
- 115** The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.
- 150** The ablative is used with the preposition **cum** to denote accompaniment.
- 169** In Latin, possession or ownership may be expressed by the dative with some form of **sum**.
- 203** The ablative is used with or without a preposition to express the time within which an action occurs.
- 227** Duration of time is expressed by the accusative case.
- 246*** Extent of space, like duration of time, is expressed by the accusative case.

- 250 A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but the case of the relative is determined by its use in its own clause.
- 254 Cause may be expressed by the ablative without a preposition.
- 319 An infinitive is required with **dēbeō**, **iubeō**, and certain other Latin verbs, just as with the corresponding English verbs.
- 320 A noun or pronoun used as the subject of an infinitive must be in the accusative case.
- 341 An independent (declarative) statement used as the direct object of a verb of *saying, telling, hoping, knowing, thinking, believing* or *perceiving*, has its verb in the infinitive with subject accusative.
- 348 Masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension ending in **-is** that have the same number of syllables in the nominative and the genitive singular (**cīvis**), nouns of one syllable ending in **-s** preceded by a consonant (**urbs**), and a few others, are "**i-stems**."
- 385* The amount, or degree, of difference between objects is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, as **multō brevior**, (*by much shorter*).
- 390 The dative is used with adjectives that denote *likeness, usefulness, fitness, friendliness*, and their opposites, also *nearness*. **Similis** governs genitive when it means "the likeness."
- 516 The manner in which an action is performed is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**. **Cum** may be omitted when there is an adjective. (But **cum** is not used to express manner with **modō** even with an adjective.)
- 520 The ablative, without a preposition, is used to show in what respect, or particular, a thing is true.
- 582 In indirect statement, the action expressed by the present tense of an infinitive is represented as taking place at

the *same* time as the saying (thinking, knowing, etc.); the action of the future tense of the infinitive is represented as about to take place *after* the saying; the action of the perfect as already having taken place *before* the saying.

- 590** Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive, affirmatively with **ut**, negatively with **nē**. The present subjunctive is used in dependence upon a present, future, or future perfect indicative; the imperfect subjunctive in dependence upon the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect.
- 592** Result is expressed by the subjunctive, affirmatively with **ut**, negatively with **ut nōn**. In tense, the subjunctives commonly follow the rule for purpose (**590**).
- 597** **Cum**, *when*, requires the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive to denote the circumstances under which an action or event occurred in past time.
- 611** Primary tenses of the indicative in an independent clause must be followed by primary tenses of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and secondary tenses of the indicative must be followed by secondary tenses of the subjunctive.

SUMMARY OF INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

624

FIRST DECLENSION

silva, f., forest

SINGULAR		PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>silva</i>	<i>silvae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>silvae</i>	<i>silvārum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>silvae</i>	<i>silvīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>silvam</i>	<i>silvās</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>silvā</i>	<i>silvīs</i>

625

SECOND DECLENSION

servus, m., slave *puer, m., boy* *ager, m., field* *vir, m., man* *bellum, n., war*

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>servus</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>servī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bellī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>servum</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>servī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>servōrum</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>servīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>servōs</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>servīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>

626 (1)

THIRD DECLENSION

CONSONANT STEMS

cōnsul, m., consul *soror, f., sister* *pater, m., father* *dux, m., leader*

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cōnsul</i>	<i>soror</i>	<i>pater</i>	<i>dux</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cōnsulis</i>	<i>sorōris</i>	<i>patris</i>	<i>ducis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cōnsulī</i>	<i>sorōrī</i>	<i>patri</i>	<i>ducī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cōnsulem</i>	<i>sorōrem</i>	<i>patrem</i>	<i>ducem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōnsule</i>	<i>sorōre</i>	<i>patre</i>	<i>duce</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> cōsulēs	sorōrēs	patrēs	ducēs
<i>Gen.</i> cōsulum	sorōrum	patrum	ducum
<i>Dat.</i> cōsulibus	sorōribus	patribus	ducibus
<i>Acc.</i> cōsulēs	sorōrēs	patrēs	ducēs
<i>Abl.</i> cōsulibus	sorōribus	patribus	ducibus

legiō, f., *legion* homō, m., *man* hiems, f., *winter* princeps, m., *chief*

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i> legiō	homō	hiems	princeps
<i>Gen.</i> legiōnis	hominis	hiemis	principis
<i>Dat.</i> legiōnī	hominī	hiemī	principī
<i>Acc.</i> legiōnem	hominem	hiemem	principem
<i>Abl.</i> legiōne	homine	hieme	principe

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> legiōnēs	hominēs	hiemēs	principēs
<i>Gen.</i> legiōnum	hominum	hiemum	principum
<i>Dat.</i> legiōnibus	hominibus	hiemibus	principibus
<i>Acc.</i> legiōnēs	hominēs	hiemēs	principēs
<i>Abl.</i> legiōnibus	hominibus	hiemibus	principibus

virtūs, f., *courage*

aestās, f., *summer*

mīles, m., *soldier*

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i> virtūs	aestās	mīles
<i>Gen.</i> virtūtis	aestātis	militis
<i>Dat.</i> virtūtī	aestātī	militī
<i>Acc.</i> virtūtem	aestātem	militem
<i>Abl.</i> virtūte	aestāte	militē

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> virtūtēs	aestātēs	militēs
<i>Gen.</i> virtūtum	aestātum	militum
<i>Dat.</i> virtūtibus	aestātibus	militibus
<i>Acc.</i> virtūtēs	aestātēs	militēs
<i>Abl.</i> virtūtibus	aestātibus	militibus

tempus, n., *time*

SINGULAR

Nom. tempus
Gen. temporis
Dat. temporī
Acc. tempus
Abl. tempore

genus, n., *race*

genus
 generis
 generī
 genus
 genere

PLURAL

Nom. tempora
Gen. temporum
Dat. temporibus
Acc. tempora
Abl. temporibus

genera
 generum
 generibus
 genera
 generibus

iter, n., *journey*caput, n., *head*flūmen, n., *river*

SINGULAR

Nom. iter
Gen. itineris
Dat. itinerī
Acc. iter
Abl. itinere

caput
 capitis
 capiti
 caput
 capite

flūmen
 flūminis
 flūminī
 flūmen
 flūmine

PLURAL

Nom. itinera
Gen. itinerum
Dat. itineribus
Acc. itinera
Abl. itineribus

capita
 capitum
 capitibus
 capita
 capitibus

flūmina
 flūminum
 flūminibus
 flūmina
 flūminibus

626 (2)

THIRD DECLENSION I-STEMS

cīvis, m. and f., *citizen*urbs, f., *city*mare, n., *sea*

SINGULAR

Nom. cīvis
Gen. cīvis
Dat. cīvī
Acc. cīvem
Abl. cīve

urbs
 urbis
 urbi
 urbem
 urbe

mare
 maris
 marī
 mare
 marī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> cīvēs	urbēs	maria
<i>Gen.</i> cīvium	urbium	marium (lacking)
<i>Dat.</i> cīvibus	urbibus	maribus
<i>Acc.</i> cīvīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	maria
<i>Abl.</i> cīvibus	urbibus	maribus

627

FOURTH DECLENSION

passus, m., *pace*cornū, n., *horn*

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i> passus	cornū
<i>Gen.</i> passūs	cornūs
<i>Dat.</i> passuī	cornū
<i>Acc.</i> passum	cornū
<i>Abl.</i> passū	cornū

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> passūs	cornua
<i>Gen.</i> passuum	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i> passibus	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i> passūs	cornua
<i>Abl.</i> passibus	cornibus

628

FIFTH DECLENSION

diēs, m., *day*rēs, f., *thing*

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i> diēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i> diēī	rei
<i>Dat.</i> diēī	rei
<i>Acc.</i> diem	rem
<i>Abl.</i> diē	rē

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> diēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i> diērum	rērum
<i>Dat.</i> diēbus	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i> diēs	rēs
<i>Abl.</i> diēbus	rēbus

629

SPECIAL PARADIGMS

deus, m., *god* domus, f., *home* vis, f., *force* senex, m., *old man*

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i> deus	domus	vis	senex
<i>Gen.</i> dei	domūs, -ī	vīs (rare)	senis
<i>Dat.</i> deō	domuī, -ō	vī (rare)	seni
<i>Acc.</i> deum	domum	vim	senem
<i>Abl.</i> deō	domō, -ū	vī	sene

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> dei (diī, dī)	domūs	vīrēs	senēs
<i>Gen.</i> deōrum (deum)	domōrum, -uum	vīrium	senum
<i>Dat.</i> deīs (diīs, dīs)	domibus	vīribus	senibus
<i>Acc.</i> deōs	domōs, -ūs	vīrīs, -ēs	senēs
<i>Abl.</i> deīs (diīs, dīs)	domibus	vīribus	senibus

ADJECTIVES

630

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

bonus, *good*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

liber, *free*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

pulcher, beautiful

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris

631

THIRD DECLENSION *I*-STEMS

ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

acer, ācris, ācre, keen, eager

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

omnis, omne, every, all

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
<i>Gen.</i>	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i>	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	omnem	omne	omnis, -ēs	omnia
<i>Abl.</i>	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

audāx, bold

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx	audācis, -ēs	audācia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī, -e	audācī, -e	audācibus	audācibus

potēns, powerful

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>potentēs</i>	<i>potentia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>potentis</i>	<i>potentis</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>potentium</i>	<i>potentium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>potenti</i>	<i>potenti</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>potentem</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>potentis, -ēs</i>	<i>potentia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>potenti, -e</i>	<i>potenti, -e</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

portāns, carrying

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>portāns</i>	<i>portāns</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>portantēs</i>	<i>portantia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>portantis</i>	<i>portantis</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>portantium</i>	<i>portantium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>portanti</i>	<i>portanti</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>portantibus</i>	<i>portantibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>portantem</i>	<i>portāns</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>portantēs, -is</i>	<i>portantia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>portante, -i</i>	<i>portante, -i</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>portantibus</i>	<i>portantibus</i>

632

DECLENSION OF A COMPARATIVE

altior, higher

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <i>altior</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>	<i>altiōrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>altiōrem</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>altiōre</i>	<i>altiōre</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>

plūs, more

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ———	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
<i>Gen.</i> ———	<i>plūris</i>	<i>plūrium</i>	<i>plūrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i> ———	————	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> ———	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūris, -ēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
<i>Abl.</i> ———	<i>plūre</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>

633

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius, alia, aliud, another

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>aliae</i>	<i>alia</i>
<i>Gen.</i> (<i>alius</i>)	(<i>alius</i>)	(<i>alius</i>)	<i>aliōrum</i>	<i>aliārum</i>	<i>aliōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>alii</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>alium</i>	<i>aliam</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>aliōs</i>	<i>aliās</i>	<i>alia</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>

<i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one</i>			<i>trēs, tria, three</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>ūnūs</i>	<i>ūniūs</i>	<i>ūniūs</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>trīs, trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

<i>duo, duae, duo, two</i>			<i>mille, milia, thousand</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>milia</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>mīlium</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>duōs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>milia</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>

634

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortior</i>	<i>fortissimus</i>
<i>vêlōx</i>	<i>vêlōcior</i>	<i>vêlōcissimus</i>
<i>miser</i>	<i>miserior</i>	<i>miserrimus</i>
<i>âcer</i>	<i>âcrior</i>	<i>âcerrimus</i>

ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>bonus</i>	<i>melior</i>	<i>optimus</i>
<i>malus</i>	<i>peior</i>	<i>pessimus</i>

ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON—*Continued*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
magnus	maior	maximus
parvus	minor	minimus
multus		plūrimus
multum	plūs	plūrimum
multi	plūrēs	plūrimī
senex	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
iuvenis	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
idōneus	magis idōneus	maximē idōneus
exterus	exterior	extrēmus or extimus
īferus	īferior	īnfimus or īmus
posterus	posterior	postrēmus or postumus
superus	superior	suprēmus or summus
(cis, citrā)	citerior	citimus
(in, intrā)	interior	intimus
(prae, prō)	prior	prīmus
(prope)	propior	proximus
(ultrā)	ulterior	ultimus
facilis	facilior	facillimus
difficilis	difficilior	difficillimus
similis	similior	simillimus
dissimilis	dissimilior	dissimillimus
gracilis	gracilior	gracillimus
humilis	humilior	humillimus

635

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē (lātus)	lātius	lātissimē
pulchrē (pulcher)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
miserē (miser)	miserius	miserimē
fortiter (fortis)	fortius	fortissimē
ācriter (ācer)	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē
male (malus)	peius	pessimē
magnopere (magnus)	magis	maximē
parum (parvus)	minus	minimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

636

NUMERALS

CARDINALS

1. ūnus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo
3. trēs, tria
4. quattuor
5. quīque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. ūndecim
12. duodecim
13. trēdecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quīdecim
16. sēdecim
17. septendecim
18. duodēvigintī
19. ūndēvigintī
20. vīgintī
21. { vīgintī ūnus or
ūnus et vīgintī
22. { vīgintī duo or
duo et vīgintī
23. duodētrīgintā
24. ūndētrīgintā
25. trīgintā
26. quadrāgintā
27. quinquāgintā
28. sexāgintā
29. septuāgintā
30. octōgintā
31. nōnāgintā
100. centum
101. { centum ūnus or
centum et ūnus
200. ducentī, -ae, -a
300. trēcentā

ORDINALS

- prīmus, -a, -um
- secundus
- tertius
- quārtus
- quīntus
- sextus
- septimus
- octāvus
- nōnus
- decimus
- ūndecimus
- duodecimus
- tertius decimus
- quārtus decimus
- quīntus decimus
- sextus decimus
- septimus decimus
- duodēvicēsīmus
- ūndēvicēsīmus
- vicēsīmus
- { vicēsīmus prīmus or
ūnus et vicēsīmus
- { vicēsīmus secundus or
alter et vicēsīmus
- duodētricēsīmus
- ūndētricēsīmus
- tricēsīmus
- quadrāgēsīmus
- quinquāgēsīmus
- sexāgēsīmus
- septuāgēsīmus
- octōgēsīmus
- nōnāgēsīmus
- centēsīmus
- { centēsīmus prīmus or
centēsīmus et prīmus
- ducentēsīmus
- trecentēsīmus

400.	quadringenti	quadringentēsimus
500.	quingenti	quingentēsimus
600.	sēscenti or sexcenti	sēscentēsimus
700.	septingenti	septingentēsimus
800.	octingenti	octingentēsimus
900.	nōngenti	nōngentēsimus
1000.	mille	millēsimus
2000.	duo milia	bis millēsimus
100,000.	centum milia	centiēs millēsimus

PRONOUNS

637

PERSONAL

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego, I</i>	<i>nōs, we</i>	<i>tū, you</i>	<i>vōs, you</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mei</i>	<i>nostrum (-trī)</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>vestrum (-trī)</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbis</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbis</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbis</i>

	SING.	SING.	SING.	PLUR.	PLUR.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is, he</i>	<i>ea, she</i>	<i>id, it</i>	<i>iī (eī), they</i>	<i>eae, they</i>	<i>ea, they</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eius, his</i>	<i>eius, her</i>	<i>eius, its</i>	<i>eōrum, their</i>	<i>eārum, their</i>	<i>eōrum, their</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>iīs (eīs)</i>	<i>iīs (eīs)</i>	<i>iīs (eīs)</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>iīs (eīs)</i>	<i>iīs (eīs)</i>	<i>iīs (eīs)</i>

Hic and ille are also used as pronouns of the third person.

638

REFLEXIVE

	SING.	SING.	SING.	PLUR.	PLUR.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī, of myself</i>	<i>tui, of yourself</i>	<i>sui, of himself, herself, itself</i>	<i>nostrī, of ourselves</i>	<i>vestrī, of yourselves</i>	<i>sui, of themselves</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>	<i>nōbis</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē (sēsē)</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē (sēsē)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē (sēsē)</i>	<i>nōbis</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sē (sēsē)</i>

639

RELATIVE

quī, who, which, that

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

640

INDEFINITE

quīdam, a certain (one)

SINGULAR		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
<i>Gen.</i> cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>Dat.</i> cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i> quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
<i>Abl.</i> quōdam	quādam	quōdam
PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i> quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i> quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i> quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i> quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i> quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

641

INTERROGATIVE

quis? who?

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

As an adjective, *quī, what?* is declined like the relative *quī*.

642

INDEFINITE

aliquis, some one

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> aliquis	aliquid		aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i> alicuius	alicuius		aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i> alicui	alicui		aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i> aliquem	aliquid		aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i> aliquō	aliquō		aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

The adjective is *aliquī, aliqua, aliquod*.

643

DEMONSTRATIVE

is, ea, id, this, that; he, she, it

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> is	ea	id	īī, eī	cae	ea
<i>Gen.</i> eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i> eī	eī	eī	īīs, eīs	īīs, eīs	īīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i> eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i> eō	eā	eō	īīs, eīs	īīs, eīs	īīs, eīs

hic, haec, hoc, this (the latter)

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i> huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i> huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i> hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i> hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, illa, illud, that (the former)

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i> illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i> illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i> illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i> illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

iste, ista, istud, *that (of yours)*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i> istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i> istī	isti	istī	istis	istis	istis
<i>Acc.</i> istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i> istō	istā	istō	istis	istis	istis

idem, eadem, idem, *the same*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> idem	eadem	idem	{ iidem eidem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i> eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i> eidem	eidem	eidem	{ iisdem eisdem	iisdem eisdem	iisdem eisdem
<i>Acc.</i> eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i> eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ iisdem eisdem	iisdem eisdem	iisdem eisdem

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *self (intensive)*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i> ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i> ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i> ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i> ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

REGULAR VERBS

644

FIRST CONJUGATION

portō, *carry*

Principal Parts: portō, portāre, portāvi, portātus

Stems: portā-, portāv-, portāt-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

I carry, am carrying, etc.

portō	portāmus
portās	portātis
portat	portant

PRESENT

PASSIVE

I am carried, etc.

portor	portāmur
portāris	portāmini
portātur	portantur

IMPERFECT

*I carried, was carrying, etc.**I was carried, etc.*

portābam	portābāmus	portābar	portābāmur
portābās	portābātis	portābāris	portābāminī
portābat	portābant	portābātur	portābantur

FUTURE

*I shall carry, etc.**I shall be carried, etc.*

portābō	portābimus	portābor	portābimur
portābis	portābitis	portāberis	portābiminī
portābit	portābunt	portābitur	portābuntur

PERFECT

*I have carried, I carried, etc.**I have been (was) carried, etc.*

portāvī	portāvimus	portātus (-a, -um)	{ sum es est	portātī (-ae, -a)	{ sumus estis sunt
portāvistī	portāvistis				
portāvit	portāverunt				

PLUPERFECT

*I had carried, etc.**I had been carried, etc.*

portāveram	portāverāmus	portātus (-a, -um)	{ eram erās erat	portātī (-ae, -a)	{ erāmus erātis erant
portāverās	portāverātis				
portāverat	portāverant				

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have carried, etc.**I shall have been carried, etc.*

portāverō	portāverimus	portātus (-a, -um)	{ erō eris erit	portātī (-ae, -a)	{ erimus eritis erunt
portāveris	portāveritis				
portāverit	portāverint				

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PRESENT

portem	portēmus
portēs	portētis
portet	portent

PASSIVE

portemur
portēmini
portentur

IMPERFECT

portārem	portārēmus	portārer	portārēmur
portārēs	portārētis	portārēris	portārēmini
portāret	portārent	portārētur	portārentur

PERFECT

portāverim	portāverimus	portātus	{ sim	portātī	{ sīmus
portāveris	portāveritis	(-a, -um)	{ sis	(-ae, -a)	{ sītis
portāverit	portāverint		{ sit		{ sint

PLUPERFECT

portāvissem	portāvissēmus	portātus	{ essem	portātī	{ essēmus
portāvissēs	portāvissētis	(-a, -um)	{ essēs	(-ae, -a)	{ essētis
portāvisset	portāvissent		{ esset		{ essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

portā, *carry thou*
portāte, *carry ye*

portāre, *be thou carried*
portāmini, *be ye carried*

FUTURE

Thou shalt carry, etc.

Thou shalt be carried, etc.

2d portātō

portātōte

portātor

3d portātō

portantō

portātor

portantor

INFINITIVE

Pres. portāre, *to carry*

portārī, *to be carried*

Perf. portāvisse, *to have carried*

portātus esse, *to have been carried*

Fut. portātūrus esse, *to be about to carry*

portātum irī, *to be about to be carried*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. portāns, -antis, *carrying*

Perf. portātus, -a, -um, *having been carried*

Fut. portātūrus, -a, -um, *about to carry*

GERUND

Gen. portandī, *of carrying*

Dat. portandō, *for carrying*

Acc. portandum, *carrying*

Abl. portandō, *by carrying*

GERUNDIVE

portandus, -a, -um, *to be carried*

SUPINE

Acc. portātum, *to carry*

Abl. portātū, *to carry, in the carrying*

645

SECOND CONJUGATION

moneō, *advise*

Principal Parts: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

Stems: monē-, monu-, monit-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PRESENT

I advise, warn, etc.

moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

PASSIVE

I am advised, warned, etc.

moneor	monēmur
monēris	monēmini
monētur	monentur

IMPERFECT

I advised, was advising, etc.

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

I was advised, etc.

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris	monēbāmini
monēbātur	monēbantur

FUTURE

I shall advise, etc.

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

I shall be advised, etc.

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis	monēbimini
monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT

I have advised, etc.

monuī	monuimus
monuistī	monuistis
monuit	monuērunt

I have been advised, etc.

monitus	{ sum	monitī	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
(-a, -um)	{ est	(-ae, -a)	{ sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had advised, etc.

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

I had been advised, etc.

monitus	{ eram	monitī	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
(-a, -um)	{ erat	(-ae, -a)	{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have advised, etc.

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

I shall have been advised, etc.

monitus	{ erō	monitī	{ erimus
	{ eris		{ eritis
(-a, um)	{ erit	(-ae, -a)	{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

IMPERFECT

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT

monuerim	monuerīmus	monitus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$	monitī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$
monueris	monueritis	(-a, -um)		(-ae, -a)	
monuerit	monuerint				

PLUPERFECT

monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{array} \right.$	monitī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{array} \right.$
monuissēs	monuissētis	(-a, -um)		(-ae, -a)	
monuisset	monuissent				

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē, advise thou
monēte, advise ye

monēre, be thou advised
monēmini, be ye advised

FUTURE

Thou shalt advise, etc.
 2d **monētō** **monētōte**
 3d **monētō** **monentō**

Thou shalt be advised, etc.
 2d **monētor**
 3d **monētor** **monentor**

INFINITIVE

Pres. **monēre**, to advise
Perf. **monuisse**, to have advised
Fut. **monitūrus esse**, to be about
 to advise

monēri, to be advised
monitus esse, to have been ad-
 vised
monitum iri, to be about to be ad-
 vised

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i> monēns, -entis, <i>advising</i>	<i>Perf.</i> monitus, -a, -um, <i>having</i>
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to advise</i>	<i>been advised</i>

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i> monendī, <i>of advising</i>
<i>Dat.</i> monendō, <i>for advising</i>
<i>Acc.</i> monendum, <i>advising</i>
<i>Abl.</i> monendō, <i>by advising</i>

GERUNDIVE

monendus, -a, -um, <i>to be advised</i>

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i> monitum, <i>to advise</i>
<i>Abl.</i> monitū, <i>to advise, in the advising</i>

646

THIRD CONJUGATION

dūcō, *lead*

Principal Parts: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus

Stems: dūce-, dūx-, duct-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PRESENT

I lead, am leading, etc.

dūcō	dūcimus
dūcis	dūcitis
dūcit	dūcunt

PASSIVE

I am led, etc.

dūcor	dūcimur
dūceris	dūcimini
dūcitur	dūcuntur

IMPERFECT

I led, was leading, etc.

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant

I was led, was being led, etc.

dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris	dūcēbāmini
dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur

FUTURE

I shall lead, etc.

dūcam	dūcēmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcet	dūcent

I shall be led, etc.

dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēris	dūcēmini
dūcētur	dūcentur

PERFECT

I led, have led, etc.

dūxī	dūximus
dūxistī	dūxistis
dūxit	dūxērunt

I was led, have been led, etc.

ductus	{ sum	ductī	{ sumus
(-a, -um)	{ es	(-ae, -a)	{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had led, etc.

dūxeram	dūxerāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis
dūxerat	dūxerant

I had been led, etc.

ductus	{ eram	ducti	{ erāmus
(-a, -um)	{ erās	(-ae, -a)	{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have led, etc.

dūxerō	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

I shall have been led, etc.

ductus	{ erō	ducti	{ erimus
(-a, -um)	{ eris	(-ae, -a)	{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

dūcam	dūcāmus
dūcās	dūcātis
dūcat	dūcant

PASSIVE

PRESENT

dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcāris	dūcāmini
dūcātur	dūcantur

IMPERFECT

dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris	dūcerēmini
dūceret	dūcerent	dūcerētur	dūcerentur

PERFECT

dūxerim	dūxerimus	ductus,	{ sim	ducti,	{ simus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	(-a, -um)	{ sis	(-ae, -a)	{ sitis
dūxerit	dūxerint		{ sit		{ sint

PLUPERFECT

dūxissem	dūxissemus	ductus,	{ essem	ducti	{ essēmus
dūxisse	dūxissetis	(-a, -um)	{ essēs	(-ae, -a)	{ essētis
dūxisset	dūxisissent		{ esset		{ essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

dūc, *lead thou*
dūcite, *lead ye*

dūcere, *be thou led*
dūcimini, *be ye led*

FUTURE

Thou shalt lead, etc.

2d dūcitō

dūcitōte

3d dūcitō

dūcuntō

Thou shalt be led, etc.

2d dūcitor

3d dūcitor

dūcuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. dūcere, to lead

dūcī, to be led

Perf. dūxisse, to have led

ductus esse, to have been led

Fut. ductūrus esse, to be about to lead

ductum irī, to be about to be led

PARTICIPLES

Pres. dūcēns, -entis, leading

Perf. ductus, -a, -um, having been led

Fut. ductūrus, -a, -um, about to lead

GERUNDIVE

Gen. dūcendī, of leading

dūcendus, -a, -um, to be led

Dat. dūcendō, for leading

SUPINE

Acc. dūcendum, leading

Acc. ductum, to lead

Abl. dūcendō, by leading

Abl. ductū, to lead, in the leading

647

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN -iō

capiō, take

Principal Parts: capiō, capere, cēpi, captus

Stems: cape-, cēp-, capt-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I take, am taking, etc.**I am taken, etc.*

capiō

capimus

capior

capimur

capis

capitis

caperis

capimini

capit

capiunt

capitur

capiuntur

IMPERFECT

*I took, was taking, etc.**I was taken, etc.*

capiēbam

capiēbāmus

capiēbar

capiēbāmur

capiēbās

capiēbātis

capiēbāris

capiēbāmini

capiēbat

capiēbant

capiēbātur

capiēbantur

FUTURE

I shall take, etc.

capiam	capiēmus
capiēs	capiētis
capiet	capiēt

I shall be taken, etc.

capiar	capiēmur
capiēris	capiēmini
capiētur	capiēntur

PERFECT

I have taken, took, etc.

cēpī	cēpimus
cēpistī	cēpistis
cēpit	cēpērunt

I have been (was) taken, etc.

captus (-a, -um)	{	sum	captī	{	sumus
		es			estis
		est			sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had taken, etc.

cēperam	cēperāmus
cēperās	cēperātis
cēperat	cēperant

I had been taken, etc.

captus (-a, -um)	{	eram	captī	{	erāmus
		erās			erātis
		erat			erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have taken, etc.

cēperō	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

I shall have been taken, etc.

captus (-a, -um)	{	erō	captī	{	erimus
		eris			eritis
		erit			erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

capiam	capiāmus
capiās	capiātis
capiat	capiant

PRESENT

PASSIVE

capiar	capiāmur
capiāris	capiāmini
capiātur	capiantur

IMPERFECT

caperem	caperēmus
caperēs	caperētis
caperet	caperent

caperer	caperēmur
caperēris	caperēmini
caperētur	caperentur

PERFECT

cēperim	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

captus (-a, -um)	{	sim	captī	{	simus
		sis			sitis
		sit			sint

PLUPERFECT

cēpīssēm	cēpīssēmūs	captus (-a, -um)	{	essem	capti (-ae, -a)	{	essēmūs
cēpīssēs	cēpīssētis			essēs			essētis
cēpīssēt	cēpīssēt			esset			essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

cape, take thou	capere, be thou taken
capite, take ye	capimini, be ye taken

FUTURE

Thou shalt take, etc.		Thou shalt be taken, etc.	
2d capitō	capitōte	2d capitor	
3d capitō	capiuntō	3d capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. capere, to take	capī, to be taken
Perf. cēpisse, to have taken	captus esse, to have been taken
Fut. captūrus esse, to be about to take	captum irī, to be about to be taken

PARTICIPLES

Pres. capiēns, -ientis, taking	Perf. captus, -a, -um, taken, having been taken
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um, about to take	

GERUND

Gen. capiendī, of taking
Dat. capiendō, for taking
Acc. capiendum, taking
Abl. capiendō, by taking

GERUNDIVE

capiendus, -a, -um, to be taken

SUPINE

Acc. captum, to take
Abl. captū, to take, in the taking

648

FOURTH CONJUGATION

audiō, hear

Principal Parts: audiō, audire, audivī, auditus

Stems: audī-, audiv-, audit-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PRESENT

I hear, etc.	
audiō	audimus
audis	auditis
audit	audiunt

PASSIVE

I am heard, etc.

audior	audimur
audiris	audimini
audītur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT

I was hearing, etc.

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

I was heard, etc.

audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbāris	audiēbāmini
audiēbātur	audiēbantur

FUTURE

I shall hear, etc.

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

I shall be heard, etc.

audiar	audiēmur
audiēris	audiēmini
audiētur	audientur

PERFECT

I have heard, etc.

audīvī	audivimus
audivistī	audivistis
audīvit	audivērunt

I have been heard, etc.

audītus,	{ sum	audītī,	{ sumus
(-a, -um)	{ es	(-ae, -a)	{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had heard, etc.

audīveram	audiverāmus
audīverās	audiverātis
audīverat	audiverant

I had been heard, etc.

audītus,	{ eram	audītī,	{ erāmus
(-a, -um)	{ erās	(-ae, -a)	{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have heard, etc.

audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

I shall have been heard, etc.

audītus,	{ erō	audītī,	{ erimus
(-a, -um)	{ eris	(-ae, -a)	{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

PRESENT

audiar
audiāris
audiātur

PASSIVE

audiāmur
audiāmini
audiantur

IMPERFECT

audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

PERFECT

audiverim	audiverimus	auditus,	auditi,
audiveris	audiveritis	(-a, -um)	(-ae, -a)
audiverit	audiverint	{ sim	{ simus
		{ sis	{ sitis
		{ sit	{ sint

PLUPERFECT

audivissem	audivissēmus	auditus,	auditi,
audivissēs	audivissētis	(-a, -um)	(-ae, -a)
audivisset	audivissent	{ essem	{ essēmus
		{ essēs	{ essētis
		{ esset	{ essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audi, hear thou	audire, be thou heard
audite, hear ye	audimini, be ye heard

FUTURE

auditō, thou shalt hear	auditor, thou shalt be heard
auditō, he shall hear	auditor, he shall be heard
auditōte, ye shall hear	—————
audiuntō, they shall hear	audiuntor, they shall be heard

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> audire, to hear	audiri, to be heard
<i>Perf.</i> audivisse, to have heard	auditus esse, to have been heard
<i>Fut.</i> auditūrus esse, to be about to hear.	auditum iri, to be about to be heard

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i> audiēns, -entis, hearing	<i>Pres.</i> —————
<i>Fut.</i> auditūrus, -a, -um, about to hear	<i>Ger.</i> audiendus, -a, -um, to be heard
<i>Perf.</i> —————	<i>Perf.</i> auditus, -a, -um, having been heard, heard

GERUND

SUPINE

<i>Nom.</i>	_____		
<i>Gen.</i>	audiendī, of hearing	<i>Acc.</i>	auditum, to hear
<i>Dat.</i>	audiendō, for hearing	<i>Abl.</i>	auditū, to hear, in the hearing
<i>Acc.</i>	audiendum, hearing		
<i>Abl.</i>	audiendō, by hearing		

649

DEPONENT VERBS

Principal Parts	{ cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, <i>attempt</i>
	{ vereor, verērī, veritus sum, <i>fear</i>
	{ ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, <i>use</i>
	{ potior, potirī, potitus sum, <i>get possession of</i>

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnor	vereor	ūtor	potior
	cōnāris	verēris	ūteris	potiris
	cōnātur	verētur	ūtitur	potitur
	cōnāmur	verēmur	ūtimur	potimur
	cōnāminī	verēminī	ūtiminī	potiminī
	cōnantur	verentur	ūtuntur	potiuntur
<i>Imperf.</i>	cōnābar	verēbar	ūtēbar	potiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnābor	verēbor	ūtār	potiār
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sum	veritus sum	ūsus sum	potitus sum
<i>Pluperf.</i>	cōnātus eram	veritus eram	ūsus eram	potitus eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	cōnātus erō	veritus erō	ūsus erō	potitus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōner	verear	ūtār	potiār
<i>Imperf.</i>	cōnārer	verērer	ūterer	potirer
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sim	veritus sim	ūsus sim	potitus sim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	cōnātus essem	veritus essem	ūsus essem	potitus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāre	verēre	ūtēre	potīre
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātor	verētor	ūtitor	potitor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnārī	verērī	ūtī	potīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus esse	veritus esse	ūsus esse	potītus esse
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	cōnātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	ūsūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāns	verēns	ūtēns	potiēns
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	cōnātūrus	veritūrus	ūsūrus	potītūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus	veritus	ūsus	potītus
<i>Gerundive</i>	cōnandus	verendus	ūtendus	potiendus

GERUND

cōnandī	verendī	ūtendī	potiendī
---------	---------	--------	----------

SUPINE

cōnātum	veritum	ūsum	potitum
cōnātū	veritū	ūsū	potitū

IRREGULAR VERBS

650

sum, *be*

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum, <i>I am</i>	sumus, <i>we are</i>
es, <i>thou art</i>	estis, <i>you are</i>
est, <i>he (she, it) is</i>	sunt, <i>they are</i>

IMPERFECT

eram, <i>I was</i>	erāmus, <i>we were</i>
erās, <i>thou wast</i>	erātis, <i>you were</i>
erat, <i>he was</i>	erant, <i>they were</i>

FUTURE

erō, I shall be
eris, thou wilt be
erit, he will be

erimus, we shall be
eritis, you will be
erunt, they will be

PERFECT

fui, I have been, was
fuisti, thou hast been, wast
fuit, he has been, was

fuimus, we have been, were
fuistis, you have been, were
fuērunt, they have been, were

PLUPERFECT

fueram, I had been
fuērās, thou hadst been
fuerať, he had been

fuērāmus, we had been
fuērātis, you had been
fuerať, they had been

FUTURE PERFECT

fuero, I shall have been
fueris, thou wilt have been
fuert, he will have been

fuerimus, we shall have been
fuertis, you will have been
fuertint, they will have been

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

SING.	PLUR.
<i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>
<i>sis</i>	<i>sītis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>

IMPERFECT

SING.	PLUR.
<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>

PERFECT

<i>fuirim</i>	<i>fuērīmus</i>
<i>fuērīs</i>	<i>fuērītis</i>
<i>fuert</i>	<i>fuertint</i>

PLUPERFECT

<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

es, be thou
este, be ye

FUTURE

estō, thou shalt be
estō, he shall be
estōte, ye shall be
suntō, they shall be

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

Pres. **esse**, *to be**Perf.* **fuisse**, *to have been**Fut.* **futūrus esse** or **fore**, *to be about to be***futūrus, -a, -um**, *about to be*

651

possum, *be able, can*Principal Parts: **possum, posse, potuī**, —

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. **possum** **possumus****possim** **possimus****potes** **potestis****possis** **possitis****potest** **possunt****possit** **possint***Imperf.* **poteram** **poterāmus****possem** **possēmus***Fut.* **poterō** **poterimus***Perf.* **potuī** **potuimus****potuerim** **potuerimus***Pluperf.* **potueram** **potuerāmus****potuissem** **potuissēmus***Fut. Perf.* **potuerō** **potuerimus**

INFINITIVE

Pres. **posse***Perf.* **potuisse**

PARTICIPLE

Pres. **potēns, -entis** (adjective), *powerful*

652

prōsum, *benefit*Principal Parts: **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres **prōsum** **prōsumus****prōsim** **prōsīmus****prōdes** **prōdestis****prōsīs** **prōsītis****prōdest** **prōsunt****prōsit** **prōsint***Imperf.* **prōderam** **prōderāmus****prōdessem** **prodessēmus***Fut.* **prōderō** **prōderimus***Perf.* **prōfui** **prōfuimus****prōfuerim** **prōfuerimus***Pluperf.* **prōfueram** **prōfuerāmus****prōfuissem** **prōfuissēmus***Fut. Perf.* **prōfuerō** **prōfuerimus**

IMPERATIVE

Pres. **orōdes**, *benefit thou***prōdeste**, *benefit ye*

INFINITIVE

Pres. prōdesse*Perf.* prōfuisse*Fut.* prōfutūrus, -a, -um, esse

FUTURE PARTICIPLE

prōfutūrus, -a, -um

- 353 Principal Parts { volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*
 mālō, mälle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*
- nē (*not*) + volō = nōlō; mā (*magis, more*) + volō = mālō

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Imperf.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Pluperf.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
<i>Imperf.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres. nōli, *be thou unwilling*nōlite, *be ye unwilling*

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nölle	mälle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nöluisse	mäluisse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nölēns
--------------	--------	--------

654

ferō, bear

Principal Parts: ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
<i>Imperf.</i>	ferēbam		ferēbar	
<i>Fut.</i>	feram, ferēs, etc.		ferar, ferēris, etc.	
<i>Perf.</i>	tuli		lātus sum	
<i>Pluperf.</i>	tuleram		lātus eram	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	feram, ferās, etc.	ferar, ferāris, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	ferrem	ferrer
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim	lātus sim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fer, bear thou ferte, bear ye	ferre, be thou borne feriminī, be ye borne
--------------	----------------------------------	---

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus, -a, -um esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns, -entis	—
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus, -a, -um	<i>Ger.</i> ferendus, -a, -um
<i>Perf.</i>	—	lātus, -a, -um

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	ferendi
<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō
<i>Acc.</i>	ferendum
<i>Abl.</i>	ferendō

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	lātum
<i>Abl.</i>	lātū

655

fiō, become, be madePrincipal Parts: **fiō, fieri, factus sum**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	fiō [fimus] fīs [fitis] fiūt fiunt	fiam	[fi, become thou] [fite. become ye]
<i>Imperf.</i>	fiēbam	fierem	
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam	—	
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum	factus sim	
<i>Pluperf.</i>	factus eram	factus essem	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	factus erō	—	

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fieri
<i>Perf.</i>	factus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	[factum iri]

PARTICIPLES

<i>Ger.</i>	faciendus
<i>Perf.</i>	factus

656

eō, goPrincipal Parts: **eō, ire, iī (ivī), itūrus**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	eō imus is itis it eunt	eam	i, go thou ite, go ye
<i>Imperf.</i>	ibam	irem	
<i>Fut.</i>	ibō	—	
<i>Perf.</i>	iī (ivī)	ierim (iverim)	
<i>Pluperf.</i>	ieram (iveram)	iissem (ivissem)	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	ierō (iverō)	—	

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ire
<i>Perf.</i>	iisse, isse (ivisse)
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

iēns, euntis
itum
itūrus

	GERUND	SUPINE
<i>Gen.</i>	eundī	
<i>Dat.</i>	eundō	
<i>Acc.</i>	eundum	[itum]
<i>Abl.</i>	eundō	[itū]

657

dō, *give*

Principal Parts: dō, dare, dedī, datus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	dō	damus	[dor]	damur
	dās	datis	daris	damini
	dat	dant	datur	dantur
<i>Imperf.</i>	dabam		dabar	
<i>Fut.</i>	dabō		dabor	
<i>Perf.</i>	dedī		datus sum	
<i>Pluperf.</i>	dederam		datus eram	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	dederō		datus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	dem, dēs, det, etc.	[der], dēris, dētur, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	darem	darer
<i>Perf.</i>	dederim	datus sim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	dedissem	datus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	dā	date	dare	damini
<i>Fut.</i>	datō	datōte	dator	-----
	datō	dantō	dator	dantor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	dare	dari
<i>Perf.</i>	dedisse	datus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	datūrus esse	datum iri

PARTICIPLES

Pres. dāns, dantis
Fut. datūrus

Perf. datus
Ger. dandus

GERUND

Gen. dandī
Dat. dandō
Acc. dandum
Abl. dandō

SUPINE

Acc. datum
Abl. datū

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

658

A

ab (ā, abs), prep. with abl., *from, away, at*; with personal agent, *by*.
abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead away, take off*.
abeō, -īre, -īi (-ivī), -itūrus, *go away*.
abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (ab + iaciō), *cast away, throw aside*.
abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus (abs + caedō, cut), *cut away, cut off*.
absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, irr. *intr., be away, be absent*.
accidō, -cidere, -cidī (ad + cadō, fall), *intr., fall to, happen*.
accipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus (ad + capiō, take), *accept, receive*.
accumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, intr., *lie, recline (at table)*.
accurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum (ad + currō, run), *intr., run to, ride up*.
accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *accuse, blame*.
ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, keen*.
aciēs, -ēī, f., *point, edge, line of battle*.
Acrisius, -ī, m., *Acrisius*.
ācritēr, adv., *keenly, sharply, fiercely*.
actuāriolum, -ī, m., *rowboat, barge*.
ad, prep. with acc. (with verb of motion), toward, against; (with verb not indicating motion), near.
addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, influence, induce*.

adeō, -īre, -īi (-ivī), -itus, irr., tr. and intr., *go to, visit, approach, attack*.
adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātus, irr., *bring to, bring, report, cause, announce*.
adficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus (ad + faciō, make), *do to, affect, move*.
adhibeō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitus (ad + habeō, have), *show, exhibit, employ, use*.
adhūc, adv., *thus far, as yet*.
adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūunctus, *join to, attach, add to*.
adligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bind to, bind*.
admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send to, admit, allow, let go (of a horse)*.
admoneō, -monēre, -monui, -monitus, *remind, admonish*.
admoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, *move to, apply to, bring*.
adsum, -esse, adfui, adfutūrus, irr., *intr., be near, be present*.
adulēscēns, adulēscētis, m., *youth, young man; as adj., young*.
adveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *intr., come to, arrive at, reach*.
aedificium, -ī, n., *building*.
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *build*.
Aeētes, -ae, m., *Aeetes*.
Aequī, -ōrum, Aequians, *Latin people, rivals of the Romans*.
aequus, -a, -um, adj., *level, even, just, honest*.

æēr, æeris (acc. æera), m., *air*.
 aes, aeris, n., *bronze, copper*.
 Aesōn, -onis, m., *Aeson*.
 aestās, aestātis, f., *summer*.
 aetās, aetātis, f., *age, lime*.
 Aethiopēs, -um, plur., *Aethiopians*.
 Africānus, -a, -um, adj., *African*.
 ager, agrī, m., *land, field, country*.
 agmen, agminis, n., *marching column*
 (of an army).
 agnōscō, agnōscere, agnōvī, agnitus,
recognize.
 agō, agere, ēgī, actus, *drive, do*;
 grātias agere, *to extend thanks*; vī-
 tam agere, *to pass one's life*.
 agricola, -ae, m., *farmer*.
 āla, -ae, f., *wing*.
 albus, -a, -um, adj., *white*.
 alea, -ae, f., *die*; plur., *dice*.
 Alexander, -drī, m., a Greek king.
 alii . . . alii, irr. adj., also pro.,
some . . . others.
 aliquis, -quid, indef. pro., *anyone*,
anything.
 alius, -a, -ud, irr. adj., also pro., *an-*
other, other.
 alius . . . alius, *one . . . another*.
 Alpēs, -ium, f., *the Alps mountains*.
 altē, adv., *high*.
 alter, altera, alterum, irr. adj., also
 pro., *one (of two), the other (of two)*.
 alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other*.
 alterī . . . alterī, *the one party . . .*
the other.
 altitūdō, -inis, f., *height, depth*.
 altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep, tall*.
 ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk*.
 Americānus, -a, -um, adj., *American*.
 amīcē, adv., *in a friendly manner*.
 amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendship*.
 amīcus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly*.

amīcus, -ī, m., *friend*.
 āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send*
away, lose.
 amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love, like*.
 āmoveō, āmovēre, āmōvī, āmōtus,
move from, put away.
 amplus, -a, -um, adj., *large, wide*,
distinguished.
 ancora, -ae, f., *anchor*; in ancoris, *at*
anchor.
 Andromeda, -ae, f., *Andromeda*.
 anguis, anguis, m. and f., *snake*.
 anima, -ae, f., *breath, life*.
 animōsus, -a, -um, adj., *full of life*,
spirited.
 animus, -ī, m., *spirit, soul, courage*.
 annus, -ī, m., *year*.
 ante, prep. with acc., *before*.
 antea, adv., *before, previously*.
 antequam, conj., *before*.
 aperiō, aperire, aperuī, apertus,
open, uncover.
 Apollō, -inis, m., *Apollo, god of the sun*.
 apparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tr. and
 intr., *prepare, get ready for*.
 appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, name*.
 appellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, *drive*
to, bring (a ship) to land.
 Appius, -a, -um, *Appian*; Appia Via,
name of a Roman highway.
 appōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus,
put before, serve.
 appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus,
 intr., *approach, draw near*.
 aptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fit, fasten*.
 apud, prep. with acc., *among, at the*
home of, with.
 aqua, -ae, f., *water*.
 arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, dep., *judge*,
consider.
 arbor, -oris, f., *tree*.

arca, -ae, f., *chest, box*.
arcessō, -cessere, -cessivī, -cessitus, *call, summon*.
arcus, -ūs, m., *bow*.
arēna (harēna), -ae, f., *sand, beach, arena*.
Argō, Argūs, f., *the ship Argo*.
Argonautae, -ārum, m., *Argonauts*.
Argus, -ī, m., *builder of the Argo*.
arma, armōrum (plur. only), *weapons, arms*.
armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *arm, equip*.
arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *plow*.
ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, tr. and intr., *climb up, mount*.
at, conj., *but, but yet, at least*.
Athēnae, -ārum, f., *Athens, a city in Greece*.
Athēniēnsēs, Athēniēnsium, m., *the Athenians*.
atque (ac, before consonants only), conj., *and, and especially; simul atque, as soon as*.
ātrium, -ī, n., *hall of a Roman house*.
Attica, -ae, f., *a province of Greece*.
attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus (ad + tangō, touch), *touch upon, reach*.
auctōritās, auctōritātis, f., *influence, authority*.
audācia, -ae, f., *boldness, daring*.
audācter, adv., *boldly, fearlessly*.
audāx, audācis, adj., *bold, daring*.
audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, *hear*.
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (ab + ferō, bear), *bear away, remove*.
aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgī (ab + fugiō, flee), intr., *flee away*.
augur, auguris, m. and f., *soothsayer*.
aureus, -a, -um, adj., *golden, of gold*.
aut, conj., *or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or*.

autem (never first in clause), conj., *moreover, on the other hand, but*.

auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help*.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*.

B

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, barbarous*.

barbarus, -ī, m., *barbarian, foreigner*.

beātus, -a, -um, adj., *happy, blessed*.

bellum, -ī, n., *war; bellum cīvile, civil war; bellum gerere, wage war*.

bēlua, -ae, f., *beast, monster*.

bene (bonus), adv., *well; melius, better; optimē, best*.

beneficium, -ī, n., *kindness, favor, good deed*.

Beneventum, -ī, n., *a town in Italy*.

benignē, adv., *kindly*.

bīnī, -ae, -a, *two* (428, note 1).

bis, num. adv., *twice*.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good; melior, better; optimus, best*.

brevis, -e, adj., *short*.

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus, a Roman general, one of Caesar's assassins*.

Bucephala (acc. plur.), n., *name of a town*.

Bucephalus, -ī, m., *name of Alexander's horse*.

C

caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind*.

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens*.

Caesar, Caesaris, m., *a Roman general and statesman*.

calceus, -ī, m., *shoe*.

callidē, adv., *cleverly, skillfully*.

callidus, -a, -um, adj., *wary, shrewd, clever*.

campus, -ī, m., *plain, field*.

capiō, capere, cēpi, captus, take, get, capture.

captivus, -ī, m., captive, prisoner.

Capua, -ae, f., Capua, a city in Italy.

caput, capitis, n., head, person.

carrus, -ī, m., cart.

Carthāgō, Carthāginis, f., Carthage, a city of Africa; Carthāginiēnsis, -is (n. and adj.), Carthaginian.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, valuable.

casa, -ae, f., cottage, hut.

castigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, whip, beat.

Castor, -ōris, m., Castor, a Roman hero.

castra, -ōrum, n. (plur. only), camp.

cāsus, -ūs, m., chance, accident.

Catō, -ōnis, m., a Roman.

cauda, -ae, f., tail.

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason; in the abl., after a gen., for the sake of.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, tr. and intr., beware.

caverna, -ae, f., cave, cavern.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick.

celeritās, -ātis, f., speed, swiftness.

celeriter, adv., quickly, speedily.

cēna, -ae, f., dinner.

cēnāculum, -ī, n., dining-room.

Centaurus, -ī, m., Centaur, fabled monster, half man, half horse.

centum, indecl. num. adj., a hundred.

centum milia, a hundred thousand(s).

centum quadrāgintā milia passuum, one hundred forty thousand(s) of paces, one hundred forty miles.

Cēpheus, -ī, m., Cepheus.

cēra, -ae, f., wax.

Cerēs, -eris, f., Ceres, Roman goddess of agriculture.

certāmen, -inis, n., struggle, contest.

certē, adv., certainly, at least.

certus, -a, -um, adj., certain, sure; certior factus, informed.

cēteri, -ae, -a, plur. adj., the rest, the others.

Christus, -ī, m., Christ.

cibus, -ī, m., food.

Cincinnātus, -ī, m., Cincinnatus.

circiter, adv., and prep. with acc., about, nearly.

circum, adv., and prep. with acc., around.

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead around, draw around.

circumscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, draw a line around, hem in.

circumveniō, -venīre, -venī, -ventus, come around, surround, cheat.

Circus Maximus, Roman arena.

citharoedus, -ī, m., minstrel.

civis, civis, m. and f., citizen.

civitās, civitātis, f., state, citizenship.

clam, adv., and prep. with abl., secretly.

clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, shout.

clāmor, -ōris, m., a shout.

clārus, -a, -um, adj., clear, famous.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, close, shut.

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, recognize, learn, ascertain.

cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, cōactus (com + agō, drive), compel, force.

cohors, cohortis, f., cohort (the tenth part of a legion).

cohortor, -hortārī, -hortātus, dep., cheer, encourage.

Colchis, Colchidis (acc., -ida), f., Colchis, a country near the Black Sea.

collabōrō, -āre, labor with or together.

collum, -ī, m., neck.

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, cultivate,
inhabit.

columba, -ae, f., dove, pigeon.

com (co, col, con, cor), used instead
of the prep. *cum* as a prefix, *with,*
together; sometimes used only as
an intensive, and has no separate
translation.

comes, comitis, m. and f., comrade,
companion.

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus,
commit, intrust, join; with *proeli-*
um, begin.

commoror, -ārī, -ātus, dep., intr.,
delay.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,
alarm, excite, stir.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, get to-
gether, prepare.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, fill,
fill up.

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry or
bring together, collect.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī,
-hēnsus, seize, catch, arrest.

concilium, -ī, n., council, meeting.

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, arouse,
excite, incite.

concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus,
intr., run together, rush up.

cōnfectus, -a, -um, adj., weakened.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, irr.,
bring together; with *sē, betake one's*
self.

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus (con
+ faciō, make), finish, accomplish,
exhaust.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, strengthen,
encourage, confirm.

cōnfligō, -fligere, -flixī, -flīctus, tr.
and intr., dash together, fight.

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (con +
iaciō, throw), hurl, cast, throw
together.

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus,
join with, unite.

coniūratiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., tr. and intr.,
attempt, try.

cōnscrībō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scrip-
tus, enroll, levy; patrēs cōnscriptī,
senators.

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum,
dep., follow closely, obtain, overtake.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save
fully, preserve.

cōnservus, -ī, m., fellow slave.

cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessūrus,
intr., sit together, settle, encamp.

cōnsilium, -ī, n., advice, plan.

cōnsisto, -sistere, -stitī, intr., stop,
halt.

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., sight.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus,
catch sight of, see.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus,
tr. and intr., station, decide,
appoint.

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suē-
tum, intr., become accustomed.

cōnsul, cōsulis, m., consul.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -sulūī, -sultus, tr.
and intr., consult, deliberate.

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-
tus, use up, spend.

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, cover,
conceal.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -ten-
tūrus, intr., struggle, strive, hasten.

continēns, continentis, f., mainland.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus,
hold together, confine, surround.

contrā, prep. with acc., *against*.
conveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, tr. and intr., *come together, meet*.
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call together.
coōrior, -ōriri, -örtus, dep., intr., *arise, spring up*.
cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance; plur., troops, resources*.
Corinthus, -ī, f., *Corinth, a city in Greece*.
cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing of an army*.
corōna, -ae, f., *crown*.
corpus, corporis, n., *body, person*.
cotidiē, adv., *daily*.
crās, adv., *tomorrow*.
crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, thick*.
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, tr. and intr., *believe, trust*.
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, intr., *grow*.
Crēta, -ae, f., *Crete, an island near Greece*.
crūdelis, -e, adj., *cruel, severe*.
culpa, -ae, f., *fault*.
cum, prep. with abl., *with*.
cum, conj., usually with the subj., *when, since, although*.
cupiditās, -ātis, f., *greed, desire*.
cupiō, -ere, ivī, -itus, tr. and intr., *desire*.
cūr, adv., *why?*
cūra, -ae, f., *care, anxiety*.
currō, currere, cucurri, cursurus, intr., *run*.
currus, -ūs, m., *chariot*.
cursor, -ōris, m., *runner*.
cursus, -ūs, m., *course, running, voyage*.
Cyzicus, -ī, f., *Cyzicus, a city in Asia*.

D

Danaē, acc. **Danaēn**, mother of Perseus.
Dārius, Dāri, m., a king of Persia.
dē, prep. with abl., *down from, from; concerning, about*.
dēbeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitus (dē + habeō, have), *ought, owe, deserve*.
decem, indecl. adj., *ten*.
dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus (dē + cernō, sift, separate), tr. and intr., *determine, decide*.
dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (dē + certō, struggle), tr. and intr., *fight to a finish, contend*.
decimus, -a, -um, adj., *tenth*.
dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursurus, intr., *run down, run away*.
dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead down or away, guide, conduct*.
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus (dē + fendō), *ward off, defend, protect*.
dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., *worn out, wearied*.
dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus (dē + faciō), tr. and intr., *fail, revolt*.
dehiscō, -hiscere, -hivī, intr., *open, gape, yawn*.
dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (dē + iaciō), *throw down, cast down, drive out*.
deinde, adv., *then, next*.
dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *choose out, select, choose*.
Delphī, -ōrum, m., plur., *Delphi, a famous oracle in Greece, a city*.
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *point out, show, state*.
dēns, dentis, m., *tooth*.

dēplōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *lament, bemoan.*

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *lay down, put down, abandon.*

dēportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *carry off, banish.*

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus (dē + scandō, *climb*), intr., *climb down, descend.*

dēsertus, -a, -um, adj., *deserted.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, tr. and intr., *despair of, despair.*

dēsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, irr., intr., *be away, be lacking, fail.*

dēsuper, adv., *down from above.*

deus, -ī, m., *a god.*

dēveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, intr., *come down, come, arrive.*

dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, *conquer wholly, overcome.*

dēvorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus (dē + vorō, *swallow*), *swallow, gulp down.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right*; in f., often *right hand.*

Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana*, a Greek goddess.

dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus, tr. and intr., *say, speak, appoint, set; causam dicere, to plead.*

dictātor, -ōris, m., *dictator.*

diēs, -ēī, m. (sometimes f.), *day.*

difficilis, -e, adj., *not easy, difficult.*

difficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty, trouble.*

diligēns, -entis, adj., *careful, diligent.*

diligenter, adv., *carefully, with care.*

diligentia, -ae, f., *care, painstaking, diligence.*

dilūcēscit, -lūcēscere, -lūxit, impers., *it begins to grow light.*

dimittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus (dis, *apart* + mittō, *send*), *send forth or away, let slip, dispatch.*

dīmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (dis, *apart* + moveō, *move*), *part, separate, move asunder.*

dīrus, -a, -um, adj., *dreadful.*

dis-(dī-), a prefix, *apart, in different directions.*

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus (dis, *apart* + cēdō, *move*), intr., *go away, depart, withdraw.*

discipulus, -ī, m. (discō, *learn*, + puer), *pupil.*

discō, discere, didicī, tr. and intr., *learn.*

discus, -ī, m., *quoit, discus.*

dispellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus (dis, *apart* + pellō, *drive*), *drive asunder, scatter.*

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus (dis, *apart* + pōnō, *place*), *place apart, arrange, station.*

dissēnsiō, -ōnis (dis, *apart* + sentiō, *feel*), f., *disagreement.*

dissimilis, -e, adv., *unlike.*

diū, adv., *long, long time; quam diū, as long as; diūtius, longer; diutissimē, longest.*

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus, *divide, separate.*

dō, dare, dedī, datus, irr., tr., *give, grant.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, *teach, inform.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, intr., *suffer, grieve.*

dolor, -ōris, m., *grief, pain.*

domina, -ae, f., *mistress, lady.*

dominus, -ī, m., *master.*

domus, -ūs, f., *home, house, abode.*

dōnum, -ī, n., *gift.*

dormiō, -ire, -īvī, -itūrus, intr., *sleep.*

dracō, -ōnis, m., *dragon, serpent*.
 dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *doubt, question, hesitate*.
 dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, draw; in mātīmōnium dūcere, to marry*.
 dūdum, adv., *before, formerly; iam dūdum, this long time*.
 dum, conj., *while, till*.
 duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two*.
 duodecim, indecl. adj., *twelve*.
 duodēvīcēsīmus, -a, -um, *eighteenth*.
 duodēvīgintī, indecl. adj., *eighteen*.
 duplum, -ī, n., *double (amount)*.
 dux, ducis, m., *leader, general, commander*.

E

ē, see *ex*.
 ēdicō, ēdicere, ēdixī, ēdictus, *speak out, appoint*.
 ēdō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditus, *give forth, utter*.
 ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out, draw (a sword)*.
 efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus (*ex + faciō*), *bring about, accomplish*.
 ego, pers. pro., *I*; plur., *nōs, we*.
 ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum (*ē + gradior, step*), dep., intr., *go out; ex nāvī in terram, go ashore*.
 ēgregius, ēgregia, ēgregium (*ēx + grex, flock*), adj., *excellent, unusual*.
 ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus (*ē + iaciō*), *cast out*.
 ēlabōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*ē + labōrō, work*), *work out, take pains*.
 ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus (*ē + mittō*), *throw, hurl, let go, send out*.
 ēn, interj., *lo! behold! see!*

enim, conj. (never first), *for, indeed, to be sure*.
 ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*ē + nūntiō, report*), *report, announce*.
 eō, ire, ivi or iī, itūrus, *go*.
 eō, adv., *thither, there, to that place*.
 epistula, -ae, f., *letter, epistle*.
 eques, equitis, m., *horseman; cavalryman*; plur., *cavalry*.
 equester, -tris, -tre, adj., *of cavalry, of knights*.
 equus, -ī, m., *horse*.
 Erētria, -ae, f., *Eretria, an ancient city on the island of Euboea*.
 ēripiō, -ripere, -ripiū, -reptus (*ē + rapiō, snatch*), *snatch away, take from, rescue*.
 errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intr., *wander, roam; make a mistake*.
 esse, pres. infin. of *sum*, *to be*.
 et, conj., *and; et . . . et, both . . . and*.
 etiam, conj., *even, also*.
 etsī, conj., *although*.
 ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsus (*ē + vādō, hurry*), *go forth, escape*.
 ēveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, intr., *happen, turn out*.
 ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call out*.
 ex (*ē*), prep. with abl., *out of, from, off, on account of*.
 exanimātus, -a, -um, adj., *breathless, lifeless, overcome*.
 excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (*ex + capiō*), *take, receive, catch, welcome*.
 excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call out, arouse*.
 exemplum, -ī, n., *example, model*.
 exeō, exire, exiī (-ivi), exitūrus, intr., *go out*.
 exercitus, -ūs, m., *army*.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ex + aestimō, *rate, value*), *think, consider*.

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive out*.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *set forth, explain*; with **ex nāve**, *put ashore, land*.

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take by assault*.

expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wait for, await, look out for*.

expirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ex + spirō, *breathe*), *breathe out, emit*.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus (ex + trahō, *draw*), *draw out, drag out*.

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *take off, put off*.

F

fābula, -ae, f., *story, fable, tale*.

Fabius, -ī, m., *Fabius, a Roman*.

facile, adv., *easily*.

facilis, -e, adj., *easy*.

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *do, make*.

factum, -ī, n., *thing done, act, deed*.

falsō, adv., *falsely*.

falsus, -a, -um, adj., *deceptive, false*.

falx, falcis, f., *sickle, hook, falchion*.

fāma, -ae, f., *reputation, report, fame*.

famēs, -is, (famē, abl.), f., *hunger, famine*.

fātum, -ī, n., *fate, destiny*.

fēliciter, adv., *luckily, favorably*.

fēlix, fēlicis, adj., *fruitful, fortunate, happy*.

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman*.

ferē, adv., *almost, nearly, for the most part*.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, endure, carry*.

ferula, -ae, f., *stick, rod, ruler*.

fīdēs, fideī, f., *faith, confidence, sincerity*.

fīdus, -a, -um, adj., *faithful*.

filia, -ae, f., *daughter*.

filius, -ī, m., *son*.

figō, fingere, finxī, fictus, *fashion, make up, devise*.

fīniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *finish, bring to an end*.

fīnis, -is, m., *end, limit*; plur., *territories, boundaries*.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring, bordering*; n., *neighbor*.

fīō, fierī, factus (used as pass. for faciō), *be done, made, become, happen*.

fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, powerful, firm*.

flamma, -ae, f., *flame, blaze*.

flōs, flōris, m., *flower, blossom, prime*.

flūmen, -inis, n., *river, stream*.

fōns, fontis, m., *spring, fountain*.

fōrma, -ae, f., *appearance, shape, beauty*.

fōrmōsus, -a, -um, adj., *handsome, beautiful*.

forte (abl. of fors, *chance*), *adv.*, *by chance, accidentally*.

fortis, -e, adj., *brave, strong*.

fortiter, adv., *bravely, strongly*.

fortitūdō, -inis, f., *courage, bravery*.

fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune, good fortune*.

forum, -ī, n., *market place, forum*

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, moat*.

frāter, -tris, m., *brother*.

fraus, fraudis, f., *fraud, deception*.

fremitus, -ūs, m., *roaring, roar, groan*.

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain, corn*.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, vainly*.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight*.

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, run away.*
 fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, intr., *shine, flash, glitter.*

G

Galba, -ae, m., *Galba, a man's name.*
 galea, -ae, f., *helmet.*
 Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul, a country that included modern Belgium, France, Holland and Switzerland.*
 gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus, semi-dep. intr., *rejoice, be delighted.*
 gaudium, -i, n., *joy, gladness.*
 Geminī, -ōrum, m., *twins, Castor and Pollux.*
 gēns, gentis, f., *nation, tribe, race.*
 genus, -eris, n., *race, descent, kind.*
 gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *carry on, accomplish, wage (war), wear.*
 gladius, -i, m., *sword.*
 glōria, -ae, f., *glory, renown.*
 Gorgō, Gorgonis, f., *Gorgon, a monster whose hair consisted of serpents.*
 Graeae, -ārum, f., plur., *the Graeae, guardians of the Gorgons.*
 Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece.*
 Graecus, -i, m., *a Greek.*
 grātia, -ae, f., *favor, thanks; grātiam referre, to show gratitude, to return a favor; grātiās agere, to extend thanks.*
 grātus, -a, -um, adj., *welcome, grateful, pleasant.*
 gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, severe, serious.*
 graviter, adv., *severely, seriously.*

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *have, hold, consider.*
 habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *live, dwell, inhabit.*

Hammōn, -ōnis, m., *the god Hammon.*
 harēna (arēna), -ae, f., *sand, beach, arena.*

Harpīiae, -ārum, f., *Harpies, monsters that were half bird, half woman.*

haruspex, haruspici, m., *soothsayer, diviner.*

hasta, -ae, f., *spear.*

haud, adv., *not at all, not.*

Helvētīi, Helvētiōrum, m., plur., *the Helvetians, a race that lived in what is now Switzerland.*

Herculēs, -is, m., *Hercules.*

heri, adv., *yesterday.*

hic, adv., *here, in this place.*

hic, haec, hoc, demons. adj. and pro., *this (of mine), the latter, he, she, it.*

hiems, -emis, f., *winter.*

hinc, adv., *from this place, hence.*

hodiē, adv., *today.*

homō, -inis, m. and f., *man, human being.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor, repute.*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour.*

Horātius, -i, m., *Horace; a Roman poet.*

horribilis, -e, adj., *dreadful, fearful.*

hortus, -i, m., *garden.*

hospitium, -i, n., *hospitality.*

hostis, -is, m. and f., *enemy, foe.*

hūc, adv., *hither, to this place.*

hūmānus, -a, -um, *human, belonging to man.*

Hylās, -ae, m., *Hylas.*

I

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, cast, hurl.*

iam, adv., *by this time, already, at last; iam dūdum, this long time; nōn iam, no longer.*

Iāsōn, -onis, m., *Jason*.

ibi, adv., *there, in that place*.

ictus, -ūs, m., *stroke, blow*.

idem, *eadem*, *idem* (is + dem), demons. adj., and pro., *the same*.

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, fit*.

igitur, adv., *therefore, then*.

ignāvus, -a, -um, adj., *lazy, cowardly*.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be ignorant of, not to know*.

ille, *illa*, *illud*, demons. adj., *that; as pro., he, she, it, the former*.

immēsus, -a, -um, adj., *vast, boundless*.

immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *let in, let loose, send against*.

impedimentum, -ī, n., *hindrance; plur., baggage (of an army)*.

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -itus (in + pēs), *hinder, impede*.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *incite, impel, urge*.

imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander, general*.

imperātum, -ī, n., *command, order*.

imperium, -ī, n., *command, power, rule*.

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack, assault*.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *place upon, put upon (a ship), impose*.

imprōvisō, adv., *unexpectedly*.

in, prep. with abl., *in, on*; with acc., *into, against*.

in-, as an inseparable prefix of nouns and adjectives it often has a negative force like English *un-*, *in-*.

inaurēs, -ium, f., *earrings*.

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsus, *set fire to, burn*.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus (in + capiō), tr. and intr., *begin*.

inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus (in + claudō, shut), *shut in, shut up in*.

incola, -ae, m. and f., *inhabitant*.

incolumis, -e, adj., *unharmcd, safe*.

incrēdibilis, -e, adj., *incredible, marvelous*.

inde, adv., *from that place, thence, thereafter*.

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead in, lead on, induce*.

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus, *put on, clothe*.

ineō -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, irr., *enter upon, begin, adopt*.

infāns, -antis, m. and f., *infant, babe*.

inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *stain, dye*.

inflammō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse, inflame*.

ingēns, -entis, adj., *huge, enormous*.

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (in + iaciō), *throw into, inspire*.

inimicus, -a, -um, adj., *unfriendly, hostile; inimicus, -ī, m., enemy*.

initium, -ī, n., *beginning*.

iniūria, -ae, f., *injury, wrong*.

inopia, -ae, f., *lack, scarcity*.

inquit, *he said* (usually inserted in a direct quotation).

inrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *burst into, break into*.

inscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, *write in or upon anything, inscribe*.

inscriptiō, -ōnis, f., *inscription, epitaph*.

inspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus (in + speciō, look), *look into or at, examine*.

instruō, -stuerē, -strūxī, -strūctus,
arrange, draw up, equip.

insula, -ae, f., *island.*

insum, inesse, infui, *to be in or upon.*

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus,
understand, learn, know.

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among.*

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus
(inter + capiō), intercept, cut off.

interea, adv., *in the meantime,*
meanwhile.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus
(inter + faciō), slay, kill.

interim, adv., *meanwhile.*

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus,
tr. and intr., leave off, discontinue.

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus,
place between, interpose.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask,
question.

intervallum, -ī, n., *distance apart,*
interval.

intervenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus,
intr., come between, intervene.

intrā, prep. with acc., *within.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, enter.

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus,
come upon, find.

invocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call upon,
invoke.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pro,
self, very.

ira, -ae, f., *anger, wrath.*

irātus, -a, -um, adj., *angry.*

is, ea, id, demons. adj. and pro., *this,*
that; he, she, it.

iste, ista, istud, demons. adj. and
pro., that (of yours).

ita, adv., *so, in such a manner, thus,*
yes (in answer to a question).

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy.*

itaque, adv., *and so, accordingly.*

item, adv., *likewise, also.*

iter, itineris, n., *march, journey; iter*
facere, to make a journey, to march.

iterum, adv., *again.*

Ithaca, -ae, f., *Ithaca, island king-*
dom of Ulysses.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, order,
command.

iūdex, iūdicis, m., *judge.*

iūdicium, -ī, n., *trial, judgment,*
opinion.

iugum, -ī, n., *yoke.*

Iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia.*

Iūlius, -ī, m., *Julius.*

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, join,
unite, fasten together, yoke.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter, supreme*
god of the Romans.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, take oath.

iuvenis, -e, adj., *young; as noun, a*
young man; iunior, younger; mini-
mus nātū, youngest.

L

labor, -ōris, m., *work, task, toil,*
hardship.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intr.
work, toil, labor, suffer.

labyrinthus, -ī, m., *labyrinth, a*
building with many winding
passages.

Lacōnia, -ae, f., *Laconia, a district*
of Greece.

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.*

lacūna, -ae, f., *chasm, pit.*

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *happy, joyful,*
glad.

lambō, lambere, lambī, lambitus,
lick, lap.

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *wide, broad*.
 Lārīsa, -ae, f., *name of a city*.
 laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *praise*.
 lēctiō, -ōnis, f., *a reading, reading aloud, lesson*.
 lēgātus, -ī, m., *envoy, lieutenant*.
 legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion*.
 legō, *legere, lēgī, lēctus, read, choose, select*.
 lēnis, -e, adj., *gentle, mild*.
 leō, leōnis, m., *lion*.
 Lesbia, -ae, *a woman's name*.
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law, statute*.
 libenter, adv., *freely, gladly*.
 līber, -era, -erum, adj., *free*.
 liber, -brī, m., *book*.
 liberī, -ōrum, m., *children*.
 liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *set free, free*.
 libertās, -ātis, f., *freedom, liberty*.
 ligneus, -a, -um, adj., *of wood, wooden*.
 lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*.
 littera, -ae, f., *a letter of the alphabet; plur., letters, literature*.
 litus, -oris, n., *shore, beach*.
 locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place, put*.
 locus, -ī, m., *place; plur., loca, -ōrum, n., places*.
 longē, adv., *far, far away, at a distance*.
 longinquus, -a, -um, adj., *distant, long continued*.
 longus, -a, -um, adj., *long, tedious*.
 lōtus, -ī, f., *fruit of the lotus tree*.
 lūceō, lūcēre, lūxī, intr., *be bright, shine*.
 lūcidus, -a, -um, adj., *shining, clear*.
 lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lusus, *play (games)*.
 lūdus, -ī, m., *game, sport, school*.
 lūna, -ae, f., *moon*.
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light; primā lūce, at dawn*.

M

Macedonia, -ae, f., *Macedonia, a country in Europe*.
 magicus, -a, -um, adj., *magic, magical*.
 magister, -trī, m., *master, master of a school*.
 magnitūdō, -inis, f., *greatness*.
 magnopere, irr. adv., *greatly; magis, more; maximē, most*.
 magnus, -a, -um, adj., *large, great; maior, greater; maximus, greatest*.
 male, irr. adv., *badly, ill, wrongly*.
 mālō, mälle, mālui (magis + volō), irr., tr. and intr., *be more willing, prefer, wish rather*.
 malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad*.
 mandātum, -ī, n., *command, order*.
 maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, tr. and intr., *remain, stay, await*.
 manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band (of men)*.
 Marathonius, -a, -um, adj., *of Marathon*.
 Marathon, -ōnis, f., *a city in Greece*.
 mare, -is, n., *sea; marīnus, adj., of the sea*.
 marīta, -ae, f., *wife*.
 maritimus, -a, -um, *maritime, of the sea; ōra maritima, sea coast*.
 marītus, -ī, m., *husband*.
 māter, -tris, f., *mother, matron*.
 mātrimonium, -ī, n., *marriage*.
 māttrōna, -ae, f., *matron, lady*.
 maximē (maximus, greatest), adv., *most, very, especially*.
 maximus, superl. of magnus, *greatest*.
 Mēdēa, -ae, f., *a sorceress*.
 Mēdūsa, -ae, f., *a magic-eyed monster*.
 medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle of, center*.
 memor, (gen.) memoris, *mindful*.

memoria, -ae, f., *memory*; **memoriā**
tenēre, *to remember*.

mergō, **mergere**, **mersi**, **mersus**,
plunge into, plunge.

meridiē, adv., *at midday, at noon*.

meridiēs, -ēi, m., *midday, noon*.

meritus, -a, -um, adj., *deserved, fit*.

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *my, mine*.

miles, -itis, m., *soldier*.

militāris, -e, adj., *military*, of the
soldiers; **rēs militāris**, *warfare*.

mille, indecl. adj., *one thousand*;

milia, **mīlium**, n., noun only,
thousands.

Miltiades, -is, *Miltiades*, a Greek
general.

Minerva, -ae, f., the goddess of
wisdom.

minimē (**minimus**, *least*), adv.,
least, very little, not at all.

Mīnōs, **Mīnōis**, m., *Minos*, king of
Crete.

Mīnōtaurus, -i, m., *Minotaur*, a
monster, half bull, half human.

minus, adv., *less*.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched*,
unhappy, pitiable, sad.

mittō, **mittere**, **misi**, **missus**, *send*.

modus, -i, m., *manner*; **nōn modo**
... *sed etiam*, *not only . . . but also*.

molestia, -ae, f., *annoyance*.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *advise, warn*.

mōns, **montis**, m., *mountain*.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *point out*,
show.

mōnstrum, -i, n., *monster*.

monumentum, -i, n., *monument*,
memorial.

mora, -ae, f., *delay*.

morior, **morī**, **mortuus** (fut. act.
part.: **moritūrus**), dep., intr., *die*.

mors, **mortis**, f., *death*.

mōs, **mōris**, m., *custom, habit*; plur.,
customs, character.

moveō, **movēre**, **mōvi**, **mōtus**, *move*.

mox, adv., *presently, soon*.

multitūdō, -inis, f., *large number*,
multitude.

multō, irr. adv., *much, by much*.

multum, irr. adv., *much*.

multus, -a, -um, adj., *much*, plur.,
many.

mūniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, *fortify, guard*.

mūrus, -i, m., *wall*.

mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *change*.

Mysia, -ae, f., a country in Asia.

N

nam, conj., *for, because*.

namque, *for truly*.

nanciscor, -cisci, **nactus**, dep., *find*,
get, obtain.

nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *tell, relate*.

natīō, -ōnis, f., *nation, tribe*.

natō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *float, swim*.

nātūra, -ae, f., *nature, character*.

nauta, -ae, m., *sailor*.

nauticus, -a, -um, adj., *of a sailor*,
naval.

nāvigium, -i, m., *boat*.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, (**nāvis** +
agō), intr., *sail*.

nāvis, -is, f., *ship, vessel, boat*.

nāvis liburna, *swift war galley*.

nāvis longa, *war galley*.

nāvis onerāria, *merchant ship*.

-ne, encl., interrog. adv. (sign of
question); in indirect questions,
whether.

nē, adv., **nē** . . . **quidem**, *not . . .*
even; as conj., *that not, lest*.

necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *put to death*,
slay, kill.

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, tr. and intr.,
say no, deny, refuse.

Neptūnus, -i, m., *Neptune*.
negōtium, -i (nec + ōtium, *leisure*),
 n., *task, business*.
nepōs, nepōtis, m., *grandson*.
neque (nec), conj., *and not, nor*;
 neque (nec) . . . neque (nec),
neither . . . nor.
nēsciō, -scire, -scivī, *not know, be*
ignorant.
neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. and pro.,
neither (of two).
nihil, indecl. noun, *nothing*, (adverb,
not).
nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except*.
nōbilis, -e, adj., *noble, well known,*
famous.
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, intr.,
injure, harm (requires dative).
noctū, adv., *at night, by night*.
nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., *at night,*
nocturnal.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (ne + volō), intr.,
be unwilling.
nōmen, -inis, n., *name*.
nōminō (nōmen), -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
name, mention.
nōn (nē + ūnum), adv., *not*; nōn
 iam, *no longer*; nōn modo . . . sed
 etiam, *not only . . . but also*.
nōndum, adv., *not yet*.
nōnne, interrog. adv., *when the*
answer "yes" is expected, not.
nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *ninth*.
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and
 pro., *our, ours*.
nōtus, -a, -um, adj., *known, well*
known.
novem, num. adj., *nine*.
novitās, -ātis, f., *novelty, strangeness*.
novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, fresh,*
strange.

nox, noctis, f., *night*.
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *bare, exposed,*
lightly clad.
nullus (ne + ūllus), -a, -um, irr.
 adj., *not any*; as noun, *no one*.
num, interrog. adv., *when the answer*
"no" is expected.
Numa, -ae, m., *Numa, a man's*
name.
numerus, -ī, m., *number*.
nunc, adv., *now*.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *announce,*
declare, report.
nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger, message*.
nūper, adv., *recently, lately*.
nympha, -ae, f., *nymph*.

O

ob, prep. with acc., *against, on*
account of, because of.
obducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, *lead*
against, draw over, extend.
obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw*
against.
obscūrus, -a, -um, adj., *dark*.
obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus (ob
 + sedeō, *sit*), *besiege, beset*.
obsum, obesse, obfui, *be against,*
injure.
obtimeō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus (ob
 + teneō), *obtain, hold, possess*.
obveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus,
 intr., *meet*.
occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *opportunity, favor-*
able moment.
occāsus, -ūs, m., *setting (with solis)*
of the sun.
occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus (ob +
 caedō, *cut*), *cut down, kill, slay*.
occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *seize, take*
possession of.

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eighth*.
 octō, indecl. num. adj., *eight*.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus
 (ob + fendō, *strike*), tr. and intr.,
dash against, offend, hurt.

officium, -ī, n., *duty, service, office*.

olim, adv., *once on a time, formerly*.

omnīnō, adv., *wholly, entirely*.

omnis, -e, adj., *all*; in sing., *every*.

opīniō, -ōnis, f., *reputation, belief*.

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj., *of a town*.

oppidānus, -ī, m., *townsman*.

oppidum, -ī, n., *town*.

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus
 (ob + pōnō), *oppose, put against*.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus
 (ob + premō, *press*), *overwhelm,*
crush, hard press.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus (ob +
 pugnō), *attack, storm*.

opus, operis, n., *work, labor, toil*.

ōra, -ae, f., *shore, beach, coast*.

ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle*.

ōrātor, -ōris, m., *orator*.

ōrdō, -īnis, m., *rank, class, series*.

Orgetorīx, Orgetorigis, m., an Hel-
 vetian leader.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., *jewel, ornament*.

ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, tr. and intr.,
speak, beg, ask, beseech, pray.

Orpheus, -ī, m., a mythical singer.

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face*.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus
 (ob(s) + tendō, *stretch*), *show,*
point out, state.

P

pacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *pacify, subdue*.

Padus, -ī, m., the river *Po*.

paene, adv., *nearly, almost*.

palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*.

pār, paris, adj., *equal, sufficient*.

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *get ready, pre-*
pare.

pars, partis, f., *part, share, side*.

parum, irr. adv., *little, too little;*
minus, less; minimē, least.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., *small, little;*
minor, smaller; minimus, smallest.

passus, -ūs, m., *pace, two steps*.

pater, -tris, m., *father*.

patria, -ae, f., *native land; country*.

pauci, -ae, -a, adj., *a few, some few*.

paulō, adv., (by) *a little, paulum,*
 adv., *a little, somewhat*.

pavor, -ōris, m., *terror, panic, alarm*.

pax, pacis, f., *peace*.

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money, wealth*.

pedes, -itis, n., *foot soldier*.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., *of infantry*.

peior, peius, adj., *worse; comp. of*
malus (bad).

Peliās, -ae, m., *Pelias*.

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive,*
defeat.

per, prep. with acc., *through, over*.

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctus, *carry*
through, accomplish.

perambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *walk*
through, traverse.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus (per
 + capiō), *feel, perceive, learn*.

perdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctus,
teach or instruct thoroughly.

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus,
lead through, guide.

pereō, -īre, -īī, -itūrus, intr., *perish*.

perfectus, -a, -um, adj., *complete,*
perfect.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, irr.,
carry through, endure, withstand,
suffer.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus (per +
 faciō), *accomplish, finish*.

periculōsus, -a, -um, adj., *full of danger, dangerous.*

periculum, -ī, n., *danger.*

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *read through, peruse.*

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mān-sūrus, intr., *stay through, hold out.*
permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *arouse, disturb, affect.*

perpaucī, -ae, -a, adj., *very few.*

Persae, -ārum, m., *the Persians.*

Perseus, -ī, m., *a mythical hero.*

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scrip-tus, *set down, write in full, state, recount.*

persuadeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suā-sus, tr. and intr. (with dat. of the person), *induce, persuade.*

perterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus, *alarm, frighten.*

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui (per + teneō, *hold*), intr., *extend.*

pervenio, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, intr., *come through, arrive.*

pēs, **pedis**, m., *foot.*

pessimē, adv., *worst, superl. of malē (badly).*

pessimus, -a, -um, adj., *worst, superl. of malus (bad).*

petō, **petere**, **petivī**, **petitus**, *seek, make for, attack.*

Phāsis, -idis, m., *Phasis, a river.*

Phidippus, -ī, m., *a Greek runner.*

Phineus, -ī, m., *a blind king.*

Phrixus, -ī, m., *a mythical king.*

pictūra, -ae, f., *picture.*

piger, -gra, -grum, adj., *lazy.*

pilum, -ī, n., *javelin.*

piscātor, -ōris, m., *fisherman.*

plāgōsus, -a, -um, adj., *full of blows, fond of flogging.*

plānitēs, -ēī, f., *plain.*

Plataeēnsēs, -sium, m., *inhabitants of Plataeae.*

plausus, -ūs, m., *applause, approval.*

plūrēs, **plūra**, plur., adj., *more, comp. of multi.*

plūrimī, -ae, -a, adj., *most, superl. of multi.*

plūrimum, adv., *most, superl. of multum.*

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., *most, superl. of multus.*

plūs, n. (never adj. in sing.), *more, comp. of multum.*

plūs, adv., *more, comp. of multum.*

poena, -ae, f., *punishment; poenās dare, to pay the penalty.*

poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*

Pollux, -ūcis, m., *brother of Castor.*

Polydectēs, **Polydectis**, m., *king of Seriphos.*

Polyphēmus, -ī, m., *a one-eyed monster.*

Pompēius, **Pompēi**, m., *Pompey, a Roman general.*

pōnō, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus**, *put, place.*

pōns, **pontis**, m., *bridge.*

populus, -ī, m., *people, nation.*

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, *stretch out, put forth.*

porta, -ae, f., *gate, entrance, door.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring, carry.*

possum, **posse**, **potuī**, irr., intr., *be able, can.*

post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*

postea, adv., *afterwards.*

posterus, -a, -um, adj., *the next, later; posterō diē, on the next day.*

posthabeō, -habēre, -habuī, -habitus, tr. and intr., *place after, postpone.*

postquam, conj., *after.*

postrēmō, adv., *finally*.
 postridiē, adv., *the day after*.
 postscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, *write after or under*.
 postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *demand, ask, request*.
 Postumius, -ī, m., a Roman.
 potēns, -entis, adj., *powerful*.
 potenter, adv., *powerfully, strongly*.
 potestās, -ātis, f., *power, ability*.
 potior, potiri, potitus, dep., intr., *get possession or control of (with abl.)*
 prae, prep. (in compounds), *before*.
 praebeō, praebere, praeui, prae-bitus (prae + habeo), *hold before, present, offer, show*.
 praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus (prae + capiō), *order, advise*.
 praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *throw headlong*.
 praecīlārus, -a, -um, adj., *renowned, famous, splendid*.
 praedicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus, *foretell, predict*.
 praedūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead before*.
 praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus (prae + faciō), *place in command*.
 praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send ahead*.
 praemium, -ī, n., *reward*.
 praemoneō, -monēre, -monuī, -monitus, *forewarn, advise or admonish beforehand*.
 praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *put in command, set over*.
 praescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, *order, direct*.
 praesentia, -ae, f., *the present (time)*.
 praeses, praesidis, m., *protector, guardian, president*.

praesidium, -ī, n., *guard, garrison, defense*.
 praestāns, -antis, adj., *remarkable, conspicuous*.
 praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātus, tr. and intr., *stand in front, excel, exhibit, show*.
 praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be in front; be in command of*.
 praeterea, adv., *moreover, besides*.
 premō, premere, pressī, pressus, *press, oppress*.
 pridīē, adv., *the day before*.
 primō, adv., *at first*.
 primum, adv., *first in order, first; cum primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible*.
 primus, -a, -um, adj., *first*.
 princeps, principis, *leader, chief*.
 priusquam, conj., *before*.
 prius (prior, former), adv., *before*.
 prō, prep. with abl., *before, forward, for, in defense of*.
 prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, intr., *go forward, advance*.
 prōcōnsul, -ulis, m., *proconsul, governor of a province*.
 prōcōnsulāris, -e, adj., *proconsular*.
 procul, adv., *at a distance, afar*.
 prōdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead forward, draw up*.
 proelium, -ī, n., *battle*.
 profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure*.
 proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus, dep., intr., *start, leave, depart, set out*.
 prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus, dep., intr., *go forward, advance*.
 prohibeō, -hibere, -hibui, -hibitus (prō + habeo), *prevent, keep away*.
 prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw or fling away*.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus,
send forth, promise.

prope, prep. with acc., *near.*

properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intr.,
hasten, hurry.

propius, adv., *nearer.*

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus,
place before, propose.

propter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intr.,
fight in defense of.

prōra, -ae, f., *prow.*

Proserpina, -ae, f., daughter of
Ceres and Jupiter.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, irr., intr.,
be of use, useful, avail, help.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus,
carry forward.

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsus, fore-
see.

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*

prūdētia, -ae, f., *foresight, careful-
ness, discretion.*

puella, -ae, f., *girl.*

puer, -i, m., *boy.*

pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *fight.*

pugna, -ae, f., *battle, fight.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beauti-
ful; pulchrē*, adv., *beautifully.*

punctum, -i, n., *point; punctō tem-
poris*, *in a moment.*

pūniō, pūnīre, pūnivī (pūniī), pūni-
tus, *punish.*

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *think, believe.*

Pyrēnaei montēs, Pyrēnaeōrum mon-
tium, m., *Pyrenees mountains.*

Q

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *forty.*

quadrigae, -ārum, f., *four-horse team.*

quadruplum, -i, n., *fourfold
(amount).*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesi-
tus, *seek, inquire, search for.*

quam, adv. and conj., *than, as;*
with superlatives, *as much as
possible; how.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how great?*
how much?

quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fourth.*

quārtus decimus, num. adj., *four-
teenth.*

quattuor, num. adj., *four.*

quattuordecim, num. adj., *fourteen.*

-que, conj. (an enclitic), *and.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pro., *who, which.*

quī, quae, quod, interrog. adj., *what?*

quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quod-
dam), indef. pro. (and adj.), *a
certain one, a certain.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, certainly, at
least.*

quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest, quiet.*

quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētus,
intr., *become quiet.*

quīn, conj., *but that, that.*

quīndecim, num. adj., *fifteen.*

quīnquāgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj.,
fiftieth.

quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj.,
fifty.

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fifth.*

quīntus decimus, num. adj., *fifteenth.*

quis (quī) quae, quid (quod),
interrog. pro. and adj., *who?*
which? what? after sī, nisi, nē,
num, *one, anyone, anything.*

quō, adv., *whither, to what place?*

quod, conj., *because.*

quoque, adv., *also; follows the word
it affects.*

quot, indecl. interrog. adj. *how
many?*

quotiēns, adv., *as often as*.
 quousque, interrog. adv., *how long?*

R

rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *snatch, seize*.
 ratiō, -ōnis, f., *manner, method, account*.
 re- (red-), (inseparable prefix) *again, back*.
 recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take back, recover*.
 recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *read aloud, recite*.
 rēctus, -a, -um, adj., *straight, right*.
 reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *give back, restore*.
 redeō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itūrus, intr., *go back, return*.
 redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus (red + agō), *drive back, reduce, render*.
 reditus, -ūs, m., *return*.
 reducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead back, bring back, draw back*.
 referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, irr., *bring back, return, report; sē referre, to betake one's self*.
 refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, intr., *flee back, retreat, escape*.
 rēgia, -ae, f., *palace*.
 Rēgillus, -ī, m., (Lake) *Regillus*.
 rēgina, -ae, f., *queen*.
 regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, country*.
 regnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *reign, govern*.
 rēgnum, -ī, n., *supreme power, kingdom, throne*.
 regō, regere, rēxī, -rēctus, *rule, govern*.
 relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus, *leave, leave behind, abandon*.
 remedium, -ī, n., *remedy, cure*.

remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *send back, throw back*.
 removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *remove*.
 rēmus, -ī, m., *oar*.
 renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *report, announce*.
 repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repulse, reject, deprive*.
 reperiō, reperire, repperī, repertus, *find out, discover*.
 reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring back, win, carry back*.
 rēs, rei, f., *thing, circumstance, event*.
 resistō, -sistere, -stitī, intr., *resist, remain, stop*.
 respondeō, -spondere, -spondī, -spōnsus, tr. and intr., *answer, reply*.
 retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *hold back, retain, keep*.
 reveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus intr., *turn back, return*.
 revertor, revertī, reversus, dep., intr., *return, turn back*.
 revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call back, call away*.
 rēx, rēgis, m., *king*.
 Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine river*.
 rideō, ridere, risī, risus, *smile, laugh, shine*.
 rīte, adv., *appropriately*.
 rōbur, rōboris, n., *oak, strength*.
 rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, request*.
 Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman*.
 Rubico, Rubicōnis, m., *the Rubicon river*.
 ruīna, -ae, f., *downfall, ruin*.
 rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus, *burst, break*.

rūpēs, -is, f., *cliff, crag*.
 rūrsus, adv., *again, back*.
 rūsticus, -a, -um, adj., *rural*.

S

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., *the Sabines, a tribe of Italy*.
 sacrificium, -ī, n., *sacrifice*.
 saepe, adv., *often*; comp. *saepius, more often*; superl. *saepissimē, very (most) often*.
 saevus, -a, -um, adj., *savage, fierce*.
 Salmydēssus, -ī, m., *Salmydessus, a city in Thrace*.
 salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, health*.
 salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *keep safe, greet*.
 salvē, salvētē (pres. imperatives of *salveō, be well*), *Hail! How are you? Greetings*.
 sanguis, sanguinis, m., *blood*.
 sānus, -a, -um, adj., *sound, well*.
 sapiēns, -entis, adj., *wise, prudent*.
 sapientia, -ae, f., *wisdom*.
 satis, adv., *enough, sufficient*.
 saxum, -ī, n., *rock, large stone*.
 scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge, skill*.
 sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know*.
 scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus, *write*.
 scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.
 sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, intr., *go away, withdraw*.
 secundus, -a, -um, adj., *second*.
 sed, conj., *but, but yet*.
 sēdecim, indecl. num. adj., *sixteen*.
 sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus, intr., *sit, be seated*.
 sēdēs, -is, f., *home, abode*.
 semper, adv., *always*.
 sempiternus, -a, -um, adj., *ever-lasting*.

senātus, -ūs, m., *senate*.
 senex, senis, m., *old man*.
 sententia, -ae, f., *opinion, purpose, sentence*.
 sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *know, perceive, feel*.
 septem, indecl. num. adj., *seven*.
 septendecim, indecl. num. adj., *seventeen*.
 septimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *seventh*.
 septimus decimus, num. adj., *seventeenth*.
 sepulchrum, -ī, n., *tomb*.
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, dep., *follow, accompany*.
 serēnus, -a, -um, adj., *clear, bright, serene, tranquil*.
 Serīphus, -ī, f., *Seriphos, a small island*.
 serō, serere, sēvī, satus, *plant, sow*.
 servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *save, keep, protect*.
 servus, -ī, m., *serva, -ae, f., slave*.
 sex, indecl. num. adj., *six*.
 sextus, -a, -um, num. adj., *sixth*.
 sextus decimus, *sixteenth*.
 sī, conj., *if, whether*.
 sic, adv., *thus, so*.
 signum, -ī, n., *sign, signal, standard*.
 silva, -ae, f., *forest, woods*.
 similis, -ē, adj., *like, similar*.
 simul, adv., *at the same time*; simul ac or atque, *as soon as*.
 sine, prep. with abl., *without*.
 sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left*; in the fem., often *left hand*.
 sinus, -ūs, m., *bosom, lap*; in sinū, *on her bosom*.
 socius, -ī, m., *ally, comrade*.
 sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*.
 solea, -ae, f., *sandal*.

sōlus, -a, -um, irr. adj., *alone, only*;
sōlum, adv., *alone, only*; **nōn**
sōlum . . . **sed etiam**, *not only*
 . . . *but also*.

solvō, **solvere**, **solvī**, **solūtus**, *loose, re-*
lease, unbind; with **nāvem**, *set sail*.

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep*.

soror, -ōris, f., *sister*.

Sparta, -ae, f., *Sparta*, a city in
 Greece.

spatium, -ī, n., *space, time, distance*.

speciēs, -ēī, f., *sight, appearance*.

spectātor, -ōris, m., *spectator*.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look at,*
regard.

speculum, -ī, n., *mirror*.

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hope, expect*.

spēs, -ei, f., *hope*.

spīna, -ae, f., *thorn*.

splendidus, -a, -um, adj., *glowing,*
brilliant.

statim, adv., *at once, immediately*.

statua, -ae, f., *statue*.

stella, -ae, f., *star*.

stō, **stāre**, **stetī**, **statūrus**, intr.,
stand.

studium, -ī, n., *zeal*.

stultus, -a, -um, adj., *silly, foolish*.

sub, prep. with acc. (after verb of
 motion) and abl., *under, beneath,*
at the foot of.

subeō, **subire**, **subiī**, **subitus**, irr.,
go under, undergo, endure, suffer.

subitō, adv., *suddenly*.

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *lift up,*
raise.

submergō, -mergere, -mersī, -mer-
 sus, *sink, submerge*.

subscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scrip-
 tus, tr. and intr., *write under-*
neath, sign, subscribe.

subsidium, -ī, m., *reserve, aid,*
assistance.

subsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, irr.,
 intr., *be under, near*.

subveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus,
 intr., *come under, come to support*
of, assist.

sui (**sibi**, **sē**), reflex. pro., *of himself,*
herself, itself, themselves.

sum, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, irr., intr., *be*.
summa, -ae, f., *top, sum, total*.

summus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of
superus), *highest, greatest, top (of)*.

summittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus
 (sub + mittō), *set, put or place*
below, send off, dispatch.

sūmō, **sūmere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus**,
take, get, assume.

super, as a prefix, *over, above*.

superbus, -a, -um, adj., *proud,*
haughty.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conquer,*
overcome.

superpōnō, -ponere, -posuī, -positus,
put or place over or upon.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, irr.,
 intr., *be over, left, remain, survive*.

supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment*.

suppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus
 (sub + pōnō), *place under*.

suprā, prep. with acc., *above, before*.

Sūsa, -ōrum, n., *Susa*, ancient
 capital of Persia.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus,
undertake, assume.

suspiciō, **suspicere**, **suspexi**, **sus-**
pectus, *look up at*.

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus,
hold up, check, support, withstand.

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *his, her, its,*
their.

Symplēgadēs, -um, f. plur., mythical rocks that dashed against each other.

T

talāria, -ium, n., winged shoes.

tam, adv., so.

tamen, adv., nevertheless, yet, however.

tandem, adj., at last, finally.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great, so much; tantum as adv., merely, only.

tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow, late.

Tarentum, -i, n., Tarentum, a town in Italy.

taurus, -i, m., bull.

tēlum, -i, n., weapon, missile.

tempestās, -ātis, f., storm, weather.

templum, -i, n., temple.

tempus, -oris, n., time.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, hold, keep.

tergum, -i, n., back, rear.

terra, -ae, f., land, earth, country.

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus, frighten, scare.

terribilis, -e, adj., dreadful, terrible.

terror, -ōris, m., panic, fright, dread.

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., third.

Thēseus, -i, m., a mythical hero.

Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly.

Thrācia, -ae, f., Thrace.

Tiberis, -is, m., (acc. Tiberim), Tiber river.

timeō, timēre, timuī, tr. and intr., fear, be afraid.

timidē, adv., timidly, fearfully.

timidus, -a, -um, adj., cowardly, fearful.

timor, -ōris, m., fear, cowardice.

toga, -ae, f., toga, a Roman outer garment.

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, lift, raise (with ancora, weigh).

tollēno, -ōnis, m., swing-beam.

tōtus, -a, -um, irr. adj., the whole, all, entire.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus (trā(ns) + dō), hand over, surrender, relate, report.

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (trā(ns) + dūcō), lead across, transport.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, drag, drag along.

trāciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus (trā(ns) + iaciō), throw across, pierce.

tranquillitās, -ātis, f., calm, stillness.

tranquillus, -a, -um, adj., calm.

trāns, prep. with acc., across, over.

trānscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, write over, copy.

trānsēō, -īre, -iī, -itus, irr., cross, pass over.

trāsmittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, send across, transmit.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry across, transport.

trēdecim, indecl. num. adj., thirteen.

trēs, tria, num. adj., three.

triclinium, -i, n., table-couch.

trīga, -ae, f., three-horse chariot.

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., thirty.

tripulum, -i, n., threefold (amount).

triumphāns, -antis, adj., triumphant, victorious.

tū, tuī, pers. pro., you.

tuba, -ae, f., trumpet.

tum, adv., then; cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also.

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, disturb, trouble.

turpis, -e, adj., disgraceful, base.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe, unharmed.*
tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *your, yours.*

U

ubi, adv. and conj., *where, when.*
ūllus, -a, -um, irr. adj., *any.*
Ulixes, -is, *Ulysses, a famous Greek warrior.*
ultrō, adv., *voluntarily, freely.*
umbra, -ae, f., *shade, shadow.*
umquam, adv., *ever; neque . . . umquam, and . . . never.*
unda, -ae, f., *billow, wave, sea.*
unde, adv., *whence, from which place.*
ūndecim, indecl. num. adj., *eleven.*
ūndecimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eleventh.*
ūndēvicēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj., *nineteenth.*
ūndēvigintī, indecl. num. adj., *nineteen.*
undique, adv., *on (from) all sides.*
ūnus, -a, -um, irr. num. adj., *one, alone.*
urbs, urbis, f., *city.*
ūsq̄ue, adv., *as far as, even.*
ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, experience.*
ut, conj., with indic., *as, when, so;*
with subj., *that, in order that, to.*
uter, -tra, -trum, irr. adj. and pro.,
which (of two)?
ūtilis, -e, adj., *useful, helpful.*
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, dep., with abl.,
employ, use.
utrimque, adv., *on (from) both sides.*
uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., *empty, vacant.*
valē, valēte (pres. imperatives of
valeō, *be strong*), *farewell, good-bye.*

vallum, -ī, n., *rampart, wall of a camp.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *lay waste, devastate.*

vehō, vehere, vexī, vectus, *carry, bear, in pass., sail, ride.*

vellus, velleris, n., *fleece.*

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, quick.*

veniō, venire, vēnī, ventūrus, intr.,
come, go.

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*

verbum, -ī, n., *word.*

vereor, -ērī, -itus, dep., tr. and intr.,
fear, dread.

veritus, -a, -um, perf. part. of
vereor, *fear; veritus nē, fearing that.*

vērō, adv., *in truth, truly, but, however.*

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *turn.*

vērūs, -a, -um, adj., *true; rē vērā, truly.*

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., *you, yours.*

vestigium, -ī, n., *footprint, track.*

via, -ae, f., *road, way, street, route.*

vicēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj.,
twentieth.

vicīnus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring, near.*

vicīnus, -ī, m., *neighbor.*

victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*

vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*

videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus, *see.*

vigilia, -ae, f., *watch (of the night).*

vigintī, indecl. num. adj., *twenty.*

villa, -ae, f., *country house, villa.*

vinciō, vincere, vīnxī, vīctus, *bind.*

vincō, vincere, vicī, victus, tr. and
intr., *conquer, defeat.*

vinculum, -ī, n., *chain; plur., prison.*

vir, virī, m., *man.*

virgō, -inis, f., *maiden.*

virtūs, -ūtis, f., *virtue, valor, courage.*

vīs, vīs (irr.), f., *force, violence.*

vīta, -ae, f., *life.*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, shun,
escape.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call, sum-
mon.

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intr., *fly.*

volō, velle, voluī, irr., tr. and intr.,
be willing, wish.

volucris, -is, f., *bird.*

voluntās, -ātis, f., *wish, will.*

vox, vocis, f., *voice.*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wound.

vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound.*

Z

Zētēs, -ae, m., an Argonaut.

Refer to the Latin-English Vocabulary for more complete and exact information.

A

abandon, *relinquō*.
 able (be), *possum*.
 abode, *domus, sēdēs*.
 about, *circiter*, adv.; *dē*, prep.
 above, before, *suprā*.
 abundance, *cōpia*.
 accept, *accipio*.
 accomplish, *cōficiō; perficiō*.
 across, *trāns*.
 add to, *adiungō*.
 advance, *prōcēdō*.
 advice, *cōsiliū*.
 advise (warn), *moneō*.
 after, conj., *postquam*.
 after, prep., *post*.
 afterwards, adv., *postea*.
 again, *rūrsus, iterum*.
 against, *contrā, in, ob*.
 age, *seclūs*.
 aid, *auxiliū*.
 alarm, *commoveō*.
 all, *omnis, tōtus*.
 ally, *socius*.
 alone, *sōlus*.
 already, *iam*; no longer, *nōn iam*.
 also, *quoque, etiam*.
 always, *semper*.
 among, *inter*; (at the home of) *apud*.
 anchor, *ancora*.
 and, *et; -que*; and also, *atque*; and so
 (therefore), *itaque*.
 announce, *nūntiō*.
 another, *alius*.

answer, *respondeō*.
 any, *ullus*.
 appearance, *speciēs*.
 approach, *appropinquō*.
 army, *exercitus*.
 around, *circum*.
 arouse, *concitō; excitō; incitō*.
 as, *ut, cum*.
 as soon as, *cum primum*.
 ask, *orō; quaerō; petō*.
 at first, *primō*.
 at last, *tandem*.
 at least, *certē*.
 at once, *statim*.
 attack, n., *impetus*.
 attack, v., *oppugnō*.
 authority, *auctoritās*.
 await, *expectō*.
 away (be), *absum*.

B

babe, *infāns*.
 bad, *malus*.
 baggage, *impedimenta*.
 battle, *proelium*.
 battle line, *aciēs*.
 be, *sum*.
 beach, *litus*.
 bear, *ferō*.
 beautiful, *pulcher*.
 because, *quod*.
 before, adv., *antequam; priusquam*.
 before, prep., *ante, prō*.
 beg (ask), *orō*.
 begin, *incipiō*.

beginning, *inīlium*.
 believe, *crēdō*.
 besiege, *obsideō*.
 best, *optimus*.
 betake (one's self), *sē cōnferre*.
 better, *melior*.
 blow, *ictus*.
 boat, *nāvigium*.
 body, *corpus*.
 bold, *audāx*.
 boldly, *audācter*.
 book, *liber*.
 bordering, *fīnitimus*.
 both . . . and, *et . . . et*.
 boundaries, *fīnēs*.
 bow, *arcus*.
 box, *arca*.
 boy, *puer*.
 brave, *fortis*.
 bravely, *fortiter*.
 breathe out, *expirō*.
 bridge, *pōns*.
 bring (carry), *portō*.
 bring back, *reportō*.
 bring together, *cōnferō*.
 Britain, *Britannia*.
 bronze, *aes*.
 brother, *frāter*.
 build, *aedificō*.
 building, *aedificium*.
 burst, *rumpō*.
 burst into, *inrumpō*.
 but, *at; sed; tamen*.
 by, *ab (ā)* with abl.; abl. of means or instrument.

C

call, *appellō; vocō*.
 call back, *revocō*.
 call out, *ēvocō*.
 call together, *convocō*.
 camp, *castra*.

can, *possum*.
 care, *diligentia*.
 careful, *diligēns*.
 carefully, *diligenter*.
 carry, *portō*.
 carry across, *trānsportō*.
 carry on (wage), *gerō*.
 cart, *carrus*.
 cast down, *dēiciō*.
 cast out, *ēiciō*.
 catch, *excipio*.
 catch sight of, see, *cōspiciō*.
 cavalry, adj., *equester*; n. *equitēs*.
 certain, *quidam*.
 certainly, *certē*.
 chain, *vinculum*.
 chance, *cāsus*.
 chariot, *currus*.
 chest, *arca*.
 chief, *princeps*.
 children, *liberī*.
 citizen, *civis*.
 city, *urbs*.
 class, *genus*.
 clear, *clārus*.
 clever, *callidus*.
 cleverly, *callidē*.
 climb to, *ascendō*.
 close, *claudō*.
 cohort, *cohors*.
 column (marching), *agmen*.
 come, *veniō*.
 come through, *pervenio*.
 come together, *conveniō*.
 come upon, *inveniō*.
 command, n., *imperātum*.
 command, v., *iubeō*.
 commander, *imperātor*.
 companion, *comes*.
 compel, *cōgō*.
 comrade, *comes; socius*.

conquer, *vincō*; *superō*.
 consider, *arbitror*; *existimō*.
 conspiracy, *coniūratiō*.
 consul, *cōsul*.
 cottage, *casa*.
 council, *concilium*.
 country, *terra*.
 country house, *villa*.
 courage, *virtūs*.
 cowardly, fearful, *timidus*.
 cross, *trāseō*.
 crown, *corōna*.
 custom, *mōs*.
 cut down, *occidō*.

D

daily, *cotidiē*.
 danger, *periculum*.
 daring, *audāx*.
 daughter, *filia*.
 day, *diēs*.
 dear, *cārus*.
 death, *mors*.
 decide, *cōstituō*.
 defend, *muniō*; *dēfendō*.
 delay, *commoror*.
 demand, *postulō*.
 depart, *discēdō*.
 descend, *dēscendō*.
 descent (family), *genus*.
 deserve, *dēbeō*.
 desire, n., *cupiditās*.
 desire, v., *cupiō*.
 despair of, *dēspērō*.
 difficult, *difficilis*.
 difficulty, *difficultās*.
 diligence, *diligentia*.
 disgraceful, *turpis*.
 distance, *spatium*.
 distant, *longinquus*.
 ditch, *fossa*.

divide, *dividō*.
 do (make), *faciō*, *agō*.
 double, *duplum*.
 doubt, *dubitō*.
 down from, *dē*.
 downfall, *ruīna*.
 drag, draw, *trahō*.
 draw out, *extrahō*.
 drive, *agō*, *pellō*.
 drive back, *repellō*.
 drive out, *expellō*.
 during, *per*.
 duty, *officium*.
 dwell, *habitō*.

E

earrings, *inaurēs*.
 easily, *facile*.
 easy, *facilis*.
 eight, *octō*.
 eighteen, *duodēvigintī*.
 eighth, *octāvus*.
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*.
 eleven, *undecim*.
 end, *finis*.
 endure, *ferō*, *perferō*.
 enemy, *hostis*; *inimicus*.
 enough, *satis*.
 enter, *intrō*, *ineō*.
 enroll, *cōscribō*.
 entire, *tōtus*.
 envoy, *lēgātus*.
 equal, *pār*.
 escape, *vitō*.
 even, *etiam*.
 event, *rēs*.
 evil, *malus*.
 example, *exemplum*.
 excellent, *ēgregius*; *bonus*.
 exhausted, *cōfectus*.
 extend, *pertineō*.

F

fact, *rēs*.
 fail, *dēficiō*.
 faithful, *fidus*.
 famous, *clārus, nōtus*.
 far, at a distance, *longē*.
 farmer, *agricola*.
 fate, *fātum*.
 father, *pater*.
 fear, v., *timeō*.
 fear, n., *tīmor*.
 fearful, *timidus, horribilis*.
 feel, *percipiō; sentiō*.
 few, *pauci*.
 field, *ager; campus*.
 fierce, *ācer*.
 fiercely, *ācritēr*.
 fifteen, *quīndecim*.
 fifth, *quīntus*.
 fight, v., *pugnō; n., pugna*.
 fight to a finish, *dēcertō*.
 fill, *compleō*.
 finally, *tandem*.
 find, *reperiō*.
 first, *primus*.
 first (in order), adv., *primum*.
 fisherman, *piscātor*.
 five, *quīnque*.
 flee, *fugiō*.
 flee back, *refugiō*.
 flight, *fuga*.
 follow, *sequor*.
 follow closely, *cōnsequor*.
 food, *cibus*.
 foot, *pēs*.
 foot soldier, *pedes*.
 for, *nam*.
 force, *vīs* (see troops).
 foreign, *barbarus*.
 foreigner, *barbarus*.
 foresee, *prōvideō*.

foresight, *prudentia*.
 forest, *silva*.
 foretell, *praedicō*.
 former, *ille*.
 fortify, *muniō; defendō*.
 fortune, *fortūna*.
 forty, *quadrāgintā*.
 forum, *forum*.
 four, *quattuor*.
 fourfold, *quadruplum*.
 four-horse team, *quadrīgae*.
 fourteen, *quattuordecim*.
 fourth, *quārtus*.
 free, adj., *liber*.
 free, v., *liberō*.
 freedom, *libertās*.
 frequent, *crēber*.
 friend, *amicus*.
 friendly, *amicus*.
 friendly manner (in a), *amicē*.
 friendship, *amicitia*.
 frighten, *terreō*.
 from, ab (*ā*), ex (*ē*).
 from that place, *inde*.

G

gate, *porta*.
 general, *dux*.
 get (assume), *sūmō*.
 get ready, *parō*.
 get together, *comparō*.
 gift, *dōnum*.
 girl, *puella*.
 give, *dō*.
 give back, *reddō*.
 glory, *glōria*.
 go, *eō*.
 go back, *redeō*.
 go forward, *prōcēdō; prōgredior*.
 go out, *exeō; ēgredior*.
 go to, *adeō*.

god, *deus*.
 good, *bonus*; good fortune, *fortūna*.
 good-bye, *valē*; *valētē*.
 grain, *frūmentum*.
 grandfather, *avus*.
 grandson, *nepōs*.
 great, *magnus*.
 greatness, *magnitūdō*.
 greed, *cupiditās*.
 greet, *salūtō*.
 grief, *dolor*.
 grieve, *doleō*.
 guard, v., *mūniō*.
 guard, n., *praesidium*.
 guide, *perducō*.

H

halt, *cōsistō*.
 hand, *manus*.
 hand over, *trādō*.
 happen, *accidō*; *eveniō*.
 hardship, *labor*.
 hasten, *contendō*; *properō*.
 haughty, *superbus*.
 have, *habēō*.
 head, *caput*.
 hear, *audiō*.
 heavy, *gravis*.
 height, *altitūdō*.
 helmet, *galea*.
 here, *hic*.
 high, *altus*.
 hindrance, *impedimentum*.
 hinder, *impediō*.
 his, hers, its, *suus*.
 hither, *hūc*.
 hold, *teneō*.
 hold back, *retineō*.
 hold together, *contineō*.
 hold up, *sustineō*.
 home, *domus*; at home, *domi*.

honor, *honor*.
 hope, v., *spērō*.
 hope, n., *spēs*.
 horse, *equus*.
 horseman, *eques*.
 hour, *hōra*.
 how great? *quantus*?
 how many? *quot*?
 hundred, *centum*.
 hurl, *iaciō*; *coniciō*.
 hurry, *properō*.

I

I, *ego*.
 if, *sī*.
 if not, *nisi*.
 ignorant (be), *ignōrō*.
 in (on), *in*.
 in defense of, *prō*.
 in order to, *ut*.
 in vain, *frustrā*.
 incite, *incitō*; *impellō*.
 indeed, *enim*; *quidem*.
 induce, *persuādeō*.
 infantry, adj., *pedester*.
 infantry, n., *peditēs*.
 influence, *auctoritās*.
 informed, *certior factus*.
 inhabitant, *incola*.
 injure, *noceō*.
 injury, *iniūria*.
 interrupt, *intercipiō*.
 interval, *intervallum*.
 into, *in* (with acc.).
 island, *īnsula*.

J

javelin, *pīlum*.
 join, *iungō*.
 journey, *iter*.
 judge, v., (consider), *arbitror*.

judge, *n.*, *iūdex*.
just (level), *aequus*.

K

keen, *acer*.
keenly, *acriter*.
keep away, *prohibeō*.
kill, *interficiō*.
kind (variety), *genus*.
kindness, *beneficium*.
king, *rēx*.
kingdom, *rēgnum*.
know, *sciō*.
knowledge, wisdom, *sapientia*.
known, *nōtus*.

L

labyrinth, *labyrinthus*.
lack, *inopia*.
lady, *domina*.
land, *terra*.
language, *lingua*.
large, *magnus*; *amplus*.
latter, *hic*.
law, *lēx*.
lay down, *dēpōnō*.
lazy, *piger*.
lead, *dūcō*.
lead across, *trādūcō*.
lead back, *redūcō*.
lead down, *dēdūcō*.
lead forward, *prōdūcō*.
lead out, *ēdūcō*.
lead through, guide, *perdūcō*.
leader, general, *dux*; *princeps*.
learn, *discō*, *cognōscō*.
leave, *relinquō*.
left, *sinister*.
region, *legiō*.
lesson (reading), *lectiō*.

letter, *epistula*.
level, *aequus*.
liberty, *libertās*.
lieutenant, *lēgātus*.
life, *vita*.
lift, *tollō*.
light, *lūx*.
like, *similis*; *v. amō*.
likewise, *item*.
lion, *leō*.
little, *adv.*, *parum*.
little (small), *parvus*.
live, *habitō*; *incolō*.
lo ! *ēn !*
long, *longus*; for a long time, *adv.*,
diū.
look at, *īnspiciō*; *spectō*.
look up at, *suspiciō*.
love, *amō*.

M

maiden, *virgō*.
make, *faciō*, *pass. fiō*.
man, *homō*; *vir*.
manner (method), *ratio*.
manner (style), *modus*.
many, *multī*.
marching column, *agmen*.
market place, *forum*.
marriage, *mātrimōnium*.
master, *dominus*; (of a school),
magister.
merchant ship, *nāvis onerāria*.
meanwhile, *interim*.
memory, *memoria*.
messenger, *nūntius*.
middle, *medius*.
mile, *mille passūs*.
military, *militāris*.
mistress, *domina*.
money, *pecūnia*.
monument, *monumentum*.

more, *plūs*.
 mother, *māter*.
 mountain, *mōns*.
 moreover, *autem*; *praetereā*.
 move, *moveō*.
 much, adj., *multus*.
 much, adv., *multum*; *multō*.
 my (mine), *meus*.

N

name, n., *nōmen*.
 name, v., *nōminō*.
 native land, *patria*.
 nature, *natūra*.
 near (be), *adsum*.
 near, prep., *prope*, *ad*.
 nearly, *paene*.
 neighbor, *vicīnus*, *fīnitīmus*.
 neighboring, *vicīnus*.
 neither (of two), *neuter*.
 neither . . . nor, *neque* . . . *neque*.
 nevertheless, *tamen*.
 new, *novus*.
 night, *nox*.
 nine, *novem*.
 nineteen, *undēvīgintī*.
 ninth, *nōnus*.
 noble, *nōbilis*.
 not, *nōn*.
 not any, none, *nūllus*.
 not only . . . but also, *nōn modo*
 . . . *sed etiam*.
 not yet, *nōndum*.
 nothing, *nihil*.
 number, *numerus*.
 now, *nunc*; *iam*.

O

obtain, *obtinēō*.
 occupy, *occupō*.
 often, *saepe*.

omit, *intermittō*.
 on, *in* (with abl.).
 once upon a time, *olim*.
 on account of, *propter*; *ob*.
 one, *ūnus*.
 (the) one . . . (the) other, *alter*
 . . . *alter*.
 or, *aut*; *vel*.
 order, n., *imperātum*.
 order, v., *iubeō*.
 other of two (the), *alter*.
 ought, *dēbeō*.
 our, *noster*.
 out of, *ex* (*ē*).
 overcome, *superō*; *vincō*.
 overwhelm, *opprimō*.

P

pace, *passus*.
 pacify (conquer), *pācō*.
 painstaking, *diligentia*.
 palace, *rēgia*.
 part, *pars*.
 peace, *pax*.
 people, *populus*.
 perceive, *sentīō*; *intelligō*.
 picture, *pictūra*.
 pitiable, *miser*.
 place, v., *locō*; *pōnō*.
 place, n., *locus*; plur., *loca*.
 place before, *prōpōnō*.
 plain, *campus*.
 plan, *cōnsilium*.
 pleasant, pleasing, *grātus*.
 poet, *poēta*.
 point out, *dēmōnstrō*.
 poor, *miser*.
 power, *potestās*, *imperium*.
 powerful, *potēns*.
 praise, *laudō*.
 prepare, *parō*.

prepared, *parātus*.
 present (be), *adsum*.
 presently, *mox*.
 press (hard press), *premō*.
 prevent, *prohibeō*.
 previously, *anteā*.
 prime, *flōs*.
 prison, *vincula* (plur.)
 prisoner, *captīvus*.
 promise, *prōmittō*.
 proud, *superbus*.
 province, *prōvincia*.
 prow (ship's) *prōra*.
 punish, *pūniō*.
 punishment, *poena*.
 pupil, *discipulus*.
 put (place), *pōnō*.
 put (place) upon, *impōnō*.

Q

queen, *rēgīna*.
 quickly, *celeriter*.
 quoit, *discus*.

R

race (kind), *genus*.
 rampart, *vāllum*; *moenia*.
 rank, *file*, *ōrdō*.
 reach, *pertineō*.
 read, *legō*.
 reason, *causa*.
 receive (welcome), *accipiō*; *excipiō*.
 recite, *recitō*.
 recognize, *cognōscō*.
 remain, *maneo*.
 remember, *memoriā tenēre*.
 remind, *admoneō*.
 remove, *removeō*.
 reply, *respondeō*.
 report, *enūntiō*.

reputation, *fāma*.
 resist, *resistō*.
 return, *revertor*.
 reward, *praemium*.
 right, *dexter*.
 river, *flūmen*.
 road, *via*.
 route, *iter*; *via*.
 rowboat (barge) *actuāriolum*.
 rule, *regō*.
 run, *currō*.
 run together, *concurrō*.

S

sad, *miser*.
 safe, *tūtus*.
 safety, *salūs*.
 said (he), *inquit*.
 sail, *nāvigō*.
 sailor, *nauta*.
 same, *idem*.
 sandal, *solea*.
 save, *cōservō*; *servō*.
 say, *dīcō*.
 school, *lūdus*.
 schoolmaster, *magister*.
 sea, *mare*.
 second, *secundus*.
 see, *videō*.
 seek, *petō*, *quaerō*.
 seize, *comprehendō*; *occupō*.
 select, *dēligō*.
 self, *ipse*; *suī* (gen. of reflex.)
 send, *mittō*.
 servant, *servus*.
 service, *officium*.
 set forth, *expōnō*; *prōpōnō*.
 set free, *liberō*.
 seven, *septem*.
 seventeen, *septendecim*.
 seventh, *septimus*.

severe, *gravis*.
 severely, *graviter*.
 sharp, *acer*.
 sharply, *acriter*.
 shine, *fulgeō*; *lūceō*.
 shining, *lūcidus*.
 ship, *nāvis*.
 short, *brevis*.
 shout, *clāmō*.
 show, *adhibeō*; *praebeō*; *praestō*.
 shrewd, *callidus*.
 shun, *vitō*.
 shut in, *inclūdō*.
 sight, *cōspectus*; *speciēs*.
 sign, standard, *signum*.
 signal, *signum*.
 sister, *soror*.
 sit, *sedeō*.
 six, *sex*.
 sixteen, *sēdecim*.
 sixth, *sextus*.
 sky, *caelum*.
 slave, *servus*.
 slay, *necō*; *interficiō*.
 sleep, v., *dormiō*.
 sleep, n., *somnus*.
 slow, *tardus*.
 small, *parvus*.
 so great, *tantus*.
 soldier, *mīles*.
 some one, *aliquis*.
 son, *filius*.
 sound, *sānus*.
 space, *spatium*.
 speak out, *ēdicō*.
 spear, *hasta*.
 speed, *celeritās*.
 spirit, *animus*.
 stand, *stō*.
 standard, *signum*.
 state, *civilās*.

statue, *statua*.
 star, *stella*.
 stay, *maneō*.
 story, *fābula*.
 strengthen, *cōfirmō*.
 strong, *firmus*; *validus*.
 suddenly, *subitō*.
 suffer (grieve), *doleō*, *labōrō*.
 suitable, *idōneus*.
 sum (total), *summa*.
 summer, *aestās*.
 support, *sustineō*.
 supreme power, *rēgnum*; *imperium*.
 sure, *certus*.
 surpass, *superō*.
 swift, *celer*.
 swiftly, *celeriter*.
 swiftness, *celeritās*.
 swift war galley, *nāvis liburna*.
 swing-beam, *tollēno*.
 sword, *gladius*.

T

table-couch, *trīclīnium*.
 take, *capiō*; *excipiō*.
 take back, *recipiō*.
 take by assault, *expugnō*.
 tall, *altus*.
 task, *officium*.
 teach, *doceō*.
 tell, *nārrō*.
 ten, *decem*.
 tenth, *decimus*.
 terrible, *horribilis*.
 territory, *fīnēs*.
 than, *quam*.
 that (of yours), *iste*.
 that, pro., *ille*, *is*.
 that, conj., in clauses of purpose and result, *ut*; with verbs of fearing, *nē*; in order that, *ut*

that . . . not, conj., *nē*.
 their own, *suus*.
 themselves, *suī*, *ipse*.
 then, *deinde*; *tum*.
 there, *ibi*.
 thing, *rēs*.
 thing done (act), *factum*.
 think, *arbitror*; *existimō*; *putō*.
 third, *tertius*.
 thirteen, *trēdecim*.
 thirty, *trīgintā*.
 this, *hic*; *is*.
 thousand, *mille*.
 three, *trēs*.
 threefold, *triplum*.
 three-horse chariot, *triga*.
 throng, *multitūdō*.
 through (over), *per*; *trāns*.
 throw (hurl), *iaciō*.
 throw across, *trāciō*.
 throw away, *prōiciō*.
 thus, so, *sic*; *ita*.
 time, *tempus*; *spatium*.
 timidly, *timidē*.
 to (in order to), *ut*.
 today, *hodiē*; tomorrow, *crās*.
 tongue, language, *lingua*.
 touch, *attingō*.
 toward, *ad* (with acc.).
 town, *oppidum*.
 townsman, *oppidānus*.
 tree, *arbor*.
 trial, *iudicium*.
 tribe, *gēns*.
 troops, *cōpiae*.
 true, *vērus*; in truth, *vērō*.
 trumpet, *tuba*.
 turn, *vertō*.
 twelve, *duodecim*.
 twenty, *vīgintī*.
 two, *duo*.

U

under, *sub*.
 undergo, *subeō*.
 understand, *intellegō*.
 undertake, *suscipio*.
 unfriendly, *inimicus*.
 unhappy, *miser*.
 unharmed, *incolumis*.
 unlike, *dissimilis*.
 unwilling (be), *nōlō*.

V

valor, *virtūs*.
 very, *ipse*.
 victory, *victōria*.
 village, *vīcus*.
 virtue, *virtūs*.
 voice, *vox*.

W

wage (war), *gerō*.
 wait for, *expectō*.
 walk, *ambulō*.
 wall, *mūrus*, *vāllum*.
 war, *bellum*.
 war gallery, *nāvis longa*.
 warn, *moneō*.
 watch (of the night), *vigilia*.
 water, *aqua*.
 weakened, *cōnfectus*.
 weapon, *tēlum*; weapons, *arma*.
 well, *bene*; well known, *nōtus*.
 what, *quid*.
 when, *ubi*; *cum*.
 whence, *unde*.
 where, *ubi*.
 whether, *num*.
 which (of two)? *uter?*
 while, *dum*.
 whither, *quō*.
 who? *quis?*
 who, rel., *quī*.

whole, *tōtus*.
 wholly, *omnīnō*.
 why, *cūr*; *quid*.
 wide, *lātus*.
 wife, *uxor*.
 will, *voluntās*.
 win, *reportō*.
 wing (of an army), *cornū*.
 winter, *hiems*.
 wisdom, knowledge, *sapientia*.
 wise, *sapiēns*.
 wish, *volō*.
 with, *cum*.
 within, *intrā*.
 without, *sine*.
 withstand, *sustineō*.
 woman, *fēmina*.
 woods, *silva*.
 word, *verbum*.
 work, n., *labor*.

work, v., *labōrō*.
 worse, *peior*.
 wound, v., *vulnerō*.
 wound, n., *vulnus*.
 wretched, *miser*.
 write, *scribō*.

Y

year, *annus*.
 yesterday, *heri*.
 yoke, *iugum*.
 you (yourself), *tū*.
 young, young man, *iuvenis*.
 younger, *iūnior*.
 youngest, *minimus nātū*.
 your, *tuus*; *vester*.

Z

zeal, *studium*.

INDEX

660

(The numbers in all cases refer to paragraphs, asterisks to footnotes.)

ablative case

- absolute, **561; 562; 618.**
- after a comparative, **384.**
- of accompaniment, **150.**
- of amount or degree of difference, **385*.**
- of cause, **253; 254; 314*.**
- of manner, **515; 516.**
- of means or instrument, **114; 115.**
- of personal agent, **43; 44.**
- of place in which, **33*; 101, Note 2.**
- of place where, **33*; 101, Note 2.**
- of respect (specification), **519; 520.**
- of time, **202; 203.**

accent, introductory lesson, **274, 3.**

accompaniment, ablative of, **150**

accusative case

- as object, **29; 30.**
- as subject of infinitive, **341; 342.**
- of duration of time, **226; 227.**
- of extent of space, **246*.**
- with prepositions, **101, Note 2.**

ācer, declension, **631.**

adjectives, 94.

- agreement of, **92; 93.**
- comparison, formation of, **382;**
2; regular, **407; 412; 634;** ir-
regular, **387; 400; 417, 634.**
- i-stems, **364; 365; 366.**
- irregular, **426; 427.**
- of first and second declensions,
94; 125; 129.
- of third declension, **364; 365; 371;**
631.

- of one ending, **371.**
- of two endings, **365.**
- of three endings, **364.**
- possessive, **209.**
- with and without *quam*, **384.**

adverbs

- comparison, **407; 635.**
- formation of, **406.**
- miscellaneous, **450, 3.**
- of time, place, **450, 1, 2.**

aestās, declension, **626, 1.**

agent, ablative of, **43; 44.**

ager, declension, **625.**

agreement

- of adjectives, **92; 93.**
- of appositives, **55; 56.**
- of predicate nouns, **16; 24.**
- of relative pronouns, **249; 250.**
- of verbs, **9.**

aliquis, declension, **642.**

alius, declension, **633.**

alphabet, introductory lesson.

altior, declension, **383, 632.**

apposition, **55; 56.**

audāx, declension, **631.**

audiō, conjugation, **648.**

bellum, declension, **625.**

bonus, declension, **630; 94.**

capiō, conjugation, **647.**

caput, declension, **626 (1).**

cardinal numerals, **394; 636.**

cause, expressed by ablative, **253;**
254.

civis, declension, **626** (2).

comparison

adjectives in *-lis*, **387**.

degrees of, **382**, 1.

of adjectives, **382**, 2; **407**; **412**;
634; irregular, **387**; **400**; **417**.

of adverbs, **406**; **407**; **635**; irregular,
443.

compound verbs, **360**, 1 . . . 18.

conjugations, the four regular, **644**
. . . **648**; deponents, **649**; irregular,
650 . . . **657**.

conjunctions, **450**, 4.

cōnor, conjugation, **649**.

cōsul, declension, **626** (1).

cornū, declension, **627**.

cum, circumstantial, **597**; **598**.

with ablative of personal pronoun,
183.

with subjunctive, **546**, notes (1),
(2), (4); **597**; **598**.

dative case

of agent, **618**.

of indirect object, **64**.

of possessor, **168**; **169**.

with adjectives, **389**; **390**.

with compound verbs, **469***.

with verbs compounded with
prae, **466***.

demonstrative adjectives and pro-
nouns, **142** (a); **142** (b); **143**; **144**;
173 (a), (b); **643**.

deponent verbs, **574***; **649**.

derivation, **166**; **303**; **304**; **305**; **306**.

deus, declension, **629**.

diēs, declension, **628**.

difference, measure of, **385***.

difficilis, comparison of, **387**.

dissimilis, comparison of, **387**.

dō, conjugation, **657**.

domus, declension, **629**.

dūcō, conjugation, **646**.

duo, declension, **633**.

duration of time, expressed by the
accusative, **226**; **227**.

dux, declension, **626** (1).

ego, declension, **637**.

eō, conjugation, **656**.

enclitic, definition of, **38**.

English words from Latin verbs,
377; **378**.

extent of space, expressed by the
accusative, **246***.

facilis, comparison of, **387**.

fearing, subjunctive after verbs of,
553, 1.

ferō, conjugation, **654**.

fifth declension, **521**; **522**; **628**.

fīō, conjugation, **655**.

first conjugation, *portō*, **644**.

first declension, **624**.

flūmen, declension, **626** (1).

fortis, comparison of, **382**, 2.

fourth conjugation, *audiō*, **648**.

fourth declension, **505**; **506**; **627**;
629, *domus* (irr.)

future participle, formation of,
543.

future perfect, active, **162** (1), (2);
pass. **244** (4).

future tense, formation of, **41**.

gender, introductory lesson

in English and in Latin, **85**.

in the first declension, **69**, Note.

in the second declension, **85**.

in the third declension, **263**, 3, 4.

in the fourth declension, **505**.

in the fifth declension, **521**.

genitive case, 54.

English equivalents of, 54.

of nouns in *-ius*, and *-ium*, 82; 88, 1.

genus, declension, 626 (1).

hic, declension, 643.

hiems, declension, 626 (1).

homō, declension, 626 (1).

how to ask questions in Latin, 38.

hundred word test, 79; 192; 380; 478.

i-stems

adjectives, 364; 365.

nouns, 345; 346; 348; 351.

idem, declension, 643.

ille, declension, 643.

imperative, 184.

imperfect indicative

formation, 35; 36.

use, 158, 1; 238, 1.

imperfect subjunctive

formation, 587.

use, 539; 590; 608.

indefinite pronouns and adjectives, 493; 640; 642.

indirect questions, 603; 608.

indirect statements, 338; 339; 576.

infinitives, 316.

agreement with subject, 569, 4.

formation of, 569, 1, 2, 3; 570.

in indirect statements, 576; 581; 582.

used as in English, 318; 319; 320; 574.

tenses of, 568.

time indicated by, 576.

intensive pronouns, 148.

interrogative adjectives, 222.

interrogative particles, 49.

interrogative pronouns, 219; 221; 641.

ipse, declension, 643.

irregular verbs, 650 . . . 657.

is, 643.

as an adjective, 173 (a).

as a pronoun, 173 (b).

iste, declension, 643.

iter, declension, 626 (1).

Latin plays, *Horātius*, 463, 464.

Latin word order, 25.

Latin words unchanged in English, 447.

legiō, declension, 626 (1).

liber, declension, 630.

locative case, 284.

mālō, conjugation, 653.

manner, ablative of, 515; 516.

mare, declension, 626 (2).

means, ablative of, 114; 115.

meī, declension, 638.

mīles, declension, 626 (1).

mīlle, declension, 633.

miser, comparison of, 400.

monēō, conjugation, 645.

-ne, enclitic, 38.

nē, conjunction with subjunctive in clauses of purpose, 557.

nine irregular adjectives, 426; 427.

nōlō, conjugation, 653.

nominative case, 8.

nōnne, 49.

nouns

first declension, 69; 624.

second declension, 82; 88; 119; 625.

third declension, 263; 264; 269; 283; 323; 328; 346; 351; 626, (1), (2).

fourth declension, 505; 506; 627.

fifth declension, 521; 522; 628.

num, 49.

numerals, 636.

object, direct, 29; 30.

omnis, declension, 631.

order of words, 25.

ordinal numerals, 432.

participles, defined, 240; 561.

agreement of, 240; 538; 561.

formation of, present, 540; past, 541; future active, 542; gerundive (future passive), 543.

of deponent verbs, 616.

tenses of, 538; 539.

use of, 561; 618.

particles, interrogative, 49.

passive voice, formation of, 21.

passus, declension, 627.

pater, declension, 626, 1.

penult, introductory lesson

perfect indicative, distinguished from the imperfect, 158, 1, 2.

endings in the active, 156, 1.

formation, in the active, 156; in the passive, 238, 3.

meaning of, 158, 2; 238, 1.

perfect active infinitive, 569, 2.

perfect passive participle, 541.

perfect subjunctive, 602.

personal endings, 2; 22; 36.

personal pronouns, 182; 637.

use of, 182.

place in which, ablative of, 33*.

pluperfect indicative active, 161 (1).

formation of, active, 161 (2); passive, 244, 1.

plūs, declension, 632.

portāns, declension, 631.

portō, conjugation, 644.

possum, conjugation, 651.

potēns, declension, 631.

potior, conjugation, 649.

predicate adjective, 17; 24.

predicate noun, 16; 24.

prefixes, list of common, 358.

prepositions, 99; 100.

with the ablative, 99; 101, Notes.

with the accusative, 99; 101, Notes.

present imperative, 184.

prīnceps, declension, 626 (1).

principal parts, 155, 1, 2.

of deponents, 615.

of second conjugation, 195.

of fourth conjugation, 214.

pronouns

demonstrative, 643.

indefinite, 640; 642.

intensive, 148; 643.

interrogative, 641.

personal, 637.

possessive, 209.

reflexive, 638.

relative, 639.

prōsum, 652.

puer, declension, 625.

pulcher, declension, 630.

quantities in Latin, introductory lesson

questions, 38.

quī, relative, declension, 639.

quīdam, declension, 640.

quis, interrogative, declension, 641.

reflexive pronouns, 207; 638.

relative pronouns, 247; 639.

agreement of, 249; 250.

rēs, declension, 628.

Roman names, 445*.

second conjugation, *moneō*, 645.

second declension, 82, 88, 119.

senex, declension, 629.

sequence of tenses in indirect questions, 608; 611.

servus, declension, 82; 625.

silva, declension, 69; 624.

similis, comparison of, 387.

soror, declension, 626 (1).

subject nominative, 8.

subjunctive, 548; 556; 557; 587; 588; 589; 590; 596.

in indirect questions, 603; 608.

in purpose clauses, 549; 550; 590; 592.

in result clauses, 591; 592.

with *cum* circumstantial, 597; 598.

with *nē*, 557.

with *ut*, 557.

sum, conjugation, 650.

tempus, declension, 626 (1).

tense signs

imperfect, 35.

future, 41.

future perfect active, 162 (2).

pluperfect active, 161 (2).

tenses, primary and secondary, 610.
sequence of, 610; 611.

test, time-limited, 62; 105; 180; 232; 281; 336; 398; 430; 471.

third conjugation, 274; 275; 454; 646.

in *-iō*, 453; 454; 647.

third declension, 626 (1), (2).

time, ablative of, 203.

towns, rule for names of, 284.

tres, declension, 633.

tu, declension, 637.

ūnus, 633.

urbs, declension, 626 (2).

ut, conj. with subj. in clauses of purpose, 557.

utor, conjugation, 649.

verbs

agreement of, 9.

compound with prepositions, 360,
1 . . . 18.

conjugation of, 644 . . . 657.

deponent, 571; 574*; 614; 615;
616; 649.

English words from Latin, 377;
378.

irregular, 650 . . . 657.

personal endings of, 2; 22.

principal parts of, 155, 1, 2.

semi-deponent, 601*.

vereor, conjugation, 649.

vīr, declension, 625.

virtūs, declension, 626 (1).

vis, declension, 629.

vocabularies

Latin-English, pp. 311-335.

English-Latin, pp. 336-346.

special (*Horātius*), 465.

vocabulary review, 62; 105; 180;
232; 281; 336; 398; 430; 471.

vocative, 83.

volō, conjugation, 653.

vowels, sounds and quantities of,
introductory lesson.

word formation from *faciō*, 460.

word order, 25.



